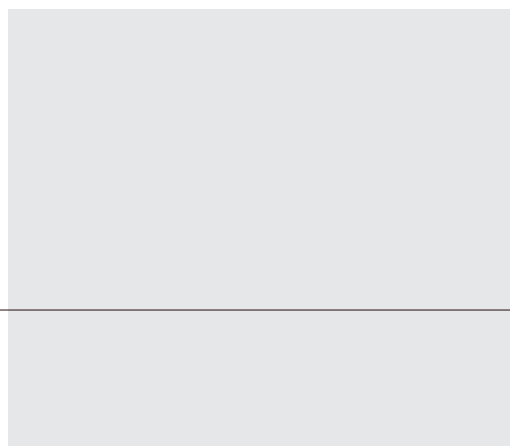


WHO INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TERMINOLOGIES ON TRADITIONAL MEDICINE IN THE WESTERN PACIFIC REGION



WHO Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

WHO International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine in the Western Pacific Region

1. Medicine, Traditional. 2. Terminology

ISBN 978 92 9061 248 3

(NLM Classification: WB50)

© World Health Organization (2007)

Publications of the World Health Organization enjoy copyright protection in accordance with the provisions of Protocol 2 of the Universal Copyright Convention. For rights of reproduction or translation of WHO publications, in part or *in toto*, application should be made to the Office of Publications, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland, or to the Regional Office for the Western Pacific, Manila, Philippines. The World Health Organization welcomes such applications.

The designations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the World Health Organization concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

The mention of specific companies or of certain manufacturers' products does not imply that they are endorsed or recommended by the World Health Organization in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned. Errors and omissions excepted, the names of proprietary products are distinguished by initial capital letters.

The authors alone are responsible for the views expressed in this publication.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	vii
INTRODUCTION	1
GENERAL	9
BASIC THEORIES	13
Essential Qi Theory, Yin-yang Theory, and Five Phase Theory	13
Essence, Spirit, Qi, Blood, Fluid and Humor	17
Viscera and Bowels	21
Meridian and Collateral	28
Body Constituents and Orifices of Sense Organ	35
Cause of Disease	39
Mechanism of Disease	46
Others	76
DIAGNOSTICS	79
Inspection	80
Listening and Smelling Examination	87
Inquiry	88
Palpation	100
Eight Principle Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	106
Disease Cause Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	116
Qi-Blood Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	124
Fluid-Humor Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	129
Visceral Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	130
Various Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	146
Six-Meridian Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	152
Defense, Qi, Nutrient and Blood Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	156
Triple Energizer Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	160

DISEASE	162
Internal Medicine	162
External Medicine	177
Gynecology and Obstetrics	184
Pediatrics	189
Ophthalmology	194
Otorhinolaryngostomatology	198
Orthopedics and Traumatology	202
Others	202
THERAPEUTICS	204
Method of Treatment	205
ACUPUNCTURE AND MOXIBUSTION	233
Acupuncture	233
Moxibustion	251
Cupping	254
MEDICINAL TREATMENT	255
Medicinal	255
Formula	264
CLASSICS OF TRADITIONAL MEDICINE	271
Internal Classic	271
Cold Damage and Golden Chamber	271
Diagnostics	272
Warm (Pathogen) Disease	272
Materia Medica	273
Prescriptions/Formularies	274
Acupuncture and Moxibustion	276
Miscellaneous	277
REFERENCES	283
INDEX	285
ANNEX	349

FOREWORD

Traditional medicine has been practised for thousands of years. It was the only available method of health care in this part of the world before western modern medicine was introduced to our Region. Even after the advent of modern medicine, traditional medicine plays an important role in many countries.

Since the Declaration of Alma-Ata mentioned the role of traditional practitioners in the primary health care in 1978, WHO started to pay attention to traditional medicine. Almost three decades later, in the Fifty-ninth World Health Assembly in Geneva in 2006, the 192 Member States were encouraged to integrate traditional medicine into their public health systems and to promote harmonization with western modern medicine. It shows how traditional medicine has rapidly and intensively strived and innovated in recent decades.

In many ways, the WHO Western Pacific Region is playing a leading role in promoting the appropriate use of traditional medicine within the Organization. The main theme of our traditional medicine programme is “standardization with evidence-based approaches”. In this context, standardization of such areas of traditional medicine as terminology, acupuncture point locations, herbal medicine, research, clinical practice and information is ongoing.

Science and civilization have developed because of language. Likewise, traditional medicine has been developing for thousands of years with its own set of terms. However, historical conditions have brought about various expressions in traditional medicine. Its subjective features have even intensified its diversities. Although traditional medicine can be defined with indigenous characters, its terminology should be standardized for modern usage. International standard terminology will greatly expedite scientific communications in traditional medicine societies. It is the very first step towards the globalization of traditional medicine.

The WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific has convened three meetings for developing international standard terminology on traditional medicine in Beijing, China in October 2004; Tokyo, Japan in June 2005; and Daegu, Republic of Korea in October 2005 and gained successful outcomes as shown in this monograph.

I would like to express, on behalf of the World Health Organization, our sincere gratitude to those experts and institutes participating and supporting development of the *WHO International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine in the Western Pacific Region*. It is hoped that this publication will contribute to the exchange of information throughout the world.

Shigeru Omi, MD, Ph.D.
Regional Director

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The World Health Organization, Regional Office for the Western Pacific expresses its appreciation to all those who contributed to the production of this document.

WHO recognizes the people who dedicated their lives to the development of traditional medicine in our Region from ancient times particularly the ancestors who are symbolized as Huangdi and Shennong. Appreciation is also extended to the experts who attended the meetings on development of International Standard Terminologies held in Beijing, China; Tokyo, Japan; and Daegu, Republic of Korea, as well as the external peer reviewers.

We also wish to extend our gratitude to the Ministry of Health and Welfare, Republic of Korea for their financial support, to the State Administration of Traditional Chinese Medicine China, the Japan Liaison of Oriental Medicine and the World Federation of Chinese Medicine Societies, without which we would not have been able to publish this book.

INTRODUCTION

In the Western Pacific Region, the major system of traditional medicine which originated from ancient China has continued to develop not only in China but also in neighbouring countries and areas, particularly in Japan, the Republic of Korea and Viet Nam, with certain variations in accordance with local conditions, i.e. availability of natural resources, indigenous culture and political climate. Different names have been designated for this system of traditional medicine as it developed in various countries, such as Oriental medicine, traditional Chinese medicine, traditional Korean medicine, Kampo medicine and traditional Vietnamese medicine. They are collectively called traditional medicine (TRM) in the Western Pacific Region.

Traditional medicine is a comprehensive system of medicine characterized by its own theoretical basis and practical experience. It includes herbal medicine, acupuncture and other non-medication therapies. Owing to its unique paradigm and remarkable efficacy with fewer adverse effects, this system of medicine has been attracting more and more interest internationally. Considering the recent rapid increase in the worldwide use of TRM, there is a pressing need for a common language, i.e. an international standard terminology.

In 1981, the World Health Organization (WHO) Regional Office for the Western Pacific organized a Working Group for the Standardization of Acupuncture Nomenclature. After 10 years of effort, a consensus on the proposed standard international acupuncture nomenclature was reached by the Regional Office for the Western Pacific's Working Group and then by the WHO Scientific Group in Geneva. In 1991, *A Proposed Standard International Acupuncture Nomenclature* was published by WHO in Geneva and a revised edition of *Standard Acupuncture Nomenclature* (Part 1 and 2) was published by the Regional Office for the Western Pacific in Manila. Practical use has proven these WHO publications to be invaluable contributions to international information exchange on acupuncture. However, the publications are still quite limited, only including nomenclature for the 14 meridians, 361 classical acupuncture points, 8 extra meridians, 48 extra points, 14 scalp acupuncture lines and a few terms related to acupuncture needles. Moreover, to meet the increasing demands of practice, education, research and exchange of information, there is an urgent need to develop standardized terminology and nomenclature for TRM as a whole.

In 2004, recognizing that the main role of standards is for upgrading levels of quality, safety, reliability, efficiency and interchangeability, which are the most needed features in TRM, WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific initiated projects promoting the proper use of traditional medicine under the theme of "Standardization with evidence-based approaches." Among the various standards in TRM, such as acupuncture point locations, information and clinical practice, the development of an international standard terminology (IST) is the very first step towards overall standardization of TRM.

Objectives of this document are to:

- (1) Provide a common nomenclature for better understanding, education, training, practice and research in TRM.
- 2) Facilitate information exchange in TRM among Member States.

Though TRM is now spread worldwide and an increasing number of people outside Asia have a profound understanding of TRM, there still exists a considerable variation in the levels of knowledge and clinical proficiency. The purpose of this document is to provide a standardized nomenclature that will be suitable for: researchers, educators, practitioners, regulators and students in the field of TRM. It will thus assist in raising standards within TRM and, also, be of use to those who are not familiar with TRM, such as Western medical practitioners.

General considerations

As mentioned above, most technical terms used in TRM come from ancient Chinese medical literature. Consequently, translation of these terms into any other language without Han characters is extremely challenging, as the original meanings of Han characters and the unique nuances of concepts in TRM must be incorporated. For example, it took over 10 years just to achieve a consensus on nomenclature for the meridians and acupuncture points and it is generally acknowledged that it would be more difficult to achieve an internationally acceptable nomenclature for TRM other than meridians and points. The following general issues have been considered in developing the international standard terminology of TRM.

Abundance of English terminology

In recent decades, the rapidly growing interest in TRM all over the world has promoted the writing of many books and numerous papers on TRM and its various branches in English. The present problem is not a lack of English equivalents for terms commonly used, but on the contrary, there are now a large number of cases where various English words are available as equivalents for a single TRM term, or a single Han character. This not only causes confusion to readers, but also points to the urgent need for unification and standardization. On the other hand, this abundance also provides a rich source for selecting the most appropriate English terms to be used as the standard.

Selecting terms for inclusion

The major TRM system in the Western Pacific Region originated in ancient China and was established in the Huangdi Neijing (*Huangdi's Internal Classic*) and Zhang Zhongjing's works. Most of the terms used in those texts date back over two thousand years and many are still used in their original sense today. However, TRM is not static; it has also evolved over time with the modification of old terms and the incorporation of new terms, especially in recent decades. Although the classical conceptual foundations of the ancient foundation texts still appeal to those seeking an alternative to Western modes of thinking, increasing numbers of people seek direct access to the conceptual content and clinical

applications of TRM, primarily through studying contemporary publications. In view of the purposes of this document, which are for present day education, training, practice and research, and for information exchange, the technical terms were chiefly selected from recent publications.

Number of proposed terms

Achieving an international consensus on terminology is by no means an easy task. A step-by-step approach seems to be most feasible; giving priority to commonly used technical terms. The number of commonly used terms in TRM is estimated to be more than 4000, most of which are included in this document.

Source of the terms and selection process

1. 1st Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine (20–21 October 2004)

Given the need to standardize general traditional medicine terminology, the WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific convened in October 2004 the 1st Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine, in Beijing, China. The main objective of the meeting was to identify the willingness of Member States to develop an international standard for TRM terminology, to select materials and references, and to decide working procedures to this end. During the meeting, it was established that there is a need for standard TRM terminology. To expedite the process of term selection, the *Zhongyiyao Changyong Mingci Shuyu Yingyi* (中醫藥常用名詞述語英譯: *English Translation of Common Terms in Traditional Chinese Medicine*: Xie Zhufan, China TCM Pub. Co., Beijing, 2004) was adopted by voting through the main reference for the development of the international standard terminology. The lists of the temporary advisers and their presentations are shown in Annex 1.

2. 2nd Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine (27–29 June 2005)

In June 2005, the 2nd Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine was held in Tokyo, Japan. At this meeting, there were comprehensive and detailed discussions, after which the terms were selected.

The selection of terms was made by following a step-by-step method:

- Step 1: Each expert reviewed a suite of suggested terms and voted on the terms for selection. The terms agreed by two countries out of three countries were basically adopted.
- Step 2: Rationale for the selection of other terms were discussed and included when so agreed.

Also, there were discussions about the basic issues involved in English translation, i.e. whether translation should be literal or free. The temporary advisers and their presentations relevant to standard terminology are listed in Annex 2.

The outcome of the 2nd Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine was that 4200 terms were selected for inclusion in the proposed international standard terminologies for the Western Pacific Region.

3. Meeting on the Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine (18–20 October 2005)

In October 2005, the Meeting on the Development of International Standard Terminologies for Traditional Medicine was held in Daegu, Republic of Korea, with 22 experts from eight Member States in attendance. The major objective of the meeting was to review the draft terminologies and decide on the English equivalents for the selected terms. The lists of the temporary advisers and their presentations are introduced in Annex 3.

After the Daegu meeting, the number of terms selected was reduced by deleting the names of herbal medicines and also eliminating duplications – largely by agreement of attendees. At the request of the 2nd Informal Consultation and also the Daegu meeting, the definitions for the selected terms have been prepared. There have been two rounds of reviews of the draft IST among the international experts group. The list of reviewers is shown in Annex 4.

Principles for English expression selection

1. Accurate reflection of the original concept of Chinese terms.

In this context, it should be stressed that each term is a unit of meaning, which is not necessarily equal to the summation of meanings of the constituent original Han characters. According to Chinese philology, a character may have several different meanings and is often more like a syllable in English. Generally a compound word, consisting of two or more characters, provides the specific meaning. However, the meaning of a compound word is different from the separate meanings of its components. Furthermore, the appropriateness of an English equivalent should be judged primarily by its accuracy in reflecting the medical concept of the Chinese original.

2. No creation of new English words.

All the English terms included in this document are those that have been collected in universally recognized English dictionaries. If there are exceptions, they are derived from available English words with some grammatical modifications.

3. Avoidance of pinyin (Romanized Chinese) use.

For certain TRM terms, it is extremely difficult to determine English equivalents, and many publications use pinyin. However, it should be stressed that Romanized Chinese is still Chinese and pinyin is not a real translation. In addition, Han characters are similar in Chinese, Japanese and Korean, but the pronunciation differs greatly. The titles and author names of classical texts are described in the original pronunciation.

4. Consistency with WHO's Standard Acupuncture Nomenclature.

Especially for the terms of acupuncture and moxibustion, IST followed the English translation in *Standard Acupuncture Nomenclature*, Part 1 and 2 revised edition which was published by the WHO Regional Office for the Western Pacific in 1991.

Use of Western medical terms

Since both traditional and modern medicines aim at maintaining health and treating diseases, there must be some overlap between the two systems of medicine in concept and hence in terminology. On such occasions, the only

difference exists in wording. When a traditional term in Han character has a corresponding Western medical term expressing the same concept, use of that Western medical term is not only reasonable but also necessary. Otherwise, creation of a new English term from the original term in Han character would cause confusion. On the other hand, improper use of Western medical terms is misleading and therefore is excluded from this document.

Standard terminology versus literal translation

In this document, most terms in English correspond well to the primary translation of the Chinese original, but there are exceptions.

1. Because of historical backgrounds, many terms have alternative names. Even in the State Standard promulgated by the Chinese Government some alternative names are still retained, for there are many classical works using different terminology in Chinese, which are still of practical significance. When translating these terms, particularly from a literal approach, each alternative name should have its rendering, and as a result, one single concept may have several expressions in English. In fact, this diversity in English equivalents is of no technical significance.
2. Because of the Chinese custom of word formation, some characters are added or deleted simply for linguistic or rhetoric purpose. Since the addition or deletion is of no technical significance, it is unnecessary to reflect the change of wording in the international standard terminology.
3. Because of the evolution of TRM, the original concepts of some traditional medical terms have been changed or only one of the multiple concepts has been adopted at present. In this case, the English expression of the contemporary concept should be regarded as the standard.

In short, the international standard terminology is closely related to the appropriate translation, but it is not a simple conversion of the translation.

Contents of standard terminology

The technical terms included in this document are classified into eight categories:

1. General
2. Basic theories
3. Diagnostics
4. Disease
5. Therapeutics
6. Acupuncture & Moxibustion
7. Medicinal Treatment
8. Classics

Structure of standard terminology

The main body of standard terminology consists of the following four elements, including a temporary (accommodation) code for convenient indexing.

- 1) Code
- 2) Term (English)
- 3) Chinese (Han) Character
- 4) Definition/Description

In the Classics part, the contents are formatted in the order of Code, Chinese (Han), Pronunciation, Author/Editor, Year Issued, Country and Preferred English title/Annotation. The Year Issued is for the readers' convenience for understanding streams of development in the field of traditional medicine. Since the Year Issued for some classics can be controversial, each mother country of original classics has responsibility to determine the Year Issued.

Notes on the standard terminology

The words before and after the symbol / are interchangeable, as they come from the same Chinese original. For example, "pattern/syndrome", "pattern identification/syndrome differentiation", "meridian/channel" and "network/collateral" can be written either as pattern or syndrome, pattern identification or syndrome differentiation, meridian or channel, and network or collateral.

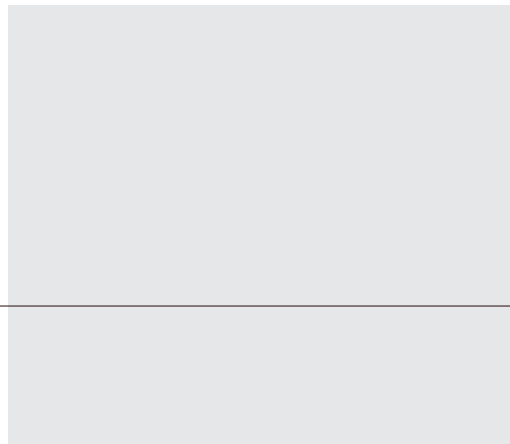
English is chosen as the main language for the international standard terminology for TRM in the Western Pacific Region, because it is the most commonly and internationally used language. Following each term in English, Han characters are attached as the given original terms. In doing so, the original complex form of a Han character is employed rather than the simplified characters, because some countries may simplify Han characters differently.

The International Standard Terminologies project has been conducted in parallel with information standardization projects like international classification for traditional medicine (ICTM), thesaurus and clinical ontology in traditional medicine. The outcome of IST is the bases for each of these information standardization projects. This 1st IST version, however, still does not fully satisfy all the needs of the three countries; therefore, further efforts will be required in the future. The Regional Office for the Western Pacific and key countries such as China, Japan, and Republic of Korea should make every effort for continuous revision. During the 2nd Informal Consultation on Development of International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine held in Tokyo, Japan from 27 to 29 June 2005, there were discussions regarding the inclusion of herbal drugs and formulas. Participants concluded that those sets of terms can be included in future editions in appropriate ways. In the same manner, other traditional medicine terminologies in our Region will be added to this ongoing series of WHO IST.

The compilation process of IST also has revealed that terminology standardization is a very challenging task due to varieties of meanings and the historical background for TRM concepts. Therefore the conventional way to compile a standard nomenclature has some limitations. In order to overcome such limitations, The Regional Office for the Western Pacific and the key countries should be responsible for developing new tools, such as ontology in TRM, describing the complicated relations of traditional medical concepts in machine readable language.

The philosophical background of this suite of standard terminology is Taoism. The first chapter of Laozi, the "bible" of Taoism, starts with "道可道, 非常道。名可名, 非常名" and the latter sentence can be translated as "A name that can be named is not the constant name." This shows Laozi's scepticism on artificial ways, including languages. The various and subjective expressions used in traditional Chinese medicine have proven his insightfulness in this field. However, without languages, how can we communicate with each other? Just as an idea may be inferred from its shadow, though not fully grasping "常", at least we are expecting "可" for readers to understand traditional medicine in our Region by using this international standard terminology.

TERMINOLOGIES



Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
0.0.0	GENERAL	總類	
0.0.1	traditional medicine	傳統醫學	the sum total of knowledge, skills and practice of holistic care for maintenance of health and treatment of disease based on indigenous theories, beliefs and experiences handed down from generation to generation
0.0.2	traditional Chinese medicine	中醫學; 中醫	the traditional medicine that originated in China, and is characterized by holism and treatment based on pattern identification/syndrome differentiation
0.0.3	Oriental medicine	東洋醫學	a general term for traditional medicine practiced in East Asian countries, e.g., Japan and Korea
0.0.4	Kampo medicine	漢方; 漢方醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced in Japan, based on ancient Chinese medicine
0.0.5	traditional Korean medicine	韓醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced in Korea, based on ancient Chinese medicine, which focuses principally on constitutional approaches
0.0.6	traditional Vietnamese medicine	越醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced in Vietnam, based on ancient Chinese medicine
0.0.7	Tibetan medicine	藏醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced in Tibet
0.0.8	Mongolian traditional medicine	蒙醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced in Mongolia
0.0.9	Uyghur medicine	維醫學	the medicine traditionally practiced by the Uyghur
0.0.10	integration of traditional Chinese and Western medicine	中西醫結合	a process of ongoing development of traditional Chinese medicine involving the incorporation of modern scientific knowledge and measures as well as blending of key aspects of traditional Chinese medicine and modern Western medicine
0.0.11	basic theory of traditional Chinese medicine	中醫基礎理論	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the basic concepts, theories, rules and principles
0.0.12	traditional Chinese diagnostics	中醫診斷學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the procedure and practice of examining patients, determining diseases and differentiating syndromes/identifying patterns of signs and symptoms of diseases, also called traditional Chinese medical diagnostics

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
0.0.13	traditional Chinese pharmacy	中藥學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the source, nature, collection, processing, dispensing, actions, effects and uses of Chinese medicines
0.0.14	formula study	方劑學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine concerned with therapeutic principles, combination of medicinal ingredients, composition of prescriptions and the clinical uses of herbal medicines, also called Chinese herbal formula study
0.0.15	processing of herbal medicinals	中藥炮製學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the theory, technology, specifications and standards of processing herbal medicine, also called preparation and processing of Chinese herbal medicine
0.0.16	meridian and collateral (study)	經絡學	the branch of acupuncture concerned with the study of structural connection, physiology, pathology, diagnostics and therapeutic principles, on the basis of meridian phenomena, also known as channel and networks study
0.0.17	acupuncture points (study)	腧穴學; 經穴學	the branch of acupuncture dealing with the study of the location, action and indication of acupuncture points and their related theories
0.0.18	traditional Chinese tuina	中醫推拿學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine concerned with the principles and clinical use of tuina (massage) therapy
0.0.19	traditional Chinese life nurturing	中醫養生學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine concerned with promotion of health, prevention of disease and longevity, also called traditional Chinese health cultivation
0.0.20	traditional Chinese rehabilitation	中醫康復學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine concerned with the restoration of function after injury or illness, also called traditional Chinese medicine rehabilitation
0.0.21	traditional Chinese nursing	中醫護理學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the study, methods and clinical application of nursing care
0.0.22	warm disease (study)	溫病學	the branch of traditional Chinese medicine dealing with the study of pathogenesis, diagnosis, treatment and prevention of warm pathogen diseases, also known as warm pathogen disease (study)

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
0.0.23	life nurturing	養生	traditional health-care to promote health, prevent disease and enhance longevity, also called health preservation/cultivation
0.0.24	rehabilitation	康復	the treatment of an ill, injured, or disabled patient with the aim of restoring normal health and function or to prevent a disability from deteriorating
0.0.25	conduction exercise	導引	promotion of health and prevention of disease by specially designed physical movements and breathing exercises, also called guiding and conducting exercise
0.0.26	classicist school	考證學派	a Kampo school which bases its study on ancient philological theories in classic textbooks
0.0.27	Gosei school	後世派	a Kampo school in Japan, mainly relies on the five-phase and meridian theory, the same as the latter-day school
0.0.28	Koho school	古方派	a Kampo school advocating the practical type of medicine of the Shanghanlun, emphasizes abdominal signs and formula-pattern coupling, the same as the antiquity school
0.0.29	Sechu school	折衷派	a Kampo school which blends traditions from the Koho and Gosei schools, the same as the eclectic school
0.0.30	Li-Zhu medicine	李朱醫學	the medicine of Li Dongyuan and Zhu Danxi
0.0.31	constitution	體質; 稟賦	the characteristics of an individual, including structural and functional characteristics, temperament, adaptability to environmental changes and susceptibility to disease. It is relatively stable, being in part, genetically determined and in part, acquired
0.0.32	constitutional medicine	體質醫學	the branch of medicine based on assessment of an individual's constitution involving physiology, pathology, diagnosis, treatment and maintenance of health
0.0.33	Four-Constitution Medicine	四象醫學	the branch of traditional Korean medicine initiated by Lee Je-ma, which stresses the theory of the four constitutions: physiology, pathology, diagnosis, and maintenance of health, also called Sasang Constitutional Medicine

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
0.0.34	four constitution types	四象人	four types of constitution: a greater yang person: a lesser yang person: a greater yin person: and a lesser yin person
0.0.35	greater yang person	太陽人	one who has strong lung and weak liver in the context of Four-Constitution Medicine, also called a Tai-yang person
0.0.36	lesser yang person	少陽人	one who has strong spleen and weak kidney in the context of Four-Constitution Medicine, also called a So-yang person
0.0.37	greater yin person	太陰人	one who has strong liver and weak lung in the context of Four-Constitution Medicine, also called a Tai-eum person
0.0.38	lesser yin person	少陰人	one who has strong kidney and weak spleen in the context of Four-Constitution Medicine, also called a So-eum person

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.0.0	BASIC THEORIES	基礎理論	
1.1.0	Essential Qi Theory, Yin-yang Theory, and Five Phase Theory	精氣學說, 陰陽學說, 五行學說	
1.1.1	correspondence between nature and human	天人相應	one of the basic concepts in traditional Chinese medicine which emphasizes that humans are in adaptive conformity with the natural environment
1.1.2	holism	整體觀念	one of the philosophical ideas regarding the human body as an organic whole, which is integrated with the external environment
1.1.3	pattern identification/syndrome differentiation and treatment	辨證論治	diagnosis of the pattern/syndrome, through comprehensive analysis of symptoms and signs, which has implications for determining the cause, nature and location of the illness and the patient's physical condition, and their treatment
1.1.4	essential qi theory	精氣學說	one of the basic theories in traditional Chinese medicine about qi, the essential part of which constitutes the body and maintain the activities of life, visceral function and metabolism
1.1.5	yin-yang theory	陰陽學說	an ancient Chinese philosophical concept, dealing with two opposite aspects of matters in nature which are interrelated with each other. Its principle is widely applied to traditional Chinese medicine
1.1.6	yin and yang	陰陽	the general descriptive terms for the two opposite, complementary and inter-related cosmic forces found in all matter in nature. The ceaseless motion of both yin and yang gives rise to all changes seen in the world
1.1.7	yin	陰	In Chinese philosophy, the feminine, latent and passive principle (characterized by dark, cold, wetness, passivity, disintegration, etc.) of the two opposing cosmic forces into which creative energy divides and whose fusion in physical matter brings the phenomenal world into being
1.1.8	yang	陽	In Chinese philosophy, the masculine, active and positive principle (characterized by light, warmth, dryness, activity, etc.) of the two opposing cosmic

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			forces into which creative energy divides and whose fusion in physical matter brings the phenomenal world into being
1.1.9	yang within yin	陰中之陽	the yang aspect of the yin category, for example, the night is regarded as yin in relation to daytime, the period between midnight and dawn is the yang part within yin
1.1.10	yin within yin	陰中之陰	the yin aspect of the yin category, for example, the night is regarded as yin in relation to daytime, the period from nightfall to midnight is the yin part within yin
1.1.11	yang within yang	陽中之陽	the yang aspect of the yang category, for example, the daytime is regarded as yang in relation to night, and the period between dawn and noon is the yang part within yang
1.1.12	yin within yang	陽中之陰	the yin aspect of the yang category, for example, the daytime is regarded as yang in relation to night, and the period between midday and nightfall is the yin part of yang
1.1.13	opposition of yin and yang	陰陽對立	the mutually opposing, repelling and contending relationship between yin and yang
1.1.14	mutual rooting of yin and yang	陰陽互根	the mutually dependent relationship between yin and yang, the same as interdependence between yin and yang
1.1.15	waxing and waning of yin and yang	陰陽消長	alternation of strength and prevalence between the paired yin and yang, the same as natural flux of yin and yang or inter-consuming-supporting relationship of yin and yang
1.1.16	yin-yang balance	陰陽平衡	the state in which yin and yang are balanced
1.1.17	yin-yang harmony	陰陽調和	the state in which yin and yang are in harmonious coordination
1.1.18	yin-yang conversion	陰陽轉化	the property of the same thing can be transformed between yin and yang, also called inter-transformation of yin and yang
1.1.19	extreme yin resembling yang	陰極似陽	a pathological change in which yang qi is extremely weakened while yin is exuberant in the interior,

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			forcing the yang qi to float on the surface, forming a true cold and false heat pattern/syndrome
1.1.20	extreme yang resembling yin	陽極似陰	a pathological change in which extremely exuberant pathogenic heat makes yang qi depressed and deeply hidden in the interior, with yin restricted to the outside, giving rise to a true heat and false cold pattern/syndrome
1.1.21	five phase theory	五行學說	one of the philosophical theories of medical practice in ancient China, concerning the composition and evolution of the physical universe, epitomized by the nature and the inhibition-generation relationships of the five phases, wood, fire, earth, metal and water, serving as the guiding ideology and methodology of physiology, pathology, clinical diagnosis and treatment, also known as five elements theory
1.1.22	five phases	五行	the five phases: wood, fire, earth, metal and water, and their movements and changes, also known as five elements
1.1.23	wood	木	one of the five phases, with which the season spring, the color blue or green, the taste sourness, and the liver and gallbladder in the body are associated
1.1.24	fire	火	one of the five phases, with which the season summer, the color red, the taste bitterness, and the heart and small intestine in the body are associated
1.1.25	earth	土	one of the five phases, with which the season of late summer, the color yellow, the taste sweetness, and the spleen and stomach in the body are associated
1.1.26	metal	金	one of the five phases, with which the season autumn, the color white, the taste acidity-pungent, and the lung and large intestine in the body are associated
1.1.27	water	水	(1) one of the five phases, with which the season winter, the color black, the taste saltiness, and the kidney and bladder in the body are associated; (2) pathologic aspect of body fluid
1.1.28	categorization according to the five phases	五行歸類	classification of material things and phenomena into five categories by comparing their structures, properties and actions with the five phases

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.1.29	engendering	(相)生	the relationship in which each phase and its associated phenomena give rise to or promote another sequential phase, also the same as generating
1.1.30	wood engenders fire	木生火	the category of wood generates or promotes the category of fire, also the same as wood generating fire
1.1.31	fire engenders earth	火生土	the category of fire generates or promotes the category of earth, also called fire generating earth
1.1.32	earth engenders metal	土生金	the category of earth generates or promotes the category of metal, also called earth generating metal
1.1.33	metal engenders water	金生水	the category of metal generates or promotes the category of water, also called metal generating water
1.1.34	water engenders wood	水生木	the category of water generates or promotes the category of wood, also called water generating wood
1.1.35	restraining	(相)克	the relationship in which each phase and its associated phenomena restrict/check/control another phase
1.1.36	wood restrains earth	木克土	the category of wood restricts or checks the category of earth, also called wood controlling earth
1.1.37	fire restrains metal	火克金	the category of fire restricts or checks the category of metal, also called fire controlling metal
1.1.38	earth restrains water	土克水	the category of earth restricts or checks the category of water, also called earth controlling water
1.1.39	water restrains fire	水克火	the category of water restricts or checks the category of fire, also called water controlling fire
1.1.40	metal restrains wood	金克木	the category of metal restricts or checks the category of wood, also called metal controlling wood
1.1.41	overwhelming	(相)乘	abnormally severe restraining of the five phases in the same sequence as normal restraining, also known as over-acting
1.1.42	rebellion	(相)侮	restraining opposite to that of the normal restraining sequence of the five phases, also known as insulting

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.1.43	five constants	五常	a collective term referring to wood, fire, earth, metal and water in normal movement
1.1.44	inhibition and generation	制化	the engendering and restraining relationships for maintaining a relative balance and normal coordination in the five phase theory
1.1.45	harmful hyperactivity and responding inhibition	亢害承制	one of the principles of the five phase theory indicating that hyperactivity of any phase is harmful, and its restriction will restore the normal balance
1.1.46	mother qi	母氣	qi of the viscus that engenders in the engendering sequential relationship of the five phases
1.1.47	child qi	子氣	qi of the viscus that is engendered in the engendering sequential relationship of the five phases
1.1.48	mother and child affecting each other	母子相及	influence of one phase exerted on the phase that it engenders or that engenders it sequentially
1.2.0	Essence, Spirit, Qi, Blood, Fluid and Humor	精, 神, 氣, 血, 津液	
1.2.1	essence	精	(1) the fundamental substance that builds up the physical structure and maintains body function; (2) reproductive essence stored in the kidney
1.2.2	innate essence	先天之精	the original substance responsible for construction of the body and generation of offspring, often referring to the reproductive essence, also called prenatal essence
1.2.3	acquired essence	後天之精	the essential substance acquired from the food after digestion and absorption, and used to maintain the vital activities and metabolism of the body, the same as postnatal essence
1.2.4	kidney essence	腎精	the original essence stored in the kidney
1.2.5	mind	神	mental activities, referring to mentality, consciousness, thinking and feeling
1.2.6	spirit	神	spiritual activities
1.2.7	vitality	神	manifestations of vital functioning

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.2.8	essence-spirit	精神	state of mind or mood, reflection of the strength of essence, also called spirit or mind
1.2.9	ethereal soul	魂	the moral and spiritual part of the human being
1.2.10	corporeal soul	魄	the animating part of one's mind
1.2.11	ideation	意	act or power of thinking and forming ideas
1.2.12	will	志	mental power by which a person can direct his thoughts and actions
1.2.13	life gate	命門	(1) the place where qi transformation of the human body originates, serving as the root of life; (2) right kidney; (3) acupuncture point (GV4)
1.2.14	life gate fire	命門之火; 先天之火	innate fire from the life gate, a synonym of kidney yang
1.2.15	sovereign fire	君火	another name for heart fire, in contrast to the ministerial fire
1.2.16	ministerial fire	相火	a kind of physiological fire originating in the kidney and attached to the liver, gallbladder and triple energizer, which, in cooperation with the sovereign fire from the heart, warms the viscera and promotes their activities. If this fire is hyperactive, it is also harmful to the body
1.2.17	qi	氣	the basic element that constitutes the cosmos and, through its movements, changes and transformations, produces everything in the world, including the human body and life activities. In the field of medicine, qi refers both to the refined nutritive substance that flows within the human body as well as to its functional activities
1.2.18	innate qi	先天之氣	the qi that exists from birth and is stored in the kidney, also the same as prenatal qi
1.2.19	acquired qi	後天之氣	the qi that is acquired after birth and is formed from the food in combination with the fresh air inhaled in the lung, also the same as post-natal qi
1.2.20	healthy qi	正氣	a collective designation for all normal functions of the human body and the abilities to maintain health, including the abilities of self-regulation, adaptation

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			to the environment, resistance against pathogens and self-recovery from illness, the same as normal/genuine qi
1.2.21	genuine qi	真氣	the combination of the innate qi and the acquired qi, serving as the physical substrata and dynamic force of all vital functions, also known as true qi
1.2.22	source qi	原氣；元氣	the combination of the innate qi and the acquired qi, serving as the most fundamental qi of the human body; the same as original/primordial qi
1.2.23	ancestral qi	宗氣	the combination of the essential qi derived from food with the air inhaled, stored in the chest, and serving as the dynamic force of blood circulation, respiration, voice, and bodily movements, the same as pectoral qi
1.2.24	defense qi	衛氣	the qi that moves outside the vessels, protecting the body surface and warding off external pathogens, the same as defensive qi
1.2.25	nutrient qi	營氣	the qi that moves within the vessels and nourishes all the organs and tissues, the same as nutritive qi
1.2.26	fluid qi	津氣	(1) the same as fluid; (2) the qi carried by fluid
1.2.27	visceral qi	臟氣	(1) the qi that enables the viscera to perform their activities; (2) the functional activities of viscera
1.2.28	bowel qi	腑氣	(1) the qi that enables the bowels to perform their activities; (2) the functional activities of bowels
1.2.29	heart qi	心氣	essential qi of the heart, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the heart
1.2.30	liver qi	肝氣	essential qi of the liver, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the liver
1.2.31	spleen qi	脾氣	essential qi of the spleen, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the spleen
1.2.32	lung qi	肺氣	essential qi of the lung, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the lung

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.2.33	kidney qi	腎氣	essential qi of the kidney, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the kidney
1.2.34	stirring qi of the kidney region	腎間動氣	that part of genuine qi stored between the kidneys, as the motive force necessary for all the activities of the body, also known as motive force of the kidney region
1.2.35	gallbladder qi	膽氣	essential qi of the gallbladder, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the gallbladder
1.2.36	stomach qi	胃氣	essential qi of the stomach, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the stomach. Also used to denote a state of basic vitality detected by examination of the radial pulse
1.2.37	middle qi	中氣	qi of the middle energizer, the physical substrata and dynamic force of the functional activities of the spleen, stomach and small intestine, including digestion, absorption, transportation, upbearing of the clear and downbearing of the turbid
1.2.38	meridian qi	經氣; 經絡之氣	the qi that flows through the meridians, the same as collateral qi
1.2.39	yin qi	陰氣	the yin aspect of qi, particularly referring to that aspect of qi as physical substrata
1.2.40	yang qi	陽氣	the yang aspect of qi, particularly referring to that aspect of qi as functional activities
1.2.41	qi transformation	氣化	a general term referring to various changes through the activity of qi, namely the metabolism and mutual transformation between essence, qi, blood and fluids
1.2.42	qi movement	氣機	movement of qi, including ascending, descending, exiting and entering as its basic forms, also known as qi dynamic/qi mechanism
1.2.43	upward, downward, inward and outward movement	升降出入	the basic forms of qi movement, that is, ascending, descending, exiting and entering
1.2.44	blood	血	the red fluid circulating through the blood vessels, and nourishing and moistening the whole body

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.2.45	nutrient and blood	營血	a collective term for nutrient and blood
1.2.46	fluid	津	the liquid substance that circulates with qi and blood, also known as thin fluid
1.2.47	humor	液	the thick fluid stored in body cavities such as bowels, viscera, articular and cranial cavities, also known as thick fluid
1.2.48	fluid and humor	津液	a general term for all kinds of normal fluid in the body, except the blood, also known as body fluids
1.2.49	homogeny of fluid and blood	津血同源	the physiological phenomenon that body fluid and blood share a common source, the essential qi of food
1.2.50	homogeny of essence and blood	精血同源	the physiological phenomenon that essence and blood share a common source, the essential qi of food
1.2.51	sweat	汗	the fluid that exudes from sweat glands; the humor of the heart
1.2.52	tears	淚	the fluid secreted by the lacrimal glands; the humor of the liver
1.2.53	drool	涎	thinner saliva; the humor of the spleen
1.2.54	snivel	涕	the fluid that exudes from the nose; the humor of the lung
1.2.55	spittle	唾	thicker saliva; the humor of the kidney
1.2.56	nutrient and defense	營衛	a collective term for nutrient qi and defense qi
1.2.57	qi, blood and water	氣血水	the three vital substances of the human body, any of which, when overwhelmed by toxin, causes disease
1.2.58	water and food	水穀	a term referring to food and drink; diet
1.3.0	Viscera and Bowels	臟腑	
1.3.1	visceral manifestation	臟象	the outward manifestation of internal organs through which physiological functions as well as pathological changes can be detected and the state of health appraised

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.2	visceral manifestation theory	臟象學說	the theory dealing with the study of physiological functions and pathological changes of the internal organs as well as their interrelationship and external manifestation
1.3.3	viscus	臟	an internal organ where essence and qi are formed and stored, viscera in plural
1.3.4	bowel	腑	an internal organ where food is received, transported and digested
1.3.5	viscera and bowels	臟腑	a collective term for internal organs, also called zang-organs and fu-organs
1.3.6	five viscera	五臟	a collective term for the heart, liver, spleen, lung and kidney
1.3.7	six bowels	六腑	a collective term for the gallbladder, stomach, large intestine, small intestine, urinary bladder and triple energizers
1.3.8	yang viscus	陽臟	viscera of yang nature, referring to the heart and the liver
1.3.9	yin viscus	陰臟	viscera of yin nature, referring to the spleen, the lung and the kidney
1.3.10	heart	心	the organ located in the thoracic cavity above the diaphragm, which controls blood circulation and mental activities
1.3.11	liver	肝	the organ located in the right hypochondrium below the diaphragm, which stores blood, facilitates the coursing of qi, and is closely related to the function of the sinews and eyes
1.3.12	spleen	脾	the organ located in the middle energizer below the diaphragm, whose main function is to transport and transform food, upbear the clear substances, keep the blood flowing within the vessels, and is closely related to the limbs and flesh
1.3.13	lung	肺	a pair of organs located in the thoracic cavity above the diaphragm, which control respiration, dominate qi, govern diffusion and depurative downbearing, regulate the waterways, and are closely related to the function of the nose and skin surface

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.14	kidney	腎	a pair of organs located in the lumbar region, which store vital essence, promote growth, development, reproduction, and urinary function, and also have a direct effect on the condition of the bone and marrow, activities of the brain, hearing and inspiratory function of the respiratory system
1.3.15	pericardium	心包; 心包絡	the outer covering of the heart, including the pericardium collateral
1.3.16	gallbladder	膽	one of the six bowels, which, connecting with the liver, stores and discharges bile
1.3.17	stomach	胃	one of the six bowels, whose main function is to receive and initiate food digestion
1.3.18	small intestine	小腸	one of the six bowels, whose main function is to receive food content of the stomach, further digest it and absorb nutrients and water
1.3.19	large intestine	大腸	one of the six bowels, which receives waste passed down from the small intestine and then forms it into stool before discharging it from the body
1.3.20	bladder	膀胱; 胞	one of the six bowels, which stores and discharges urine
1.3.21	triple energizers	三焦	a collective term for the three portions of the body cavity, through which the visceral qi is transformed, also widely known as triple burners
1.3.22	upper energizer	上焦	the chest cavity, i.e., the portion above the diaphragm housing the heart and lung, also known as upper burner
1.3.23	middle energizer	中焦	the upper abdominal cavity, i.e., the portion between the diaphragm and the umbilicus housing the spleen, stomach, liver and gallbladder, also known as middle burner
1.3.24	lower energizer	下焦	the lower abdominal cavity, i.e., the portion below the umbilicus housing the kidneys, bladder, small and large intestines, also known as lower burner
1.3.25	extraordinary organs	奇恒之腑	a collective term for the brain, marrow, bones, blood vessels, gallbladder and uterus. They are called

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			extraordinary because their morphological and physiological properties are different from the ordinary bowels and viscera
1.3.26	brain	腦	one of the extraordinary organs enclosed within the skull where the marrow converges, and the spirit, mental activities as well as thinking take place
1.3.27	house of the original spirit	元神之府	another name for the brain, being the source of mental activities
1.3.28	sea of marrow	髓海	another name for the brain, being where the marrow assembles
1.3.29	marrow	髓	an extraordinary organ including bone marrow and spinal marrow, both of which are nourished by the kidney essence
1.3.30	bone	骨	one of the extraordinary organs that forms the framework of the body, protects the internal organs and facilitates movement
1.3.31	vessel	脈	the conduit through which qi and blood pass
1.3.32	placenta	胞	one of the extraordinary organs lining the uterus during pregnancy by which the fetus is nourished, and from which it is expelled at birth
1.3.33	uterus	胞；胞宮；女子胞	(in women) organ in which offspring is carried and nourished while it develops before birth
1.3.34	blood chamber	血室	another name for the uterus
1.3.35	vagina	陰道	genital canal in the female, leading from the uterus to the vulva
1.3.36	heart blood	心血	the blood governed by the heart, which flows all over the body, particularly that part of blood serving as the basis for the physiological activities of the heart, including mental activities
1.3.37	heart yin	心陰	yin essence of the heart, the opposite of heart yang, the quiescent and moistening aspect of heart function
1.3.38	heart yang	心陽	yang qi of the heart, which stimulates the activities of the heart and mind, and has a warming action

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.39	liver blood	肝血	the blood that is stored in the liver and nourishes the liver system, including the liver itself, liver meridian, eyes, tendons and nails, as well as the whole body
1.3.40	liver yin	肝陰	the opposite of liver yang, the liver essence-blood and the quiescent and nutritive aspect of liver function, which also inhibits overactivity of liver yang
1.3.41	liver yang	肝陽	yang qi of the liver, opposite to liver yin, referring chiefly to the warming, upbearing and coursing-freeing function of the liver
1.3.42	spleen yin	脾陰	yin fluid of the spleen, in opposition to spleen yang, referring to the moistening, nourishing and astringing aspect of the spleen
1.3.43	spleen yang	脾陽	the yang aspect of the spleen, which refers to the promotion of spleen functions including transporting, transforming, upbearing and warming actions
1.3.44	lung yin	肺陰	the opposite of lung yang, the yin fluid that moistens the lung, in coordination with lung qi
1.3.45	lung yang	肺陽	the yang aspect of the lung, referring to the warming, moving, ascending and diffusing functions of the lung
1.3.46	kidney yin	腎陰	the yin aspect of the kidney, which has a moistening, nourishing and cooling effect on all organs
1.3.47	kidney yang	腎陽	the yang aspect of the kidney, which warms and activates all organs
1.3.48	stomach yin	胃陰	the opposite of stomach yang, the fluids of the stomach necessary for maintaining normal food intake and preliminary digestion in coordination with stomach yang
1.3.49	stomach yang	胃陽	the opposite of stomach yin, the yang qi of the stomach, referring to the activity or function of the stomach in food intake and preliminary digestion
1.3.50	stomach fluid	胃津	fluid of the stomach, the same as stomach yin
1.3.51	bright spirit	神明	all the human life activities including mind, will, mood and thinking, governed by the heart

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.52	blood vessel	血脈	the vessels in which blood circulates
1.3.53	separation of the clear and turbid	泌別清濁	the small intestine's function, by which the clear (the food essence and water) is absorbed while the turbid (the waste matter) is passed to the large intestine
1.3.54	upbearing and effusion	升發	the upward and outward movement of qi, a function governed by the liver, the same as sending the qi upwards, outwards and throughout the body
1.3.55	unyielding viscus	剛臟	an internal organ that has a tendency to hyperactivity and counterflow of qi, referring to the liver, also known as resolute viscus
1.3.56	free coursing	疏泄	referring to the function of the liver that ensures the free movement of qi and prevents qi stagnation, also known as soothing
1.3.57	sea of blood	血海	a term referring to: (1) the thoroughfare vessel; (2) the liver
1.3.58	upbearing the clear	升清	referring to the function of spleen that sends the food essence to the heart and lung, the same as sending the clear upward
1.3.59	downbearing the turbid	降濁	referring to the function of the stomach that sends the partially digested food down to the intestines, the same as sending the turbid downward
1.3.60	transportation and transformation	運化	the function of the spleen by which the essence is transformed from food and drink, absorbed, and distributed to all parts of the body
1.3.61	engendering transformation	生化	referring to formation of qi and blood from food essence that is closely related to the spleen function, also known as generation and transformation
1.3.62	delicate viscus	嬌臟	an expression referring to the lung which is the viscus most susceptible to invasion by external pathogens
1.3.63	receptacle that holds phlegm	貯痰之器	the organ where phlegm collects, referring to the lung
1.3.64	upper source of water	水之上源	an expression referring to the lung, which is situated in the upper energizer regulating water metabolism

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.65	breathing	呼吸	drawing air into the lung and expelling it to perform gas exchange, the same as respiration
1.3.66	management and regulation	治節	the function of the lung to keep the physiological activity of the whole body in balance
1.3.67	purification and down-sending	肅降	the downward movement and purifying action of lung qi in contrast to its diffusing action
1.3.68	diffusion	宣發	the upward and outward movement of lung qi, also known as dispersion
1.3.69	waterways	水道	the pathway of water metabolism in the body
1.3.70	regulate the waterways	通調水道	dredge and regulate the pathway of water metabolism
1.3.71	heavenly tenth	天癸	that upon which development of the reproductive organs and maintenance of reproductive function depends, derived from the kidney essence when it is abundant, also called (female) sex-stimulating essence/menstruation
1.3.72	reproduction	生殖	the process by which humans give rise to offspring
1.3.73	qi absorption	納氣	the action of the kidney in connection with normal respiration. The lung sends the qi down to the kidney, which holds the qi down, and then absorbs it
1.3.74	innate	先天	possessed from birth, relating to the natural endowment, in contrast to acquired after birth, the same as inborn
1.3.75	root of innate endowment	先天之本	that which is inherited at conception
1.3.76	bladder qi transformation	膀胱氣化	the function of the bladder in storing and discharging urine, based on qi transformation of the kidney
1.3.77	heart-kidney interaction	心腎相交	superior-inferior, ascending-descending, water-fire and yin-yang coordination between the heart and kidney
1.3.78	heart opens at the tongue	心開竅于舌	the heart opens into the tongue, reflecting its physiological and pathological conditions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.3.79	lung opens at the nose	肺開竅于鼻	the lung opens into the nose, reflecting its physiological and pathological conditions
1.3.80	spleen opens at the mouth	脾開竅于口	the spleen opens into the mouth, reflecting its physiological and pathological conditions
1.3.81	liver opens at the eyes	肝開竅于目	the liver opens into the eyes, reflecting its physiological and pathological conditions
1.3.82	kidney opens at the ears	腎開竅于耳	the kidney opens into the ears, reflecting its physiological and pathological conditions
1.3.83	homogeny of liver and kidney	肝腎同源	the liver and the kidney are intimately related, as they nourish and support each other, the blood stored in the liver and the essence stored in the kidney are of the same origin, and the ministerial fire present in both the liver and the kidney is from a common source
1.4.0	Meridian and Collateral	經絡	
1.4.1	meridian and collateral	經絡	a system of conduits through which qi and blood circulate, connecting the bowels, viscera, extremities, superficial organs and tissues, making the body an organic whole, the same as channels and networks; meridians or channels, in short
1.4.2	meridian and collateral theory	經絡學說	a theory concerned the meridians and collaterals, the same as channels and networks theory
1.4.3	meridian vessel	經脈	the main pathways of qi and blood coursing vertically, composed of the twelve regular meridians and the eight extra meridians, the same as channel vessel
1.4.4	three yin meridians of the hand	手三陰經	the meridians/channels running through the anterior aspect of the upper limbs from the chest to the hands, namely, the lung meridian, the heart meridian and the pericardium meridian
1.4.5	three yang meridians of the hand	手三陽經	the meridians/channels running through the posterior aspect of the upper limbs from the hands to the head, namely, the large intestine meridian, the small intestine meridian and the triple energizer meridian
1.4.6	three yang meridians of the foot	足三陽經	the meridians/channels running from the head through the back downward to the feet, namely, the

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			stomach meridian, the bladder meridian and the gallbladder meridian
1.4.7	three yin meridians of the foot	足三陰經	the meridians/channels running through the medial side of the lower limbs from the feet to the abdomen and chest, namely, the spleen meridian, the kidney meridian and the liver meridian
1.4.8	fourteen meridians	十四經; 十四經脈	a collective term for the twelve regular meridians plus the governor and conception vessels
1.4.9	twelve meridians	十二經; 十二正經; 十二經脈	a collective term for the three yin meridians and three yang meridians of each hand and foot, also the same as twelve regular meridians
1.4.10	lung meridian (LU)	手太陰肺經	one of the regular twelve meridians which begins internally in the middle energizer, descends to connect with the large intestine, then ascends to the lung and throat, courses laterally and exits superficially at zhongfu (LU1), and then descends along the lateral side of the arm and forearm, terminates at shaoshang (LU11), with 11 acupuncture points on either side
1.4.11	large intestine meridian (LI)	手陽明大腸經	one of the regular twelve meridians which originates at shangyang (LI1) and ascends the dorsal surface of the hand and forearm, the lateral side of the arm, the dorsal side of the shoulder to jugu (LI16) where the meridian/channel enters internally and travels posteriorly to dazhui (GV14), and then courses anteriorly to the supraclavicular fossa where it descends past the diaphragm to connect with the large intestine. The superficial supraclavicular branch ascends the anterior lateral neck and the mandible, connects internally with the lower teeth, encircles the lips and terminates at the opposite yingxiang (LI20). There are 20 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.12	stomach meridian (ST)	足陽明胃經	one of the regular twelve meridians which originates internally at the lateral edge of the nose, then continues to ST1 at the inferior border of the orbit, descends to the upper gum, courses around the mouth, and travels up to ST8 at the hairline of the temple. From here it continues internally to terminate at GV24. The facial branch descends from ST5 where it turns internally and descends past the diaphragm to connect with

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			the stomach and spleen. The supraclavicular fossa branch descends along the midclavicular line to ST30 in the inguinal region, then anteriorly along the lateral margin of the femur to the patella, terminating at ST45 on the lateral side of the tip of the second toe. The gastric branch descends internally past the umbilicus and terminates at ST30. The tibial branch leaves ST36 and descends along the fibula, terminating at the lateral side of the tip of the middle toe. The dorsal foot branch leaves ST42 and descends to the medial side of the great toe at SP1. There are 45 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.13	spleen meridian (SP)	足太陰脾經	one of the twelve regular meridians which runs from yinbai (SP1) at the medial side of the great toe, ascends along the medial side of the foot and tibia and anteromedial side of the thigh to the lower abdomen. It then enters the abdomen and connects with the spleen and stomach. The meridian ascends at a distance of 4.0 cun lateral to the conception vessel, and terminates superficially at dabao (SP21) in the sixth intercostal space on the midaxillary line. The meridian continues internally past the supraclavicular fossa and terminates at the base of the tongue. The gastric branch leaves the stomach and ascends internally past the diaphragm and connects with the heart. There are 21 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.14	heart meridian (HT)	手少陰心經	one of the twelve regular meridians which originates in the heart, descends internally past the diaphragm and connects with the small intestine. The cardiac branch ascends internally paralateral to the esophagus and terminates at the eye. The main branch leaves the heart, traverses the lung and emerges superficially in the midaxilla at jiquan (HT1) and descends along the ulnar side of the forearm medially, terminating at shaochong (HT9) on the radial side of the tip of the small finger, with 9 acupuncture points on either side
1.4.15	small intestine meridian (SI)	手太陽小腸經	one of the twelve regular meridians which originates at shaoze (SI1) at the ulnar side of the little finger, ascends the ulnar side of the forearm, the arm, over the scapula to dazhui (GV14) between the spinous processes of the 7th cervical and 1st thoracic vertebrae. The meridian then descends internally to

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			the heart, and follows the esophagus past the diaphragm, to connect with the small intestine. The supraclavicular fossa branch ascends superficially along the lateral side of the neck, past the cheek to the lateral corner of the eye, and terminates at tinggong (SI19). the buccal branch leaves the main meridian at the cheek, and ascends to the medial canthus of the eye. There are 19 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.16	bladder meridian (BL)	足太陽膀胱經	one of the twelve regular meridians which runs from jingming (BL1) at the medial canthus of the eye, ascends the forehead to the vertex and then enters the brain and exits at the nape of the neck where it divides into two parallel branches: the first branch descends the back at a distance of 1.5 cun from the spine, and during its course it connects with the kidney and bladder, and continues along the posterior thigh to the popliteal crease; the second branch descends the back at a distance of 3 cun from the spine, continues along the latero-posterior side of the thigh to popliteal fold where it meets the first branch. The meridian continues to descend along the posterior calf to the lateral malleolus, terminating at zhiyin (BL67) on the lateral side of the tip of the small toe. There are 67 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.17	kidney meridian (KI)	足少陰腎經	one of the twelve regular meridians which begins on the plantar tip of the small toe and travels to yongquan (KI1) in the center of the sole, continues along the medial side of the lower limb to the symphysis pubis, turns internally to the kidney and bladder, and back to the symphysis pubis, ascending along the abdomen and chest up to shufu (KI27) in the depression between the first rib and the lower border of the clavicle, with 27 acupuncture points on either side
1.4.18	pericardium meridian (PC)	手厥陰心包經	one of the twelve regular meridians which originates in the center of the thorax, connects with the pericardium, and descends to the lower abdomen, linking all the three energizers. The thoracic branch exits superficially at tianchi (PC1) near the nipple, and descends along the midline of anterior side of the arm to zhongchong (PC9) at the midpoint of the tip of the middle finger, with 9 acupuncture points on either side

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.4.19	triple energizer meridian (TE)	手少陽三焦經	one of the twelve regular meridians which runs from guanchong (TE1) at the ulnar side of the ring finger, travels along the midline of the posterior side of the arm and through the regions of the shoulder, neck, ear and eye, and terminates at sizhukong (TE23) at the lateral aspect of canthus. A branch is sent from the supraclavicular fossa to the pericardium and down through the thorax and abdomen, linking the upper, middle and lower energizers. There are 23 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.20	gallbladder meridian (GB)	足少陽膽經	one of the twelve regular meridians which runs from tongziliaox (GB1) at the lateral canthus of the eye, through the regions of the temple, ear, neck, shoulder, flank, and the outer side of the lower limb, terminating at zuqiaoyin (GB44) on the lateral side of the tip of the 4th toe. The post-auricular branch travels into the ear and down to the supraclavicular fossa where it joins the original branch. It continues down into the chest, past the diaphragm, connecting with the gallbladder and liver, and travels down to the lower abdomen into the inguinal canal. The dorsal foot branch leaves the main meridian at zulinqi (GB41) and descends between the first and second metatarsals, terminating at the base of the great toe nail. There are 44 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.21	liver meridian (LR)	足厥陰肝經	one of the twelve regular meridians which runs from dadun (LR1) on the medial aspect of the big toe just behind the nail, through the inner side of the lower limb, external genitalia and abdomen, to qimen (LR14), a point about 2 cun below the nipple. From qimen (LR14) the meridian/channel enters the abdomen, traverses through the stomach paraventricularly to connect with the liver and gallbladder. From the liver, the meridian/channel ascends past the diaphragm along the trachea, larynx, sinus cavity, connecting with the eye, and then ascends to the vertex where it meets the governor vessel at baihui (GV20). There are 14 acupuncture points on either side of the body
1.4.22	main meridian	正經	another name of twelve meridians, also called regular meridian
1.4.23	extra meridian	奇經	an abbreviation for eight extra meridians

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.4.24	eight extra meridians	奇經八脈	a collective term for governor vessel, conception vessel, thoroughfare vessel, belt vessel, yin heel vessel, yang heel vessel, yin link vessel, and yang link vessel
1.4.25	governor vessel (GV)	督脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates in the lower abdomen and exits at changqiang (GV1), a point at the back of the anus, sending one branch forward to huiyin (CV1). The main portion of the meridian/channel ascends along the midline of the back to the top of the head and then descends along the midline of the face down to yinjiao (GV28), a point between the upper lip and the upper gum in the labia frenum, also called governing vessel
1.4.26	conception vessel (CV)	任脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates in the lower abdomen, exists at huiyin (CV1), a point in the center of perineum, and ascends the midline of the abdominal wall and chest to chengjiang (CV24), midpoint of the mentolabial sulcus. The internal portion of this meridian/channel ascends from chengjiang (CV24), encircling the mouth and traveling to the eyes. Another branch travels internally from the pelvic cavity and ascends the spine to the throat, also called controlling vessel
1.4.27	thoroughfare vessel	衝脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates in the lower abdomen, exits at the perineum, and comes into confluence with kidney meridian and then runs upward along the two sides of the abdomen to the chest
1.4.28	belt vessel	帶脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates from the lower part of hypochondrium and passes around the waist
1.4.29	yin heel vessel	陰蹻脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates from the medial side of the heel, running upward along the medial side of the lower limb, through the front external genitalia, the abdomen, chest, neck, either side of the nose and terminating in the eye
1.4.30	yang heel vessel	陽蹻脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates from the lateral side of the heel, running upward along the outer ankle, the lateral side of the lower limb, through the abdomen, chest, shoulder and cheek, terminating at the back of the neck

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.4.31	yin link vessel	陰維脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates from the upper part of the inner ankle, running upward along the medial side of the lower limb, through the abdomen, chest and throat, terminating at the back of the neck
1.4.32	yang link vessel	陽維脈	one of the eight extra meridians which originates from the lower part of the outer ankle running upward along the lateral side of the lower limb, through the side of the trunk, the shoulder, neck and terminating at the top of the head
1.4.33	twelve meridian divergences	十二經別	the divergent passages of the twelve main meridians going deep in the body
1.4.34	meridian divergence	經別	the divergent passage of a regular meridian going deep in the body
1.4.35	twelve meridian sinews	十二經筋	the sinew systems attributed to the twelve meridians
1.4.36	meridian sinew	經筋	the sinew system attributed to a certain meridian/channel
1.4.37	twelve cutaneous regions	十二皮部	the regions of the skin reflecting the functional condition of the twelve meridians respectively
1.4.38	cutaneous region	皮部	the region of the skin reflecting the functional condition of a certain meridian
1.4.39	collateral vessel	絡脈	the small branches of the meridians, serving as a network linking the various aspects of the body
1.4.40	fifteen collateral vessels	十五絡脈	a collective term referring to the main collaterals derived from the fourteen meridians and together with the great collateral of the spleen, fifteen in all
1.4.41	great collateral vessel of the spleen	脾之大絡	the collateral that emerges from dabao (SP21) and spread over the thoracic and hypochondriac regions
1.4.42	tertiary collateral vessel	孫絡	small branches of the collateral/network, also known as grandchild collateral vessel
1.4.43	superficial collateral vessel	浮絡	collateral/network vessels in the superficial layers of the body

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.5.0	Body Constituents and Orifices of Sense Organ	形體和官竅; 身體構造	
1.5.1	body constituent	形體	a collective term for skin, vessels, flesh, sinews and bones
1.5.2	skin and (body) hair	皮毛	a collective term for the skin and its fine hair
1.5.3	interstices	腠理	a term referring to the striae of the skin, muscles and viscera, and also to the tissue between the skin and muscles
1.5.4	mysterious mansion	玄府	another name for sweat pore. It is so named because it is too minute to be visible
1.5.5	qi gate	氣門	another name for sweat pore
1.5.6	border between the red and white flesh	赤白肉際	the skin boundary between the palm or sole (red in color) and the back of the hand or foot (white in color), respectively
1.5.7	sinew	筋	tough band or cord of tissue that joins muscle to bone
1.5.8	ancestral sinew	宗筋	a collective term for sinews/male external genitalia
1.5.9	muscle interspace	溪谷	the gap junction or depression between two muscles
1.5.10	chest center	膺中	the center of the chest between the nipples
1.5.11	stomach duct	胃脘	(1) stomach cavity and adjoining section of the esophagus; (2) epigastrium
1.5.12	chest and hypochondrium	胸脇	the portion of the body between the neck and the abdomen and the superolateral regions of the abdomen, overlying the costal cartilages
1.5.13	membrane source	募原; 膜原	(1) pleurodiaphragmatic interspace; (2) interior-exterior interspace where the pathogens of epidemic febrile disease tends to settle
1.5.14	cardiodiaphragmatic interspace	膏肓	the space inferior to the heart and superior to the diaphragm
1.5.15	lower abdomen	小腹; 少腹	the part of abdomen between the umbilicus and the upper margin of pubic bone

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.5.16	para-umbilical region	臍傍	that part of abdomen lateral to the umbilicus
1.5.17	infra-umbilical region	臍下	that part of abdomen inferior to the umbilicus
1.5.18	cinnabar field	丹田	three regions of the body to which one's mind is focused while practicing qigong: the lower cinnabar field – the region located in the upper 2/3 of the line joining the umbilicus and symphysis pubis; the middle cinnabar field – the xiphoid area; and the upper cinnabar field – the region between the eyebrows
1.5.19	skeleton	骸；百骸	the supportive structure or framework of the body
1.5.20	eyebrow bone	眉稜骨	the upper ridge of the orbital bone
1.5.21	cervical vertebrae	頸骨	a collective term for the cervical vertebrae
1.5.22	vertebrae	脊	a collective term of the thoracic, lumbar and sacral vertebrae, the same as spine
1.5.23	lumbar vertebrae	腰骨	lumbar bone
1.5.24	assisting bone	輔骨	the bony prominences on the sides of the knee, namely, the condyles of femur and the condyles of tibia
1.5.25	high bone	高骨	any bony process of the body surface, particularly referring to the styloid process of the radius
1.5.26	prominent muscle	脾	(1) paravertebral muscle (2) the muscle below the iliac crest
1.5.27	house of bright essence	精明之府	an expression referring to the head
1.5.28	back of the head	腦戶	the occipital region
1.5.29	temple	太陽；太陽穴	(1) the area on each side of the forehead above the cheek bones, lateral to and slightly superior to the outer canthus of the eye; (2) an non-meridian acupuncture point on the temporal part of the head
1.5.30	orifice of sense organ	官竅	a general term for the external opening of sense organs
1.5.31	five sense organs	五官	a collective term of the nose, eyes, mouth, tongue and ears, associated with five phase theory

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.5.32	seven orifices	七竅	a collective term of the two ears, two eyes, two nostrils and the mouth
1.5.33	upper orifices	上竅	the eyes, ears, mouth and nose
1.5.34	lower orifices	下竅	the anus and genito-urinary openings
1.5.35	sprout orifices	苗竅	the sense organs that reflect the change of qi, blood, yin and yang, also known as signaling orifices/sense organs
1.5.36	five wheels	五輪	five regions of the eye from the outer to the inner: the flesh wheel, blood wheel, qi wheel, wind wheel and water wheel, also the same as five orbiculi
1.5.37	eight belts	八廓	a collective term of the eight external ocular regions
1.5.38	qi wheel	氣輪	the bulbar conjunctiva and sclera, also the same as qi orbiculus
1.5.39	water wheel	水輪	the pupil, also the same as water orbiculus
1.5.40	blood wheel	血輪	the canthus, also the same as blood orbiculus
1.5.41	wind wheel	風輪	the cornea, also the same as wind orbiculus
1.5.42	flesh wheel	肉輪	the eyelids, also the same as flesh orbiculus
1.5.43	inner canthus	大眥	the canthus closer to the nose, the same as greater canthus
1.5.44	outer canthus	銳眥; 小眥	the canthus closer to the temple, the same as lesser canthus
1.5.45	lacrimal orifice	淚堂	the opening from which tears flow
1.5.46	white of the eye	白睛	the white opaque part of the outer surface of the eyeball
1.5.47	dark of the eye	黑睛	the transparent membranous structure forming the central anterior part of the eye, i.e. the cornea
1.5.48	pupil	瞳神	the opening at the center of the iris, posterior to the cornea, through which light enters the eye

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.5.49	aqueous humor	神水	the fluid produced in the eye, occupying the space between the crystalline lens and cornea
1.5.50	vitreous humor	神膏	the clear colorless transparent jelly that fills the eyeball
1.5.51	eye connector	目系	the cord connecting the eye with the brain
1.5.52	eye socket	目眶；目眶骨	the bony cavity that contains the eye
1.5.53	sinew mesh above the eyes	目上網	upper palpebral musculature
1.5.54	sinew mesh below the eyes	目下網	lower palpebral musculature
1.5.55	bright hall	明堂	an ancient term for nose, especially the apex of the nose
1.5.56	tip of the nose	鼻準	the most distal portion of the nose, the same as apex nasi
1.5.57	root of the nose	山根	the upper portion of the nose, which is situated between the eyes, the same as radix nasi
1.5.58	bridge of the nose	頰；鼻莖	that part of the nose formed by the junction of its lateral surfaces, the same as dorsum nasi
1.5.59	wisdom tooth	眞牙	the third molar tooth
1.5.60	uvula	蒂丁；小舌	the pendular fleshy lobe in the middle of the posterior border of the soft palate, usually referring to uvula palatina
1.5.61	throat node	喉核	faucial or palatine tonsil, a pair of prominent masses that lie one on each side of the throat
1.5.62	throat pass	喉關	that part of the throat formed by the tonsils, uvula and back of the tongue
1.5.63	pharynx	喉嚨	the part of the throat through which food or drink is swallowed
1.5.64	retropharynx	喉底	the posterior part of the pharynx

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.5.65	nasopharynx	頤頰	the upper part of the pharynx continuous with the nasal passages
1.5.66	essence chamber	精室	the part of the body where the semen is stored in a male
1.5.67	essence orifice	精竅	the external orifice of the male urethra, from which the semen is discharged
1.5.68	testicle	辜	the male reproductive organ where the sperms are produced
1.5.69	anterior yin	前陰	the external genitalia including the external orifice of the urethra
1.5.70	posterior yin	後陰	the anus, the posterior opening of the large intestine
1.5.71	defense aspect	衛分	the most superficial stratum of the body apt to be invaded at the initial stage of an acute febrile disease, often referring to the lung
1.5.72	qi aspect	氣分	the second stratum of the body deeper than the defense aspect, often referring to the lung, gallbladder, spleen, stomach and large intestine
1.5.73	nutrient aspect	營分	that stratum of the body between the qi and blood aspects
1.5.74	blood aspect	血分	the deepest stratum of the body involved in the severest stage of an acute febrile disease
1.6.0	Cause of Disease	病因	
1.6.1	cause of disease	病因	pathogenic factor
1.6.2	theory of causes of disease	病因學說	the theory dealing with the classification of pathogenic factors and their properties, and pathogenic characteristics and processes, the same as etiology
1.6.3	pathogen	病邪；邪氣；邪	an agent causing disease, also called pathogenic factor or pathogenic qi
1.6.4	external pathogen	外邪；客邪	any pathogen originating outside the body
1.6.5	seasonal pathogen	時邪	a general designation for the pathogenic factors causing seasonal diseases

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.6	yang pathogen	陽邪	pathogen of yang nature
1.6.7	yin pathogen	陰邪	pathogen of yin nature
1.6.8	combined pathogen	合邪	any combination of more than one pathogen
1.6.9	external contraction	外感	disease or morbid condition produced by any of the six excesses (external etiological factors) or other noxious factors, the same as exopathic disease
1.6.10	six excesses	六淫	a collective term for the six excessive or untimely climatic influences as external pathogenic factors: wind, cold, summerheat, dampness, dryness and fire, also the same as six climatic pathogenic factors
1.6.11	wind	風；風邪	wind as a pathogenic factor characterized by its rapid movement, swift changes, and ascending and opening actions, also called pathogenic wind
1.6.12	cold	寒；寒邪	cold as a pathogenic factor characterized by the damage to yang qi, deceleration of activity, congealing and contracting actions, also called pathogenic cold
1.6.13	summerheat	暑；暑邪	summerheat as a pathogenic factor, only occurring in summer, characterized by hotness and evaporation, also called pathogenic summerheat
1.6.14	dampness	濕；濕邪	dampness as a pathogenic factor characterized by its impediment to qi movement and its turbidity, heaviness, stickiness and downward flowing properties, also called pathogenic dampness
1.6.15	dryness	燥；燥邪	dryness as a pathogenic factor characterized by dryness and is apt to injure the lung and consume fluid, also called pathogenic dryness
1.6.16	fire	火；火邪	fire as a pathogenic factor characterized by intense heat that is apt to injure fluid, consume qi, engender wind, inducing bleeding, and disturb the mental activities, also called pathogenic fire
1.6.17	heat	熱；熱邪	heat as a pathogenic factor that causes heat pattern/syndrome, also called pathogenic heat
1.6.18	external wind	外風	wind as one of the six excesses that causes external wind pattern/syndrome

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.19	external cold	外寒	cold as one of the six excesses that causes external cold pattern/syndrome
1.6.20	external dampness	外濕	dampness as one of the six excesses that causes externally contracted dampness pattern/syndrome
1.6.21	external dryness	外燥	dryness as one of the six excesses that causes external dryness pattern/syndrome
1.6.22	internal wind	內風	the same as liver wind, wind in the interior due to abnormal movement of body's yang qi
1.6.23	internal cold	內寒	cold in the interior due to deficiency of yang qi or preponderance of yin cold
1.6.24	internal dampness	內濕	dampness produced in the body due to yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney with decreased fluid transportation and transformation and resultant water stagnation
1.6.25	internal dryness	內燥	dryness in the interior due to consumption of body fluid
1.6.26	wind-cold	風寒	a combined pathogen of external wind and cold
1.6.27	wind-heat	風熱	a combined pathogen of external wind and heat
1.6.28	wind-dampness	風濕	(1) a combined pathogen of external wind and dampness; (2) arthritis with soft tissue inflammation
1.6.29	wind-dryness	風燥	a combined pathogen of external wind and dryness
1.6.30	wind-phlegm	風痰	a combined pathogen of wind and phlegm
1.6.31	cold-dampness	寒濕	a combined pathogen of cold and dampness
1.6.32	wind-cold-dampness	風寒濕	a combined pathogen of wind, cold and dampness
1.6.33	dampness-heat	濕熱	a combined pathogen of dampness and heat
1.6.34	dampness-fire	濕火	depressed dampness transforming into fire that damages spleen-stomach yin
1.6.35	dampness turbidity	濕濁	the same as dampness. It describes the heavy, viscid and turbid nature of dampness

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.36	turbid pathogen	濁邪	pathogenic dampness-turbidity or phlegm-turbidity, usually impeding the movement of yang qi
1.6.37	foul turbidity	穢濁	putrid and filthy qi that causes disease, including miasma
1.6.38	summerheat qi	暑氣	summerheat as a pathogenic factor
1.6.39	summerheat-heat	暑熱	summerheat as a pathogen that gives rise to disease characterized by heat symptoms
1.6.40	summerheat-dampness	暑濕	a combined pathogen of summerheat and dampness
1.6.41	dryness qi	燥氣	dryness as a pathogenic factor
1.6.42	dryness-heat	燥熱	a combined pathogen of dryness and heat
1.6.43	cool dryness	涼燥	the pathogenic factor that causes cool dryness pattern/syndrome
1.6.44	warm dryness	溫燥	the pathogenic factor that causes warm dryness pattern/syndrome
1.6.45	warm pathogen	溫邪	a collective term for various pathogens causing acute febrile diseases
1.6.46	pestilence	疫癘	a collective term for various highly infectious epidemic diseases
1.6.47	latent qi	伏氣；伏邪	the pathogen that induces the onset of disease after a latent period, also called incubative pathogen
1.6.48	epidemic pathogen	時行戾氣； 癘氣；疫毒	pathogen that cause an epidemic infectious diseases, also called pestilential qi
1.6.49	toxin	毒	any virulent pathogen that causes a fulminating disease
1.6.50	heat toxin	熱毒	a virulent pathogen arising from accumulated pathogenic heat
1.6.51	fire toxin	火毒	(1) pathogenic agent formed in the course of smoldering of pathogenic fire; (2) burns or scalds complicated with infection

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.52	dampness toxin	濕毒	noxious pathogenic factor formed by stagnation of dampness, which may cause hematochezia when it occurs in the intestine, or ulcer of the shank when in the muscles and skin of the lower limbs
1.6.53	cold toxin	寒毒	a cold pathogen with virulent coldness
1.6.54	seasonal toxin	時毒	(1) virulent pathogens prevalent in a particular season or seasons; (2) painful swelling in the neck, cheek and jaw, caused by epidemic seasonal pathogens which invades the three yang meridians
1.6.55	measles toxin	麻毒	the pathogen that causes measles
1.6.56	internal toxin	內毒	heat toxins dormant in the body
1.6.57	fetal toxin	胎毒	(1) toxic heat affecting the fetus; (2) any congenital pathogenic factor; also known as fetal toxicosis
1.6.58	parasitic toxin	蟲毒	a pathogenic factor that may cause diseases marked by abdominal lumps, tympanites and ascites, also known as worm toxin
1.6.59	miasmatic toxin	瘴毒；瘴氣； 山嵐瘴氣	noxious mountainous vapor alleged to be the cause of certain kinds of malaria, also known as miasma
1.6.60	malign qi	惡氣	(1) a general term for the pathogenic qi, including six excesses and pestilential factors; (2) a pathological product derived from stagnation of qi and blood; also called evil qi
1.6.61	internal damage	內傷	any detrimental effect on visceral qi produced by intemperance of the seven emotions, overexertion and fatigue, improper diet and sexual overindulgence
1.6.62	five minds	五志	a collective term for joy, anger, thought, anxiety, and fear, the same as five emotions
1.6.63	excess among the five minds	五志過極	excessive anger, joy, grief, thought and fear, which may disturb the normal flow of qi and blood of the internal organs, the same as five excessive emotions
1.6.64	transformation of the five minds into fire	五志化火	transformation of the five emotions (anger, joy, grief, thought and fear) into heat with fire symptoms, the same as transformation of the five emotions into fire

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.65	seven emotions	七情	a collective term for joy, anger, thought, anxiety, sorrow, fear and fright, taken as endogenous factors causing diseases if in excess
1.6.66	joy	喜	one of the seven emotions that in excess may make the heart qi sluggish, resulting in absentmindedness, palpitations, insomnia and even mental disturbance
1.6.67	anger	怒	one of the seven emotions that in excess may cause the liver qi to ascend together with blood, resulting in headache, flushed face, blood-shot eyes, or hematemesis, even sudden fainting
1.6.68	anxiety	憂	one of the seven emotions that in excess may cause damage to the lung, and in combination with thought may injure the spleen
1.6.69	thought	思	one of the seven emotions that in excess may cause stagnation of the spleen qi, and even damage to the transporting and transforming function of the spleen
1.6.70	sorrow	悲	one of the seven emotions that in excess may consume the lung qi, resulting in shortness of breath, listlessness and fatigue
1.6.71	fear	恐	one of the seven emotions that in excess may cause the kidney qi to sink, resulting in incontinence of urine and stools, or even syncope
1.6.72	fright	驚	one of the seven emotions that occurs suddenly, may disturb the heart qi, resulting in palpitations or mental confusion
1.6.73	overexertion and fatigue	勞倦	abnormal degree of fatigue brought about by excessive activity, the same as overstrain
1.6.74	sexual overindulgence	房勞	exhaustion due to sexual overindulgence
1.6.75	flavor predilection	五味偏嗜	habitual preference for a particular flavor or taste that may give rise to disease, the same as flavor craving/preference
1.6.76	dietary irregularities	飲食不節	diet harmful to health, including ingestion of raw, cold or contaminated food, voracious eating or excessive hunger, predilection for a special food, alcohol addiction, etc.

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.77	liquor addiction	酒癖	the state of heavy dependence on alcohol
1.6.78	failure to acclimatize to a new environment	水土不服	temporary inadaptability of a person to a new natural and living environment, the same as non-acclimatization
1.6.79	phlegm-retained fluid	痰飲	a combination of phlegm and retained fluid as an entity to cause disease, also called phlegm-fluid retention
1.6.80	phlegm	痰	(1) pathologic secretions of the diseased respiratory tract, which is known as sputum; (2) the viscous turbid pathological product that can accumulate in the body, causing a variety of diseases
1.6.81	retained fluid	飲；水飲	the clear and watery pathological product due to disordered fluid metabolism, also called fluid retention
1.6.82	water-dampness	水濕	any water or dampness as an entity to cause disease
1.6.83	phlegm-dampness	痰濕	a combination of phlegm and internal dampness as an entity to cause disease, the same as dampness-phlegm
1.6.84	static blood	瘀血	a pathological product of blood stagnation, including extravasated blood and the blood circulating sluggishly or blood congested in a viscus, all of which may turn into pathogenic factor, the same as blood stasis or stagnant blood
1.6.85	constitutional insufficiency	稟賦不足	congenital constitutional weakness as the main etiological factor of deficiency conditions
1.6.86	three causes	三因	external cause, internal cause, and cause neither internal nor external – an ancient classification of causes of disease, also called three categories of causes of disease
1.6.87	internal cause	內因	one of the three causes of disease, one that arises within the body, referring chiefly to the excessive emotional changes
1.6.88	external cause	外因	one of the three causes of disease, one that originates outside the body, referring chiefly to the six excesses and pestilential pathogens

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.6.89	cause neither internal nor external	不內外因	one of the three causes of disease, including dietary irregularities, overexertion and fatigue, traumatic injuries, and insect and animal bites
1.7.0	Mechanism of Disease	病機	
1.7.1	mechanism of disease	病機	the mechanism by which disease arises and develops, the same as pathogenesis
1.7.2	theory of mechanism of disease	病機學說	the theory that deals with the mechanism by which disease arises and develops
1.7.3	location of disease	病位	the part of the body affected by a disease
1.7.4	nature of disease	病性	the heat, cold, excess or deficiency quality of a disease
1.7.5	disease pattern	病證	summarization of the cause, nature and location of the pathological change at a certain stages of disease
1.7.6	struggle between the healthy qi and pathogenic qi	正邪相爭	the basic mechanism of disease in which any disease is considered as the process of struggle between the healthy qi and pathogenic qi
1.7.7	exuberance and debilitation of the healthy qi or pathogenic qi	邪正盛衰； 邪正消長	the key factor that determines the process of disease and prognosis, namely, rise of the healthy qi with decline of the pathogenic qi leading to improvement and cure, while exuberance of the pathogenic qi with debilitation of the healthy qi resulting in deterioration and even death
1.7.8	sudden onset	卒發	the rapid appearance of symptoms after contraction
1.7.9	gradual onset	徐發	the gradual appearance of symptoms after contraction
1.7.10	taxation relapse	勞復	relapse of disease due to over-fatigue
1.7.11	relapse due to dietary irregularity	食復	relapse of disease due to improper diet
1.7.12	sexual taxation relapse	女勞復	relapse of disease due to intemperance in sexual activity
1.7.13	dissociation of yin and yang	陰陽離決	divorce of yin and yang, indicating the end of life

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.14	yin-yang disharmony	陰陽失調； 陰陽不和	a general term for all kinds of pathological changes due to imbalance and incoordination of yin and yang
1.7.15	abnormal exuberance of yin or yang	陰陽偏盛	any pathological change marked by yin or yang higher than the normal level due to yin pathogens or yang pathogens
1.7.16	abnormal debilitation of yin or yang	陰陽偏衰	any pathological change marked by yin or yang lower than the normal level due to deficiency of yin or yang of the human body
1.7.17	spontaneous harmonization of yin and yang	陰陽自和	spontaneous recovery from imbalance of yin and yang by its own natural regulatory function, also known as spontaneous restoration of yin-yang equilibrium
1.7.18	damage to yang	傷陽	a general term for various kinds of pathological changes marked by impairment of yang qi
1.7.19	damage to yin	傷陰	a general term for various kinds of pathological changes marked by consumption of yin qi
1.7.20	detriment to yang affects yin	陽損及陰	a pathological change in which weakness of yang qi impedes the generation of yin, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang with a preponderance of yang deficiency
1.7.21	detriment to yin affects yang	陰損及陽	a pathological change in which consumption of yin weakens yang qi, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang with a preponderance of yin deficiency
1.7.22	yin deficiency	陰虛	a pathological change marked by deficiency of yin with diminished moistening, calming, downbearing and yang-inhibiting function, leading to relative hyperactivity of yang qi; in Kampo medicine, “yin” and “deficiency” are independently understood
1.7.23	yin deficiency with internal heat	陰虛內熱	insufficient yin failing to counterbalance yang, causing deficiency-heat to arise internally
1.7.24	yin deficiency with yang hyperactivity	陰虛陽亢	insufficient essence, blood and fluid failing to restrain yang, causing increased activity of yang
1.7.25	yin deficiency with effulgent fire	陰虛火旺	insufficient yin failing to restrain yang, causing exuberant fire of the deficiency type

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.26	deficiency fire	虛火	consumption of yin fluid failing to restrain yang fire, giving rise to fire of the deficiency type
1.7.27	deficiency fire flaming upward	虛火上炎	a pathological change occurring in yin deficiency which is unable to inhibit yang, causing upflaming of the deficiency fire
1.7.28	frenetic stirring of the ministerial fire	相火妄動	deficiency of liver-kidney yin leading to hyperactivity and upsurge of ministerial fire
1.7.29	yin exuberance	陰盛	a pathological state in which yin pathogen is exuberant while the healthy qi has not been damaged, giving rise to an excess-cold syndrome, the same as yin excess
1.7.30	yin exuberance with yang debilitation	陰盛陽衰	exuberant yin cold with resultant debilitation of yang qi, the same as yin excess with yang deficiency
1.7.31	yang deficiency	陽虛	a pathological state characterized by deficiency of body's yang qi that leads to diminished functions, decreased metabolic activities, reduced body reactions as well as deficiency-cold manifestations; in Kampo medicine, "yang" and "excess" are independently understood
1.7.32	yang deficiency with yin exuberance	陽虛陰盛	insufficient yang failing to counterbalance yin, resulting in relative exuberance of yin, the same as yang deficiency with yin excess
1.7.33	yang exuberance	陽盛	a pathological state in which yang is exuberant while yin has not been debilitated, giving rise to an excess-heat syndrome, the same as yang excess
1.7.34	yang exuberance with yin debilitation	陽盛陰衰	a pathological state characterized by simultaneous presence of exuberance of yang and debilitation of yin, also the same as yang excess with yin deficiency
1.7.35	yin-yang repulsion	陰陽格拒	a serious pathological state in which extremely excessive yin in the interior forces the asthenic yang to spread outward or extremely exuberant yang in the interior keeps insufficient yin on the outside, forming pseudo-heat or pseudo-cold phenomena
1.7.36	exuberant yin repelling yang	陰盛格陽; 格陽	a pathological state in which extremely excessive yin entrenched in the exterior forces the asthenic yang to float on the body surface, leading to pseudo-heat symptoms, the same as excessive yin repelling yang, and also known as repelled yang

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.37	exuberant yang repelling yin	陽盛格陰； 格陰	a pathological state in which extremely exuberant yang trapped in the interior keeps insufficient yin in the exterior, leading to pseudo-cold symptoms, the same as excessive yang repelling yin, and also known as repelled yin
1.7.38	upcast yang	戴陽	a pathological state characterized by exuberant yin cold in the lower part of the body which forces the asthenic yang to stay at the upper surface of the body
1.7.39	dual deficiency of yin and yang	陰陽兩虛	a pathological state characterized by deficiency of both yin and yang
1.7.40	deficiency yang floating upward	虛陽上浮； 孤陽上越	a pathological change in which consumption of essence and blood deprives yang of its base, causing yang to float at the upper surface
1.7.41	yin collapse	亡陰；脫陰； 陰脫	a pathological change caused by sudden massive loss of fluid leading to collapse
1.7.42	yang collapse	亡陽；脫陽； 陽脫	a pathological change where yang qi is suddenly exhausted, resulting in abrupt failure of bodily functions
1.7.43	collapse of yang and exhaustion of yin	陽亡陰竭	collapse of both yin and yang, indicating the moribund state of a critically ill patient
1.7.44	exhaustion of yin and collapse of yang	陰竭陽脫	exhaustion of yin fluid and collapse of yang qi with resultant functional failure, indicating that the patient is critically ill
1.7.45	internal block and external collapse	內閉外脫	a pathological change characterized by depression/stagnation of excessive pathogenic qi in the interior with expulsion of the debilitated original qi
1.7.46	binding in yin	結陰	pathogenic qi binding in the yin meridians/channels.
1.7.47	binding in yang	結陽	sluggish flow of yang qi in the limbs, leading to retention of water and edema
1.7.48	exterior and interior	表裏	(1) the outer part of the body (the skin, body hair, flesh and superficial meridians/channels) and the inner part of the body (the bowels and viscera, qi, blood, and bone marrow); (2) two of the eight principles of pattern identification/syndrome differentiation, indicating the depth of penetration of external pathogens

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.49	half-exterior half-interior	半表半裏	location between the exterior and the interior
1.7.50	exterior cold	表寒	attack on the exterior part of the body by wind-cold, chiefly manifested by severe aversion to wind and cold, headache and stiff neck, soreness of the limbs and joints, thin white coating of the tongue and floating tense pulse
1.7.51	exterior heat	表熱	attack on the exterior part of the body by wind-heat, chiefly manifested by slight aversion to wind and cold, moderate fever, headache, slight thirst, thin white or thin yellowish coating of the tongue, or red tip of the tongue and floating rapid pulse
1.7.52	exterior deficiency	表虛	deficiency of defense qi in the superficial part of the body, marked by spontaneous sweating or sweating accompanied by aversion to wind and floating feeble pulse
1.7.53	exterior excess	表實	invasion of external pathogens that causes gathering of defense qi in the skin and flesh and blockage of the interstices and pores marked by absence of sweating, chills and a floating forceful pulse
1.7.54	interior cold	裏寒	a pathological state characterized by preponderance of yin cold or decline of yang qi in the interior
1.7.55	interior heat	裏熱	a pathological state characterized by heat in the interior, either due to exuberance of pathogenic heat or due to yin deficiency with endogenous heat
1.7.56	interior deficiency	裏虛	a general term for deficiency of qi, blood, yin and yang of the internal organs
1.7.57	interior excess	裏實	(1) a pathological change resulting from an external pathogen transforming into heat and entering the interior to bind in the stomach and intestines; (2) a general term denoting accumulation of pathological products in the body, such as phlegm, retained fluid, stagnant qi and blood, intestinal parasites, and undigested food
1.7.58	exterior cold and interior heat	表寒裏熱	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior cold and interior heat

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.59	exterior heat and interior cold	表熱裏寒	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior heat and interior cold
1.7.60	exterior deficiency and interior excess	表虛裏實	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior deficiency and interior excess
1.7.61	exterior excess and interior deficiency	表實裏虛	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior excess and interior deficiency.
1.7.62	cold in both exterior and interior	表裏俱寒	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior cold and interior cold
1.7.63	heat in both exterior and interior	表裏俱熱	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior heat and interior heat
1.7.64	dual excess of the exterior and interior	表裏俱實	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior excess and interior excess
1.7.65	dual deficiency of the exterior and interior	表裏俱虛	a pathological state characterized by the simultaneous presence of exterior deficiency and interior deficiency
1.7.66	dual disease of the exterior and interior	表裏同病	coexistence of diseases both in the exterior and interior
1.7.67	insecurity of exterior qi	表氣不固； 衛氣不固	failure of insufficient defense qi to protect the superficies of the body against external pathogens, the same as insecurity of defense qi
1.7.68	inward invasion of exterior pathogen	表邪內陷	penetration of an externally contracted pathogen from the exterior into the interior
1.7.69	pathogenic heat passing into the interior	熱邪傳裏	process of a disease where external heat pathogens enter the interior to cause an interior heat pattern/syndrome
1.7.70	exterior pathogen entering the interior	表邪入裏	the process of a disease whereby the external pathogen attacks the exterior first, and then enters the interior, impairing visceral functions
1.7.71	interior disease moving out to the exterior	裏病出表	the process of a disease turning from the interior to the exterior through the struggle of the healthy qi against pathogens
1.7.72	cold and heat	寒熱	(1) a pair of principles for differentiating the nature of disease: when yin is exuberant, there is cold; when yang prevails, there is heat; (2) chills and fever

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.73	excess cold	實寒	a pathological change arising from contraction of yin cold pathogen
1.7.74	deficiency cold	虛寒	a pathological change arising when yang qi becomes insufficient and fails to provide adequate warmth
1.7.75	heat binding in the lower energizer	熱結下焦	accumulation of heat in the intestines and bladder that causes lower abdominal distention and pain, constipation, short voidings of dark urine or even hematuria, and sometimes rigidity and tenderness of the lower abdomen accompanied by restlessness
1.7.76	lower energizer dampness-heat	下焦濕熱； 濕熱下注	a pathological change characterized by dampness-heat pouring down into the lower energizer, including large intestinal dampness-heat, bladder dampness-heat, dampness-heat obstructing the essence chamber, and morbid leukorrhea, pudental itch, and painful swelling of the lower limb joints caused by dampness-heat, the same as downward flow of dampness-heat
1.7.77	exuberant heat damaging fluid	熱盛傷津	the process by which excess heat dissipates body fluids, also the same as excessive heat damaging fluid
1.7.78	cold enveloping fire	寒包火	a pathological change characterized by contraction of wind-cold with accumulated internal heat
1.7.79	cold-heat complex	寒熱錯雜	a pathological change that causes complicated heat and cold conditions such as heat in the upper body with cold in the lower body, and cold in the exterior and heat in the interior
1.7.80	upper body heat and lower body cold	上熱下寒	a complex condition characterized by the simultaneous presence of heat in the upper body and cold in the lower body, the same as heat above and cold below
1.7.81	upper body cold and lower body heat	上寒下熱	a complex condition characterized by the simultaneous presence of cold in the upper body and heat in the lower body, the same as cold above and heat below
1.7.82	cold and heat repulsion	寒熱格拒	a form of pathological change in which extremely excessive cold forces heat to the extremities, and vice versa
1.7.83	true cold with false heat	真寒假熱	a pathological change marked by abundant yin-cold in the interior with pseudo-heat manifestations

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.84	true heat with false cold	真熱假寒	a pathological change marked by excessive heat in the interior with pseudo-cold manifestations
1.7.85	deficiency and excess	虛實	one of the guiding principles for analyzing the condition of the body's resistance to pathogenic factors, in which deficiency refers to deficiency of the healthy qi and excess refers to excessiveness of the pathogenic qi
1.7.86	deficiency	虛	(1) deficiency of the healthy qi; (2) weak constitution; (3) weak reaction against pathogens
1.7.87	excess	實	(1) excessiveness of the pathogenic qi; (2) strong constitution; (3) strong reaction against pathogens
1.7.88	deficiency-excess complex	虛實夾雜	a pathological state in which both excess of pathogenic qi and debilitation of healthy qi occur in the disease process
1.7.89	excess with deficiency complication	實中夾虛	excess condition complicated by deficiency symptoms with the former dominant
1.7.90	deficiency with excess complication	虛中夾實	deficiency condition complicated by excess symptoms with the former dominant
1.7.91	upper deficiency and lower excess	上虛下實	deficiency of healthy qi in the upper body and excess of pathogenic qi in the lower body, the same as deficiency above and excess below
1.7.92	upper excess and lower deficiency	上盛下虛; 上實下虛	exuberance of pathogenic qi in the upper body and deficiency of healthy qi in the lower body, the same as excess above and deficiency below
1.7.93	true or false deficiency-excess	虛實真假	false appearance of deficiency-excess manifestations opposite to the true nature of the disease
1.7.94	true excess with false deficiency	真實假虛	excess pattern/syndrome with pseudo-deficiency symptoms
1.7.95	true deficiency with false excess	真虛假實	deficiency pattern/syndrome with pseudo-excess symptoms
1.7.96	conversion of excess into deficiency	由實轉虛	the process of a disease turning from excess of pathogenic qi into deficiency of healthy qi
1.7.97	conversion of deficiency into excess	由虛轉實	the process of a disease turning from deficiency of healthy qi into excess of pathogenic qi

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.98	qi deficiency	氣虛	a general term for deficiency of qi that leads to decreased visceral functions and lowered body resistance
1.7.99	qi deficiency failing to control blood	氣虛不攝；氣不攝血	a pathological change of qi deficiency in which qi is unable to retain the fluids (including blood)
1.7.100	qi deficiency with fullness in the middle	氣虛中滿	a pathological change of qi deficiency in which qi is insufficient for normal transportation and transformation in the middle energizer, thus causing epigastric and abdominal distension
1.7.101	qi deficiency with blood stasis	氣虛血瘀	a pathological change of qi deficiency in which qi is insufficient to maintain blood flow, thus resulting in blood stasis
1.7.102	qi movement disorder	氣機失調	a general term for disordered activity of qi in ascending, descending, exiting and entering
1.7.103	qi movement stagnation	氣機鬱滯；氣鬱	depressed and stagnant flow of qi that causes dysfunction of internal organs and meridians/channels, the same as qi stagnation
1.7.104	stagnant qi transforming into fire	氣鬱化火	a pathological change of long-standing stagnation of qi that transforms into fire
1.7.105	inhibited qi movement	氣機不利	impeded, obstructed or stagnant qi movement that impairs the functions of viscera and meridians/channels, the same as qi movement depression
1.7.106	inhibited qi transformation	氣化不利	a pathological change of yang qi deficiency that decreases digestion and absorption, or impairs fluid metabolism leading to water-dampness retention or phlegm retention
1.7.107	qi counterflow	氣逆	reversal of the normal downward flow of qi, the same as qi reflux
1.7.108	qi fall	氣陷	a pathological change of deficient qi marked by failure in its lifting or holding function, also known as qi sinking
1.7.109	sunken middle qi	中氣下陷	a pathological change of deficient spleen qi marked by its failure in upbearing the clear and other lifting or holding functions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.110	qi stagnation	氣滯	a pathological change characterized by impeded circulation of qi that leads to stagnation of qi movement and functional disorder of organs, manifested as distention or pain in the affected part
1.7.111	qi stagnation due to cold congealing	寒凝氣滯	congealing effect of pathogenic cold that leads to stagnant movement of qi
1.7.112	qi block	氣閉	a pathological change marked by obstruction of the normal movement of qi
1.7.113	qi collapse	氣脫	desertion of qi due to sudden damage to the healthy qi, massive loss of blood, profuse sweating, excessive vomiting and diarrhea, or due to prolonged consumption in a chronic disease
1.7.114	blood deficiency	血虛	any pathological change characterized by deficiency of blood which fails to nourish organs, tissues and meridians/channels
1.7.115	blood stasis	血瘀	a morbid state of blood stagnancy in a certain area of the body caused by sluggish flow of qi, deficiency of qi or blood, trauma, or yin-cold
1.7.116	blood counterflow	血逆	a pathological change characterized by reverse flow of blood in the meridian/channel causing separation of qi and blood
1.7.117	blood heat	血熱	a pathological change in which exuberant heat or fire enters the blood, usually causing hemorrhage
1.7.118	blood cold	血寒	a pathological change in which cold either externally contracted or originated from yang deficiency, entering the blood aspect, causes qi stagnation or blood stasis by its congealing effect
1.7.119	blood flowing counterflow with qi	血隨氣逆	a pathological change in which the upward adverse flow of qi leads blood rushing upward
1.7.120	blood collapse	亡血；血脫	acute critical deficiency of blood, mostly due to massive hemorrhage, also called blood desertion
1.7.121	disharmony of qi and blood	氣血失調	any failure in the mutually coordinating relationship of qi and blood

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.122	blood stasis due to qi stagnation	氣滯血瘀	a pathological change in which a long-standing or severe stagnation of qi impedes the flow of blood, a condition characterized by coexistence of qi stagnation and blood stasis
1.7.123	qi disease affecting the blood	氣病及血	a pathological change in which diseased conditions of qi tend to induce blood disorders
1.7.124	blood failing to stay in the meridians	血不歸經； 血不循經	a pathological change that causes extravasation of blood
1.7.125	frenetic movement of blood due to heat	血熱妄行	a pathological change in which heat forces extravasation of blood
1.7.126	qi collapse following bleeding	氣隨血脫； 血脫氣脫	a pathological change in which massive loss of blood leads to collapse of qi
1.7.127	dual deficiency of qi and blood	氣血兩虛	simultaneous presence of qi deficiency and blood deficiency
1.7.128	dual deficiency of qi and yin	氣陰兩虛	simultaneous presence of qi deficiency and yin deficiency
1.7.129	damage to fluid	傷津	a general term for various impairments and loss of body fluid
1.7.130	fluid collapse	津脫；亡津液	a severe form of damage to fluid, usually due to profuse sweating, excessive vomiting or diarrhea
1.7.131	fluid-humor depletion	津液虧損	a pathological change marked by insufficiency of body fluid-humor that fails to moisten the body tissues
1.7.132	fluid consumption and blood dryness	津枯血燥	a pathological change in which insufficiency of fluid gives rise to blood dryness with endogenous heat
1.7.133	fluid depletion and blood stasis	津虧血瘀	a pathological change in which fluid deficiency causes stagnation of blood flow
1.7.134	qi collapse due to humor depletion	氣隨液脫	a pathological change in which qi collapse occurs following massive loss of fluid
1.7.135	qi failing to form fluid	氣不化津	insufficient yang qi with reduced vaporizing action failing to induce the formation of body fluid
1.7.136	water retention due to obstruction of qi	水停氣阻	a pathological change in which retention of water in the body causes obstruction of qi movement

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.137	upper body reversal and lower body exhaustion	上厥下竭	a pathological change marked by exhaustion of genuine yin and yang in the lower part of the body with syncope
1.7.138	lower body reversal with upper body veiling	下厥上冒	a pathological change in which the spleen fails to send the clear up while the stomach qi rises to the head adversely, resulting in dizziness, blurred vision accompanied by nausea, vomiting, and epigastric distension and pain
1.7.139	exuberant heart qi	心氣盛	a pathological change in which pathogenic factors make the heart qi exuberant, resulting in anxiety or other mental abnormalities
1.7.140	heart qi deficiency	心氣虛； 心氣不足	a pathological state showing hypofunction of the heart qi, usually manifested by palpitations, shortness of breath, oppressed feelings in the precordial region, spontaneous sweating and weak irregular pulse
1.7.141	disquieted heart qi	心氣不寧	a pathological change characterized by a feeling of uneasiness together with severe palpitations, susceptibility to fright, vexation and insomnia, the same as restless heart qi
1.7.142	non-contraction of heart qi	心氣不收； 心氣不固	a pathological condition in which the heart qi floats astray, characterized by dissipated spirit, heart palpitations, and susceptibility to fright; the same as insecurity/dispersion of heart qi
1.7.143	heart blood deficiency	心血虛； 心血不足	a pathological change of the heart that causes dizziness, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, palpitation and thready weak pulse
1.7.144	heart blood stasis (obstruction)	心血瘀阻	a pathological change of the heart in which the blood flow in the heart vessels is impeded, causing a feeling of suffocation and precordial pain
1.7.145	heart yin deficiency	心陰虛； 心陰不足	a pathological change of the heart in which deficiency of yin fails to check yang and results in relative preponderance of heart yang with such manifestations as mental unsteadiness, insomnia, night sweats, and feverish sensation in the palms of the hands and soles of the feet
1.7.146	heart yang deficiency	心陽虛；心陽不足	a pathological change referring to diminution of the heart function in controlling blood and vessels and

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			in governing the mental activities associated with deficiency of yang qi that causes cold manifestations
1.7.147	heart fire flaming upward	心火上炎	a pathological change in which fire flares upward along the heart meridian, causing mental restlessness and oral or lingual erosion
1.7.148	hyperactive heart fire	心火亢盛	a pathological change marked by exuberant fire of the heart that causes mental disturbances, damage to fluid, and bleeding
1.7.149	internal blazing of heart fire	心火內熾; 心火內焚	a pathological change marked by exuberant heart fire that disturbs mental activities, causing vexation, insomnia, throbbing palpitation, restlessness, or even mania
1.7.150	overconsumption of heart nutrient	心營過耗	a pathological change in which the nutrient of the heart is excessively consumed by heat or a chronic deficiency conditions, causing emaciation, night fever, and vexation
1.7.151	spirit failing to keep to its abode	神不守舍	mental derangement when the spirit is made to leave the heart
1.7.152	heat damaging bright spirit	熱傷神明	mental disturbance such as coma, unconsciousness, delirium caused by high fever in febrile disease
1.7.153	heat entering the pericardium	熱入心包	a morbid condition occurring in the nutrient and blood aspect of an epidemic febrile disease, manifested as high fever, coma, delirium, cold limbs or convulsion
1.7.154	reverse transmission to the pericardium	逆傳心包	the impairment of consciousness or coma occurring soon after the onset of an acute febrile disease, whereby the warm pathogen directly enters the pericardium without passing through the qi aspect
1.7.155	phlegm clouding the pericardium	痰蒙心包; 痰迷心竅	a pathological change in which phlegm causes mental confusion; the same as phlegm confounding the orifices of the heart
1.7.156	phlegm-fire harassing the heart	痰火擾心	a pathological change in which fire-heat and phlegm-turbidity harassing the heart-spirit, lead to mental disturbance
1.7.157	water qi intimidating the heart	水氣凌心	a pathological change in which upsurge of retained water causes disturbances of the heart

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.158	effulgent heart-liver fire	心肝火旺	a pathological change in which exuberant liver fire and heart fire disturb mental activity, or cause vascular damage and frenetic blood flow, the same as hyperactive heart-liver fire
1.7.159	heart-liver blood deficiency	心肝血虛	a pathological change in which deficiency of heart blood and liver blood deprives the mental activities, head, eyes, sinews and nails of nourishment
1.7.160	heart-stomach fire ablaze	心胃火燔	a pathological change arising when intense heart heat gives rise to mental disquiet and stomach fire causes damage to fluids
1.7.161	dual deficiency of the heart-spleen	心脾兩虛	a pathological change in which deficiency of both heart blood and spleen qi leads to disordered heart function and disquietness together with failure of the spleen in transportation and transformation
1.7.162	non-interaction between the heart and kidney	心腎不交	a disorder of the normal relationship between the heart and kidney ascribed to deficiency of kidney yin and stirring of heart fire
1.7.163	heart-lung qi deficiency	心肺氣虛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of both heart qi and lung qi with impairment of blood circulation and qi diffusion
1.7.164	heart deficiency with timidity	心虛膽怯	a pathological change characterized by simultaneous deficiency of heart qi and gallbladder qi, marked by disquietness and susceptibility to fright and fear
1.7.165	small intestinal excess heat	小腸實熱	a pathological change of excess heat ascribed to shifting of heart fire to the small intestine
1.7.166	small intestinal deficiency cold	小腸虛寒	impairment of the small intestine by insufficient yang qi with endogenous cold, affecting the separation of the clear and turbid
1.7.167	excess of liver qi	肝氣實; 肝氣盛	presence of excessive pathogenic qi in the liver or liver meridian; the same as exuberance of liver qi
1.7.168	liver qi ascending counterflow	肝氣上逆	the hyperactive liver qi attacking the upper part of the body, manifested as dizziness, headache, flushed face, tinnitus, deafness, fullness and pain of the chest and hypochondrium, belching, acid regurgitation, and even hematemesis, and a taut and forceful pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.169	constrained liver qi	肝氣不舒	a disorder leading to functional disturbances of the liver, manifested as irritability, distension and pain of the chest, hypochondrium, and lower abdomen, distending pain of the breast and abnormal menstruation in the female
1.7.170	disharmony of liver qi	肝氣不和	a pathological change of the liver in its smoothing and discharging function, causing irritability, hypochondriac, mammary or lower abdominal distension and pain, and irregular menstruation
1.7.171	transverse invasion of liver qi	肝氣橫逆	a pathological change in which the depressed liver qi runs transversely, impairing the spleen and stomach
1.7.172	liver qi invading the stomach	肝氣犯胃	a pathological change in which the depressed liver qi running transversely impairs the stomach function in food intake and digestion
1.7.173	liver qi invading the spleen	肝氣犯脾	a pathological change in which the depressed liver qi running transversely impairs the spleen function in transportation and transformation
1.7.174	liver deficiency	肝虛	a general term for deficiency conditions of the liver, including deficiency of liver qi, liver blood, liver yin, and liver yang
1.7.175	liver qi deficiency	肝氣虛	a morbid condition characterized by deficiency of qi resulting in impaired function of the liver in smoothing the flow of qi
1.7.176	liver blood deficiency	肝血虛	a morbid condition characterized by depletion of blood in the liver
1.7.177	liver yin deficiency	肝陰虛	a pathological change characterized by insufficient yin fluid of the liver that fails to nourish the head, eyes, sinews and nails, and produces deficiency-heat
1.7.178	liver yang deficiency	肝陽虛; 肝虛寒	a pathological change characterized by insufficient yang qi of the liver that reduces the function of free coursing and storing blood, and produces deficiency cold, also called liver deficiency cold
1.7.179	ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang	肝陽上亢; 肝陽偏旺	a pathological change in which deficient liver-kidney yin lets liver yang get out of control and stir upward

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.180	liver yang transforming into fire	肝陽化火	ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang giving rise to fire
1.7.181	liver yang transforming into wind	肝陽化風	hyperactivity of liver yang stirring the internal wind
1.7.182	liver fire	肝火	a pathological change of exuberant liver qi with heat manifestations
1.7.183	liver fire flaming upward	肝火上炎	a pathological change characterized by exuberant liver fire flaming upward to the head and eyes
1.7.184	liver fire invading the lung	肝火犯肺	a pathological change characterized by exuberant liver fire ascending counterflow to invade the lung
1.7.185	liver wind	肝風; 肝風內動; 風氣內動	abnormal movement of the body's yang qi turning to internal wind, a general term for liver yang transforming into wind, extreme heat engendering wind, yin deficiency with stirring wind, and blood deficiency engendering wind, also called internal stirring of liver wind
1.7.186	extreme heat engendering wind	熱極生風	a pathological change characterized by convulsions that arise when exuberant pathogenic heat scorches the liver meridian and deprives the sinews of nourishment
1.7.187	liver cold	肝寒	(1) a morbid condition characterized by cold due to insufficient liver yang that causes congealing of liver qi with depression, timidity, lassitude, cold limbs, sunken thready pulse; (2) the same as cold stagnating in the liver vessel
1.7.188	cold stagnating in the liver vessel	寒滯肝脈	a pathological change marked by cold pathogen congealing in the liver meridian
1.7.189	liver heat	肝熱	a general term for various heat syndromes of the liver such as liver fire and ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang
1.7.190	liver excess heat	肝實熱	a pathological state characterized by presence of exuberant fire-heat in the liver
1.7.191	dampness-heat in the liver meridian	肝經濕熱	a pathological change attributable to dampness-heat accumulated in the liver and pouring downward along the liver meridian

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.192	liver-gallbladder dampness-heat	肝膽濕熱	accumulation of dampness-heat in the liver and gallbladder resulting in impaired bile flow and downward pouring of dampness-heat
1.7.193	excess heat in the liver meridian	肝經實熱	accumulation of exuberant fire-heat in the liver meridian
1.7.194	dual excess of the liver-gallbladder	肝膽俱實	accumulation of excessive pathogen (such as stagnant qi, impeded dampness, accumulated heat, static blood or calculi) in the liver and gallbladder
1.7.195	liver-gallbladder qi depression	肝膽氣鬱	stagnation of qi in the liver and gallbladder with impaired function of free coursing and bile discharge, the same as liver-gallbladder qi stagnation
1.7.196	liver qi depression	肝氣鬱結; 肝鬱	stagnation of qi in the liver resulting from impairment of free coursing, also called liver depression
1.7.197	liver depression and spleen deficiency	肝鬱脾虛	a pathological change in which depressed liver qi impairs the transporting and transforming function of the spleen, the same as liver stagnation and spleen deficiency
1.7.198	liver-kidney depletion	肝腎虧損	a pathological change in which insufficient essence and blood of the liver and kidney fail to nourish the related body constituents and organs, but do not produce deficiency-fire
1.7.199	liver-kidney yin deficiency	肝腎陰虛	a pathological change in which insufficient yin fluid of the liver and kidney fails to nourish the related body constituents and organs, and gives rise to deficiency-fire symptoms
1.7.200	gallbladder heat	膽熱	a morbid condition ascribed to attack on the gallbladder and gallbladder meridian by pathogenic heat
1.7.201	gallbladder excess heat	膽實熱	a pathological change characterized by excess heat in the gallbladder and gallbladder meridian
1.7.202	insufficiency of gallbladder qi	膽氣不足; 膽虛氣怯	a pathological change ascribed to insufficiency of the gallbladder qi that makes the mind disquieted and susceptible to fright
1.7.203	spleen cold	脾寒	a general term for various cold conditions of the spleen

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.204	spleen heat	脾熱	a general term for various heat conditions of the spleen
1.7.205	spleen deficiency	脾虛	a general term for deficiency condition of the spleen, such as spleen qi deficiency, spleen yang deficiency, and spleen yin deficiency
1.7.206	spleen qi deficiency	脾氣虛	a pathological change characterized by qi deficiency with impaired transporting and transforming function of the spleen
1.7.207	spleen yin deficiency	脾陰虛	a pathological change ascribed to deficiency of yin in the spleen with inadequate distribution of essence to the body
1.7.208	spleen yang deficiency	脾陽虛; 脾虛寒	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of yang in the spleen resulting in deficiency-cold
1.7.209	spleen excess	脾實; 脾氣實	a pathological state ascribed to accumulation of excessive pathogenic qi in the spleen, also the same as spleen qi excess
1.7.210	spleen excess heat	脾實熱	a pathological condition characterized by exuberant pathogenic heat in the spleen
1.7.211	spleen failing to control the blood	脾不統血	a pathological change characterized by failure of the spleen to keep the blood flowing in the vessels, resulting in hemorrhage, the same as spleen failing to keep the blood within the vessel
1.7.212	dampness damaging spleen yang	濕傷脾陽	a pathological change characterized by stagnant cold-dampness causing damage to spleen yang
1.7.213	dampness damaging spleen yin	濕傷脾陰	a pathological change in which the depressed dampness transforms into heat causing damage to spleen yin
1.7.214	cold-dampness encumbering the spleen	寒濕困脾	a pathological change in which excessive cold-dampness impairs spleen yang, the same as cold-dampness accumulating in the spleen
1.7.215	spleen deficiency with dampness encumbrance	脾虛濕困	a complex condition of deficiency and excess wherein spleen deficiency leads to accumulation of dampness-turbidity, the same as spleen deficiency with dampness accumulation

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.216	spleen deficiency engendering wind	脾虛生風	a pathological change characterized by stirring of wind internally due to spleen deficiency
1.7.217	spleen-stomach dampness-heat	脾胃濕熱	a pathological condition ascribed to accumulation of dampness-heat which impairs the functions of the spleen and stomach, the same as dampness-heat in the middle energizer
1.7.218	spleen-stomach deficiency cold	脾胃虛寒	a pathological change characterized by decline of yang qi of the spleen and stomach with diminished functions and endogenous deficiency-cold
1.7.219	dual deficiency of the spleen-stomach	脾胃俱虛	a deficiency condition of both the spleen and stomach, marked by a feeling of emptiness in the stomach, shortness of breath, reversal cold of the limbs and incessant watery diarrhea
1.7.220	spleen-stomach weakness	脾胃虛弱	a pathological change characterized by diminished spleen and stomach function of food intake and digestion
1.7.221	dual excess of the spleen-stomach	脾胃俱實	a pathological change marked by presence of excessive pathogenic qi in both the spleen and stomach
1.7.222	spleen-stomach yin deficiency	脾胃陰虛	a pathological change in which deficiency of yin fluid of the spleen-stomach results in impaired food intake and digestion
1.7.223	spleen-kidney yang deficiency	脾腎陽虛	a pathological change characterized by insufficient yang qi of the spleen and kidney with endogenous cold and flooding of water
1.7.224	spleen failing in transportation	脾失健運	dysfunction of the spleen in transporting the essence of food and water
1.7.225	constrained spleen qi	脾氣不舒	a pathological change marked by dysfunction of the spleen with impaired digestion and absorption
1.7.226	spleen qi failing to bear upward	脾氣不升	dysfunction of the spleen in upbearing nutrients, the same as spleen qi failing to ascend
1.7.227	sunken spleen qi	脾氣下陷	a pathological change characterized as sinking of spleen qi induced by weakness of the spleen with diminished upbearing function
1.7.228	insufficiency of middle qi	中氣不足	deficiency of qi in the middle energizer, marked by diminished function of the spleen and stomach

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.229	devitalized middle yang	中陽不振	weakness of yang qi in the middle energizer, marked by diminished function of the spleen and stomach in digestion and absorption
1.7.230	excessiveness in the stomach- intestines	胃家實	a pathological change characterized by presence of pathogens deep in the yang brightness meridian that causes exuberant dryness-heat in the gastrointestinal tract
1.7.231	stomach excess	胃實	a morbid condition due to consumption of body fluid and stagnation of stomach qi, caused by excessive heat accumulated in the stomach
1.7.232	stomach deficiency	胃虛	a general term for deficiency conditions of the stomach, including qi deficiency, yin deficiency and yang deficiency of the stomach
1.7.233	stomach qi deficiency	胃氣虛	a pathological change characterized by weakness of stomach qi with impaired appetite and digestion
1.7.234	stomach yin deficiency	胃陰虛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of fluid in the stomach with impaired function attributable to intense stomach fire or exuberant heat in a warm disease
1.7.235	stomach yang deficiency	胃陽虛	a pathological change characterized by decline of yang qi which leads to deficiency-cold of the stomach with markedly impaired appetite and digestion
1.7.236	stomach cold	胃寒	a pathological change either due to deficiency of stomach yang or caused by direct attack of pathogenic cold, the former being deficiency-cold of the stomach, and the latter, excess-cold in the stomach
1.7.237	stomach heat	胃熱	a pathological change due to impairment of the stomach by pathogenic heat or caused by overeating of hot pungent food
1.7.238	stomach heat with swift digestion	胃熱消穀	a pathological change in which stomach heat or fire leads to abnormally rapid digestion
1.7.239	stomach fire bearing upward	胃火上升	a pathological change in which exuberant fire in the stomach flares up along the meridian/channel, causing toothache, gum swelling or bleeding, or hematemesis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.240	intense stomach fire	胃火熾盛	presence of excessive pathogenic heat in the stomach with upward flaming of stomach fire
1.7.241	stomach qi failing to bear downward	胃氣不降	impaired downbearing of stomach qi, causing anorexia, nausea, vomiting, belching, and a feeling of fullness in the epigastric region, the same as stomach qi failing to descend
1.7.242	stomach qi ascending counterflow	胃氣上逆	a pathological change characterized by counterflow ascent of stomach qi that causes belching, hiccups, acid regurgitation and vomiting
1.7.243	stomach disharmony	胃不和	a general term referring to various functional disorders of the stomach, i.e., dysfunction in receiving and digesting food as well as in conducting the contents to the intestines
1.7.244	dual deficiency of the lung-spleen	肺脾兩虛; 脾肺兩虛; 肺脾氣虛	qi deficiency of both the lung and spleen marked by failure of the spleen in transportation and transformation and the lung in diffusion and depurative downbearing; the same as lung-spleen qi deficiency
1.7.245	damage to the lung vessels	肺絡損傷	a pathological change marked by expectoration of blood, caused by severe or enduring cough or by heat pathogen
1.7.246	lung-kidney yin deficiency	肺腎陰虛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of yin fluid of the lung and kidney with engendering of internal heat
1.7.247	lung-kidney qi deficiency	肺腎氣虛	a pathological change characterized by dual deficiency of lung qi and kidney qi with impaired function of depurative downbearing and qi absorption
1.7.248	lung failing to distribute fluid	肺津不布	failure of the lung to distribute fluid, leading to production of phlegm and causing cough and dyspnea
1.7.249	impaired lung depuration	肺失清肅	a pathological change of lung that gives rise to cough, dyspnea, expectoration of sputum and fullness in the chest
1.7.250	phlegm turbidity obstructing the lung	痰濁阻肺	a pathological change characterized by impairment of diffusion and downbearing of lung qi due to phlegm-dampness obstruction

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.251	wind-cold fettering the lung	風寒束肺	a pathological change characterized by attack of wind-cold which impairs the normal flow of lung qi
1.7.252	lung qi failing to diffuse	肺氣不宣	disordered diffusion of lung qi generally attributable to external pathogens invading the lung or fettering the exterior, and manifesting in cough, hoarse voice, and nasal congestion, the same as lung qi failing to disperse
1.7.253	inhibited lung qi	肺氣不利	any disturbance of depurative downbearing of lung qi and the lung's governing of the waterways
1.7.254	lung qi ascending counterflow	肺氣上逆	a pathological change characterized by counterflow ascending of lung qi instead of depurative downbearing
1.7.255	lung deficiency	肺虛	a general term for deficiency conditions of the lung, including lung qi deficiency and lung yin deficiency
1.7.256	lung yin deficiency	肺陰虛	a pathological change characterized by insufficient lung yin with endogenous heat
1.7.257	lung qi deficiency	肺氣虛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of qi with diminished function of the lung
1.7.258	lung cold	肺寒	a term either referring to external cold invading the lung or to deficiency-cold of lung qi
1.7.259	lung excess	肺實；肺氣實	any excess condition of the lung, attributable to attack of the lung by external wind, cold, dryness, and heat pathogens or obstruction of the lung by phlegm-heat, phlegm-dampness, etc.
1.7.260	lung fire	肺火	a pathological change characterized by presence of intense heat in the lung, either of excess type or of deficiency type
1.7.261	lung heat	肺熱	a general term for heat conditions of the lung
1.7.262	excess heat in the lung	肺實熱	a pathological change characterized by presence of excessive pathogenic heat in the lung
1.7.263	dryness qi damaging the lung	燥氣傷肺	a pathological change characterized by damage of the lung fluid by pathogenic dryness that impairs the diffusion and depurative downbearing function

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.264	fire heat distressing the lung	火熱迫肺	a pathological change characterized by pathogenic fire-heat accumulating in the lung or intense fire-heat scorching lung yin
1.7.265	broken metal failing to sound	金破不鳴	an expression figuratively referring to hoarseness due to deficiency of lung qi
1.7.266	excess metal failing to sound	金實不鳴	an expression figuratively referring to hoarseness or loss of voice due to excessiveness of lung qi
1.7.267	large intestinal cold bind	大腸寒結	a pathological change characterized by retention of cold in the large intestine with constipation, the same as large intestinal cold accumulation
1.7.268	large intestinal dampness-heat	大腸濕熱	a pathological change characterized by accumulation of dampness-heat in the large intestine which impairs the qi movement, damages the intestinal blood vessels, and causes abnormal bowel evacuations
1.7.269	insufficiency of the large intestinal humor	大腸液虧	a pathological change ascribed to insufficient fluid in the large intestine
1.7.270	large intestinal deficiency cold	大腸虛寒	a pathological change in which debilitation of yang qi in the large intestine leads to endogenous cold and causes abnormal bowel evacuations
1.7.271	large intestinal excess heat	大腸實熱	a pathological change characterized by exuberant pathogenic heat obstructing the bowel qi
1.7.272	heat distressing the large intestine	熱迫大腸	a pathological change in which pathogenic heat impairs the function of the large intestine, leading to acute diarrhea with abdominal pain, burning sensation in the anus, scanty dark urine, and dry yellow tongue coating
1.7.273	large intestinal heat bind	大腸熱結	a pathological change characterized by exuberant heat in the large intestine that causes dryness and constipation, the same as large intestinal heat accumulation
1.7.274	large intestinal deficiency	大腸虛	deficiency of the large intestinal qi with abnormal bowel evacuations
1.7.275	large intestinal excess	大腸實	excess of pathogens in the large intestine
1.7.276	large intestinal heat	大腸熱	excess of pathogenic heat in the large intestine

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.277	kidney deficiency	腎虛	a general term for deficiency conditions of the kidney, including kidney yin deficiency, kidney yang deficiency, insufficiency of kidney essence, and insecurity of kidney qi
1.7.278	insufficiency of kidney essence	腎精不足	a pathological change of the kidney with insufficiency of its essence and impaired function
1.7.279	kidney deficiency with water flood	腎虛水泛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of kidney yang with impaired water metabolism and resultant retention of fluid
1.7.280	hyperactive kidney fire	腎火偏亢	relative excess of kidney fire due to deficiency of kidney yin
1.7.281	insecurity of kidney qi	腎氣不固	a pathological change characterized by diminished essence-storing and astringing function of the kidney
1.7.282	kidney failing to receive qi	腎不納氣	deficiency of the kidney qi preventing the reception of lung qi
1.7.283	kidney yin deficiency	腎陰虛	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of yin to nourish the kidney, leading to deficiency-fire or deficiency-heat
1.7.284	kidney yang deficiency	腎陽虛; 腎陽虛衰	a pathological change characterized by deficiency of kidney yang with diminished warming function and failure in qi transformation
1.7.285	debilitation of the life gate fire	命門火衰	a pathological change characterized by impaired reproductive function due to insufficiency of kidney yang
1.7.286	kidney qi deficiency	腎氣虛	a pathological change characterized by depletion of the kidney qi with diminished essence-storing and astringing function
1.7.287	collapse of essence	精脫	a pathological change characterized by depletion and loss of kidney essence that leads to impaired hearing
1.7.288	kidney heat	腎熱	a pathological change characterized by kidney yin depletion with endogenous heat
1.7.289	kidney qi excess	腎氣實; 腎氣盛	repletion of the essential qi of the kidney
1.7.290	kidney excess	腎實	excessive pathogenic qi in the kidney

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.291	heat scorching kidney yin	熱灼腎陰	damage to kidney yin by pathogenic heat, usually occurring in the advanced stage of warm heat disease, the same as heat damaging kidney yin
1.7.292	inhibited bladder	膀胱不利	a pathological change of the bladder's function in urination
1.7.293	bladder qi block	膀胱氣閉	impairment of bladder qi transformation resulting in inhibited and difficult urination or anuria
1.7.294	bladder dampness-heat	膀胱濕熱	accumulation of dampness-heat in the bladder
1.7.295	bladder deficiency cold	膀胱虛寒	impaired activity of the urinary bladder with cold manifestations due to consumption of kidney yang
1.7.296	bladder retention failure	膀胱失約	impaired bladder function resulting in urinary incontinence
1.7.297	cold entering the blood chamber	寒入血室	the pathogenic cold entering the uterus, congeals the liver meridian and impedes blood flow
1.7.298	heat entering the blood chamber	熱入血室	the pathogenic heat exploiting deficiency during menstruation or after childbirth to enter the blood chamber and contend with the blood
1.7.299	hidden heat in the thoroughfare and conception vessels	熱伏衝任	a morbid condition in which pathogenic heat stays in the thoroughfare and conception vessels
1.7.300	disharmony of the thoroughfare and conception vessels	衝任不調	impeded flow of qi and blood in the thoroughfare and conception vessels causing dysfunction of these vessels
1.7.301	insecurity of the thoroughfare and conception vessels	衝任不固	loss of function to control menstruation and prevent uterine bleeding and abortion by the thoroughfare and conception vessels
1.7.302	damage to the thoroughfare and conception vessels	衝任損傷	a pathological change arising when sexual overindulgence, frequent pregnancy or external pathogens cause damage to the thoroughfare and conception vessels
1.7.303	dysfunction of meridians	經隧失職	a pathological change characterized by impaired flow of qi and blood in the meridians/channels

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.304	derangement of meridian qi	經氣逆亂	a pathological change of meridians/channels in which the adverse flow of meridian/channel qi leads to disordered blood circulation
1.7.305	wind striking the blood vessels	風中血脈	deviated eyes and mouth, hemiplegia, or numbness of limbs attributed to wind that strikes the weakened blood vessel, the same as wind attacking the blood vessels
1.7.306	wind-fire whirling internally	風火內旋	a pathological change of extreme heat engendering wind
1.7.307	wind-cold fettering the exterior	風寒束表	a pathological change attributed to external wind-cold attacking the superficial aspect of the body
1.7.308	mutual contention of wind and dampness	風濕相搏	a pathological change resulting in muscle aches and joint pains, occurring in wind-dampness contraction, the same as wind and dampness attack
1.7.309	wind stroke	中風; 卒中(風); 中風病	sudden appearance of hemiplegia, deviated eyes and mouth, and impeded speech attributed to contraction of wind
1.7.310	cold in the middle	中寒	(1) middle energizer deficiency-cold arising from insufficiency of yang qi; (2) internal cold remaining in the middle energizer causing damage to yang qi and stagnation of qi and blood
1.7.311	cold stroke	中寒	attack of cold directly to the stomach and intestines
1.7.312	dampness stroke	中濕	(1) a pathological change attributed to dampness attack, either from without or from within; (2) a type of apoplexy related to contraction of dampness, the same as dampness attack
1.7.313	dryness affecting the clear orifices	燥乾清竅	a pathological change characterized by dryness-heat affection of the upper part of the body impairing the function of sense organs
1.7.314	dryness accumulation	燥結	a pathological change characterized by lack of fluid in the gastrointestinal tract resulting in constipation
1.7.315	heat damaging the sinews	熱傷筋脈	a pathological change characterized by intense heat scorching nutrient yin, depriving the sinews of nourishment and thereby causing contracture, flaccidity or paralysis of limbs

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.316	heat block	熱閉	pathogenic heat congests in the visceral organs and meridians/channels
1.7.317	trapped heat	熱遏	pathogenic heat is kept in the interior and cannot be discharged
1.7.318	heat accumulation	熱結	a pathological change characterized by gathering and binding of pathogenic heat in the interior such as in the bladder, in the blood aspect, or in the gastrointestinal tract
1.7.319	heat depression	熱鬱	a pathological change that arises when persistent depression transforms into heat, the same as heat stagnation
1.7.320	six depressions	六鬱	a collective term for stagnation of qi, blood, damp, fire, phlegm and food, the same as six stagnations
1.7.321	obstruction of defense yang	衛陽被遏	a pathological change characterized by the depressed defense qi which fails to warm and protect the body surface
1.7.322	nutrient-defense disharmony	營衛不和	the pathological state of spontaneous sweating in an exterior pattern/syndrome, as the defense aspect regulates the excretion of sweat while the nutrient aspect provides fluid for the formation of sweat
1.7.323	weak defense with strong nutrient	衛弱營強	the pathological state of spontaneous sweating without fever in an exterior pattern/syndrome
1.7.324	strong defense with weak nutrient	衛強營弱	the pathological state of sweating that occurs only during fever in an exterior pattern/syndrome
1.7.325	qi aspect cold	氣分寒	a pathological change characterized by cold in the qi aspect, either due to spleen-stomach yang deficiency with preponderance of yin cold or due to cold pathogen invading the qi aspect
1.7.326	qi aspect heat	氣分熱	a pathological change characterized by heat in the qi aspect, mostly excess in nature
1.7.327	disease of both defense and qi aspects	衛氣同病	coexistence of diseases in both the defense and qi aspects

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.328	disease of both defense and nutrient aspects	衛營同病	coexistence of diseases in both the defense and nutrient aspects
1.7.329	heat entering the blood aspect	熱入血分	a pathological change characterized by the pathogenic heat entering the blood aspect, causing hemorrhages, mental disturbances, and even convulsions
1.7.330	blood aspect heat toxin	血分熱毒	a pathological change characterized by the heat toxin penetrating deeply in the blood aspect, causing high fever with macular eruption, hemorrhages and even mental clouding
1.7.331	blazing of both qi and blood	氣血兩燔	a pathological change characterized by the presence of exuberant pathogenic heat in both the qi and blood aspects causing damage to body fluids and hemorrhages
1.7.332	blazing of both qi and nutrient	氣營兩燔	a pathological change characterized by simultaneous existence of exuberant pathogenic heat in the qi and nutrient aspects
1.7.333	depressed nutrient-yin	營陰鬱滯	a pathological change marked by inhibited movement of nutrient-yin qi, the same as stagnated nutrient-yin
1.7.334	(transmission and) transmutation	傳變	development of a disease: transmission from one meridian/channel to another with change in the manifestations
1.7.335	(transmission and) transformation	傳化	development of disease: transmission from one meridian/channel to another with shift of pathological changes
1.7.336	constitutionally influenced transformation	從化	the process of developing a pattern/syndrome in conformity with the patient's constitution, e.g., heat pattern/syndrome in a patient of yang constitution, and cold pattern/syndrome in a patient of yin constitution
1.7.337	transform into heat	化熱	transformation into a heat pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.338	heat formation	熱化	the process of forming a heat pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.339	transform into fire	化火	transformation into a fire pattern/syndrome in the course of disease

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.340	fire formation	火化	the process of forming a fire pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.341	transform into wind	化風	transformation into a wind pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.342	wind formation	風化	the process of forming a wind pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.343	transform into dryness	化燥	transformation into a dryness pattern/syndrome due to consumption of body fluids
1.7.344	dryness formation	燥化	the process of forming a dryness pattern/syndrome due to fluid consumption
1.7.345	transform into cold	化寒	transformation into a cold pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.346	cold formation	寒化	the process of forming a cold pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.347	transform into dampness	化濕	transformation into a dampness pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.348	dampness formation	濕化	the process of forming a dampness pattern/syndrome in the course of disease
1.7.349	lesser yin cold transformation	少陰寒化	a pathological change characterized by debilitation of heart-kidney yang with exuberance of yin cold, and usually manifested by aversion to cold with no fever, listlessness and sleepiness, reversal cold of the limbs, lenteric diarrhea and faint fine pulse
1.7.350	lesser yin heat transformation	少陰熱化	a pathological change characterized by depletion of heart-kidney yin with exuberance of yang heat, and usually manifested by fever, vexation, insomnia, dry mouth and throat, reddened tongue and rapid fine pulse
1.7.351	summerheat entering yang brightness	暑入陽明	penetration of summerheat into yang brightness, giving rise to intense heat involving the body surface, the heart and the head, and forcing the discharge of sweat, manifested by high fever, thirst, vexation, headache, dizziness, and sweating

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.7.352	normal transmission	順傳	transmission of a febrile disease following normal sequence, e.g., from the defense aspect to the qi aspect, the same as sequential transmission
1.7.353	reverse transmission	逆傳	transmission of a febrile disease contrary to the normal sequence, e.g., from the defense aspect directly to the nutrient aspect and blood aspect, instead of by way of the qi aspect, the same as non-sequential transmission
1.7.354	non-transmission	不傳	no further development of febrile disease
1.7.355	ceasing to transmit	經盡	exogenous febrile disease stops progressing and begins recovering when it reaches a certain meridian/channel or certain stage of development
1.7.356	transmit to another meridian	再經	the process of a cold-damage disease in which one meridian/channel syndrome passes into another meridian/channel syndrome while the former persists
1.7.357	skipping meridians transmission	越經傳	transmission of a cold-damage disease from one meridian/channel to another with skipping of one or more meridians/channels, e.g., transmission from greater yang to lesser yang with yang brightness skipped over
1.7.358	sequential meridians transmission	循經傳	transmission of a cold-damage disease from one meridian/channel to another, by the order of greater yang, yang brightness, lesser yang, greater yin, lesser yin and reverting yin
1.7.359	direct strike/stroke	直中	attack of an exogenous pathogen directly on the three yin meridians instead of transmission from the yang meridians, the same as direct attack
1.7.360	overlap of diseases	並病	overlapping of two meridian/channel diseases, in which they appear in succession and then coexist
1.7.361	combination of diseases	合病	combination of two or more meridian/channel diseases appearing at the same time
1.7.362	favorable pattern/syndrome	順證	a pattern/syndrome which indicates a positive prognosis
1.7.363	unfavorable pattern/syndrome	逆證	a pattern/syndrome which indicates a negative prognosis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.8.0	Others	其他	
1.8.1	theory of five circuits and six qi	運氣學	the doctrine that aims at studying the rule of climatic changes and its relation to the occurrence of disease in terms of the five circuits and six qi
1.8.2	five circuits	五運	a collective name for wood, fire, earth, metal and water circuits
1.8.3	six qi	六氣	six normal climatic phenomena: wind, cold, summerheat, dampness, dryness and fire (heat)
1.8.4	circuit of year	歲運	the circuit qi that controls the meteorological features and changes of a given year as well as the corresponding prevalence of disease
1.8.5	(qi) controlling heaven	司天	the guest qi that controls the climatic changes in the first half of the year
1.8.6	terrestrial effect	在泉	the guest qi that controls the climatic changes in the latter half of the year
1.8.7	midnight	合陰	the time when nutrient qi and defense qi meet in the visceral organs
1.8.8	sixty-year cycle	甲子	combination of the heavenly stems and earthly branches used to designate years, months, days and hours
1.8.9	stems and branches	干支	a collective name for the ten heavenly stems and the twelve earthly branches, both used as serial numbers
1.8.10	dominant qi	主氣	the qi that controls the regular seasonal changes of the climate
1.8.11	guest qi	客氣	the qi that controls the seasonal changes of the climate in a particular year
1.8.12	intermediate qi	間氣	that part of guest qi, other than the qi controlling the heaven and the qi with terrestrial effect, called intermediate qi because of its existence between the heaven and earth
1.8.13	annual congruence	歲會	coincidence of the circuit qi of the year with the earthly branch in terms of the five phases, happening in eight years of a sixty-year cycle

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.8.14	coincidence of heavenly qi	天符	coincidence of the circuit qi of the year with the qi controlling the heaven in terms of the five phases, occurring in a cycle of sixty years
1.8.15	normal circuit qi	平氣	the circuit qi that is neither excessive nor insufficient, rarely causing disease
1.8.16	natural life span	天年	human life expectancy
1.8.17	three yin and three yang	三陰三陽	a collective term for reverting yin, lesser yin, greater yin, lesser yang, yang brightness and greater yang
1.8.18	opening, closing and pivot	開闔樞	the functional characteristics of three yin and three yang: opening referring to outward actions, closing referring to inward actions, while pivot referring to the central role
1.8.19	greater yang	太陽	(1) referring to cold qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the bladder meridian and small intestine meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.20	yang brightness	陽明	(1) referring to dryness qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the large intestine meridian and stomach meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.21	lesser yang	少陽	(1) referring to fire qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the triple energizer meridian and gallbladder meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.22	greater yin	太陰	(1) referring to dampness qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the lung meridian and spleen meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.23	lesser yin	少陰	(1) referring to heat qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the heart meridian and kidney meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.24	reverting yin	厥陰	(1) referring to wind qi in the theory of five circuits and six qi; (2) referring to the pericardium meridian and liver meridian in the meridian theory
1.8.25	principals of life preservation	保命之主	the main principals for the maintenance of health and enhancement of life expectancy for individual constitutions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
1.8.26	inhale-gathering qi	吸聚之氣	the qi that promotes health for the greater yang person
1.8.27	yin-cool qi	陰清之氣	the qi that promotes health for the lesser yang person
1.8.28	exhale-dispersing qi	呼散之氣	the qi that promotes health for the greater yin person
1.8.29	yang-warm qi	陽煖之氣	the qi that promotes health for the lesser yin person
1.8.30	water-food metabolism	水穀代謝	the processes by which food and water are taken in by the spleen and passed out by the kidney
1.8.31	qi-humor metabolism	氣液代謝	processes by which qi and humor are inhaled by the liver and exhaled by the lung
1.8.32	ascending-descending-congested-uncongested	升降緩束	movement of qi to control water-grains metabolism and qi-humor metabolism
1.8.33	healthy state	完實無病	healthy state without diseases or symptoms, a singular expression in Four Constitution Medicine
1.8.34	ordinary symptom	素證	symptoms occurring in association with the individual constitution
1.8.35	temperament	性情	the distinct nature and character of an individual
1.8.36	skill and talent	性質材幹	special aptitude or faculty, expertness or ability to enhance social relationships
1.8.37	appearance and style of talking	容貌詞氣	one of the criteria for identifying the type of constitution, e.g., neat appearance, natural speech and shrewd behavior of a lesser yin person
1.8.38	physical appearance	體形氣像	one of the criteria for identifying the type of constitution, e.g., developed hips for the sitting posture and a weak chest for the self-embracing posture in the lesser yin person
1.8.39	activity-mind-body-matter	事心身物	basic factors of Four Constitution Medicine to understand all nature

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.0.0	DIAGNOSTICS	診斷學	
2.0.1	diagnosis	診斷	determination of the nature of a diseased condition; identification of a disease by careful investigation of its symptoms and history; also, the opinion (formally stated) resulting from such investigation
2.0.2	diagnostic method	診法	the basic method of collecting data to determine the disease condition
2.0.3	symptom	症狀	a (bodily or mental) phenomenon, circumstance, or change of condition arising from and accompanying a disease or other pathological condition, and constituting an indication or evidence of it; a characteristic sign of a particular disease. Especially, in modern use, a subjective indication, perceptible to the patient
2.0.4	sign	體徵；徵候	an objective evidence or indication of disease, especially observed by the physician
2.0.5	disease	疾病	a condition of being (more or less seriously) out of health; illness, sickness
2.0.6	disease identification and treatment	辨病論治	identification of the category of a disease and its treatment
2.0.7	pattern/syndrome	證	(1) diagnostic conclusion of the pathological changes at a certain stage of a disease, including the location, cause, and nature of the disease as well as the trend of development; (2) conditions suggesting appropriate treatment; (3) condition specific to the individual
2.0.8	pattern/syndrome type	證型	a common pattern/syndrome mode with a standard name
2.0.9	case record	診籍	traditionally used record of a patient's medical history, diagnosis and treatment
2.0.10	assessment of the normal and abnormal	揆度奇恒	determining the extent to which an individual is exhibiting abnormal characteristics which may be indicative of a disease or pathological condition
2.0.11	judging the inside from observation of the outside	司外揣內	making judgment on the condition inside the body based on the signs observed from the outside

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.0.12	correlation of all four examinations	四診合參	comprehensive consideration of the data obtained from the four examinations (inspection, listening and smelling, inquiry, and palpation) for making the diagnosis
2.0.13	pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	辨證	the process of overall analysis of clinical data to determine the location, cause and nature of a patient's disease and achieving a diagnosis of a pattern/syndrome, also called pattern differentiation
2.0.14	four examinations	四診	a collective term for inspection, listening and smelling, inquiry, and palpation
2.0.15	eight principles	八綱	guiding principles of pattern identification/syndrome differentiation, that is, yin and yang, exterior and interior, cold and heat, deficiency and excess
2.1.0	Inspection	望診	
2.1.1	inspection	望診	one of the four diagnostic examinations, including observing the patient's mental state, facial expression, complexion, physical condition, condition of the tongue, secretions and the distribution of superficial venules of the infant's fingers
2.1.2	inspection of the vitality	望神	inspection of the state and vitality, especially mental and physical activities such as consciousness, thinking, facial expression, speech, and response to external stimuli
2.1.3	presence of vitality	得神	the general state marked by high spirit and mental and physical exuberance with prompt and appropriate responses, indicating that the healthy qi is not damaged and improvement from a pathological condition can be expected
2.1.4	loss of vitality	失神	the general state marked by indifference, low spirit and impaired mental and physical functions with sluggish and inappropriate responses, indicating the existence of a serious pathological condition
2.1.5	lack of vitality	少神	the general state marked by indifference, listlessness and low spirit
2.1.6	false vitality	假神	transient improvement in spirit in a critical case, often indicating approaching death

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.7	mental confusion	昏蒙	clouding of consciousness with sleepiness, but responsive to calling
2.1.8	fainting	昏厥	sudden loss of consciousness, usually of short duration, sometimes accompanied by cold limbs, also called syncope
2.1.9	delirium	譫妄	a mental disturbance characterized by confusion, disordered speech and hallucinations
2.1.10	agitation	煩躁	vexation followed by irritability, irascibility, and restlessness
2.1.11	inspection of the complexion	望色	observation of the patient's skin color, particularly the color of the face
2.1.12	(facial) complexion	面色	color and luster of the face
2.1.13	pale white complexion	面色淡白	a colorless complexion, often indicating blood deficiency or profuse loss of blood
2.1.14	pale complexion	面色蒼白	a white complexion with a hint of blue or gray, a complexion often caused by yang collapse or exuberance of cold
2.1.15	bright pale complexion	面色晄白	a white complexion with puffiness, often seen in cases of yang deficiency
2.1.16	darkish complexion	面黑	dark discoloration of the face, often occurring in kidney deficiency, cold pattern/syndrome, water retention or blood stasis
2.1.17	reddened complexion	面紅	a complexion redder than normal, indicating the presence of heat
2.1.18	bluish complexion	面青	bluish discoloration of the face, often occurring in cold pattern/syndrome, pains, qi stagnation, blood stasis or convulsions
2.1.19	yellow complexion	面黃	yellow discoloration of the face, generally suggesting spleen deficiency or accumulation of dampness that causes dysfunction of the spleen
2.1.20	sallow complexion	面色萎黃	yellowish withered complexion, which usually occurs in cases of spleen qi deficiency

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.21	puffy face	面浮	a soft swollen face, usually indicating a deficiency condition
2.1.22	governing complexion	主色	normal natural color of the skin
2.1.23	visiting complexion	客色	a normal complexion influenced by a change of climate
2.1.24	morbid complexion	病色	abnormal color of the face caused by disease
2.1.25	benign complexion	善色	bright and lustrous complexion indicating a favorable prognosis, also the same as healthy complexion
2.1.26	malign complexion	惡色	dark and gloomy complexion indicating an unfavorable prognosis, also the same as unhealthy complexion
2.1.27	true visceral color	真臟色	color reflected in the face indicating exhaustion of the genuine qi of internal organs
2.1.28	pitting edema	胼腫	edema associated with pitting of the skin, which resolves only slowly, usually occurring on the instep
2.1.29	encrusted skin	肌膚甲錯	dried, roughened and scaling skin, indicating chronic blood stasis
2.1.30	convulsions	抽搐; 癇瘓	sudden, violent uncontrollable movements of the limbs caused by contraction of muscles
2.1.31	bloody stool	便血; 圕血	loss of blood through anus, with stool
2.1.32	distal bleeding	遠血	bleeding far from the anus, generally referring to bleeding from upper digestive tract
2.1.33	proximal bleeding	近血	passing fresh blood before or during defecation, indicating anal or rectal hemorrhage
2.1.34	inspection of finger venules	望指紋	a diagnostic method for infants, based on observation of the superficial venules on the palmar side of the index finger
2.1.35	three bars	三關	a collective term for the three segments of the index finger used for measuring the extension of the visible venules, i.e., “wind bar”, “qi bar” and “life bar”, also known as three gates

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.36	wind bar	風關	the proximal segment of the index finger in the inspection of venules, also known as wind gate
2.1.37	qi bar	氣關	the middle segment of the index finger in the inspection of venules, also known as qi gate
2.1.38	life bar	命關	the distal segment of the index finger in the inspection of venules, also known as life gate
2.1.39	tongue diagnosis	舌診	inspection of the size, shape, color and moisture of the tongue proper and its coating
2.1.40	inspection of the tongue	望舌	examination of the tongue body and its coating
2.1.41	tongue manifestation	舌象	changes in the appearance of the tongue, relating to changes in the color and form of the tongue body and its coating
2.1.42	tip of the tongue	舌尖	the anterior end of the tongue
2.1.43	margins of the tongue	舌邊	the lateral borders of the tongue
2.1.44	center of the tongue	舌中; 舌心	the central part of the tongue
2.1.45	root of the tongue	舌根; 舌本	the part of the tongue that is attached basally to the bone
2.1.46	tongue body	舌體; 舌質	the musculature and vascular tissue of the tongue, also referring to tongue substance
2.1.47	tongue color	舌色	color of the tongue body, which reflects the condition of qi, blood and the visceral organs
2.1.48	tongue spirit	舌神	the general vitality of the tongue manifest in its luxuriance or witheredness
2.1.49	luxuriant, withered, tough and tender-soft	榮枯老嫩	a luxuriant tongue is moistened and fresh red in color; a withered tongue is dull, dark, dry and shriveled; a tough tongue is firm with rough texture; a tender-soft tongue is delicate with fine texture
2.1.50	pale tongue	淡白舌	a tongue less red than normal, indicating qi and blood deficiency or presence of deficiency-cold
2.1.51	pale red tongue	淡紅舌	a tongue of normal color

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.52	red tongue	紅舌	a tongue redder than normal, indicating presence of heat
2.1.53	blue tongue	青舌	a tongue of bluish color, indicating congealing cold and static blood
2.1.54	purple tongue	紫舌	a tongue purple in color, indicating stagnant circulation of qi and blood
2.1.55	bluish purple tongue	青紫舌	a cyanotic tongue, indicating blood stasis or heat toxin in the nutrient-blood
2.1.56	crimson tongue	絳舌	a tongue deep red in color, indicating intense heat
2.1.57	enlarged tongue	胖大舌	a tongue that is larger than normal, pale in color and delicate, usually bearing dental indentations on the margin
2.1.58	swollen tongue	腫脹舌	a large and bulging tongue that makes the mouth full or difficult to open
2.1.59	thin tongue	瘦薄舌	a tongue thinner than normal
2.1.60	spotted tongue	點刺舌	a tongue with red, white or black spots as well as thorn-like protrusions on its surface
2.1.61	prickly tongue	芒刺舌	a tongue with thorn-like protrusions on its surface
2.1.62	teeth-marked tongue	齒痕舌	a tongue with dental indentations on its margin
2.1.63	fissured tongue	裂紋舌	a tongue with fissures on its surface
2.1.64	peeled tongue	光剝舌	a tongue that has lost its normal coating, giving the appearance of having been peeled
2.1.65	mirror tongue	鏡面舌	a completely smooth tongue free of coating, like a mirror
2.1.66	geographical tongue	地圖舌	a tongue with irregular shedding of the coating and distinct demarcation between the shed and unshed areas, looking like a map
2.1.67	spontaneous bleeding of the tongue	舌衄	bleeding from the tongue not due to traumatic injury

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.68	stiff tongue	強硬舌	a tongue that is stiff, moves sluggishly, and inhibits speech
2.1.69	limp wilting tongue	痿軟舌	a tongue that is flabby and cannot move easily
2.1.70	trembling tongue	顫動舌	a tongue that involuntarily trembles as it moves
2.1.71	deviated tongue	歪斜舌	a tongue that inclines to one side when extended
2.1.72	contracted tongue	短縮舌	a tongue that cannot be fully extended from the mouth and appears to be contracted
2.1.73	protruded agitated tongue	吐弄舌	a pathological condition in which the tongue hangs out of the mouth and moves in a circular motion whereby the tip is extended from and retracted back into the mouth, or licks the lips
2.1.74	protracted tongue	舌縱	a tongue that is habitually extended out of the mouth and cannot be retracted
2.1.75	dry tongue	舌乾	a tongue lacking moisture and rough to the touch
2.1.76	paralyzed tongue	麻痹舌	a numb tongue unable to move
2.1.77	motility of the tongue	舌態	the ability of the tongue to move spontaneously
2.1.78	form of the tongue	舌形	referring to the shape, luxuriance and witheredness, toughness and softness, thinness and swelling, spots, fissures, and dental indentations
2.1.79	tongue fur	舌苔	a layer of moss-like material covering the tongue, also called tongue coating
2.1.80	fur color	苔色	color of the tongue coating, white, yellow, gray or black, and in rare cases, green
2.1.81	texture of fur	苔質	characters of tongue coating, including thickness, moisture, sliminess, roughness etc.
2.1.82	white fur	白苔	tongue coating white in color
2.1.83	white sandy fur	白砂苔	white dry and thick tongue coating like a layer of sand
2.1.84	yellow fur	黃苔	tongue coating yellow in color

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.85	black fur	黑苔	tongue coating black in color, indicating either excessive cold or extreme heat in the interior
2.1.86	gray fur	灰苔	tongue coating gray in color with similar clinical significance as black fur
2.1.87	greenish fur	綠苔	tongue coating green in color
2.1.88	thin fur	薄苔	a tongue coating through which the underlying tongue surface is faintly visible
2.1.89	thick fur	厚苔	a tongue coating through which the underlying tongue surface is not visible
2.1.90	rotten-curdy fur	霉醬苔	a reddish thick tongue coating with black and yellow tinge
2.1.91	moist fur	潤苔	a moderately moistened tongue coating
2.1.92	dry fur	燥苔	a tongue coating that looks dry and feels dry to the touch
2.1.93	dry and cracked fur	燥裂苔	a tongue coating that lacks moisture and develops cracks
2.1.94	slippery fur	滑苔	a moist tongue coating with excessive fluid, feels slippery
2.1.95	slimy fur	膩苔	a dense, turbid, slimy tongue coating, sticking on the tongue, hard to wipe off, also known as greasy fur
2.1.96	sticky slimy fur	粘膩苔	a dense, turbid, slimy tongue coating, covered with a layer of thick turbid mucus
2.1.97	curdy fur	腐苔	a tongue coating consisting of coarse granules like bean dregs, easy to wipe off
2.1.98	peeling fur	剝苔; 舌苔脫落	complete or partial peeling of the tongue coating
2.1.99	exfoliated fur	類剝苔	peeling of the tongue coating leaving an unsmooth tongue surface as if covered with regeneration of coating granules
2.1.100	stained fur	染苔	a tongue coating that is stained, often by food or medicine

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.1.101	curled tongue	舌卷	a tongue formed into a curved shape and drawn back, inhibiting speech
2.1.102	curled tongue and retracted testicles	舌卷囊縮	the formation of the tongue into a curl and the withdrawing of the testicles into the body, seen in critical cases
2.1.103	sublingual collateral vessels	舌下絡脈	the vein under the tongue on either side of the frenulum
2.2.0	Listening and Smelling Examination	聞診	
2.2.1	listening and smelling examination	聞診	one of the four diagnostic examinations, specifically listening and smelling
2.2.2	listening to sounds	聞聲音	listening to the patient's voice, sounds of breathing, cough, vomiting, etc. for determining the cold, heat, deficiency or excess nature of disease as a diagnostic method
2.2.3	deep turbid voice	語聲重濁	a voice that is deep and muffled or otherwise unclear
2.2.4	faint low voice	語聲低微	a voice that is faint and low, scarcely audible
2.2.5	sluggish speech	語言謇澁	speech distorted by sluggish movement of the tongue
2.2.6	sluggish tongue	舌謇	a tongue lacking normal agility
2.2.7	loss of voice	失音	hoarseness of the voice or total failure of the voice
2.2.8	hoarseness	嘶啞	a low harsh or husky quality of the voice
2.2.9	muttering	鄭聲	unconscious murmuring haltingly with frequent repetitions
2.2.10	delirious speech	譫語	disordered speech in delirium
2.2.11	soliloquy	獨語	talking to oneself regardless of the presence of others
2.2.12	disordered speech	錯語	a type of dysphasia in which the patient frequently employs wrong words or uses words in incorrect and senseless combinations

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.2.13	sleep talking	嚙語	talking in one's sleep, the same as somniloquy
2.2.14	manic raving	狂言	mentally-deranged wild talk
2.2.15	sighing	太息	taking deep breaths with long, audible expiration
2.2.16	sneezing	噴嚏	sudden violent audible expulsion of breath when the nose is stimulated
2.2.17	yawning	呵欠	involuntary intake of breath through the open mouth, usually as a reaction to fatigue
2.2.18	panting	喘促	rapid and difficult breathing
2.2.19	wheezing dyspnea	喘鳴	difficult breathing with a whistling sound
2.2.20	phlegm rale	痰鳴	an abnormal breathing sound produced by the presence of phlegm in the airways
2.2.21	cough with dyspnea	咳逆; 咳逆上氣	cough with counterflow of qi in the airways, also known as cough with qi reflux
2.2.22	borborigmus	腸鳴	a rumbling sound made by the movement of gas in the intestines
2.2.23	splashing sound	振水音	sounds heard on succussion over a distended stomach
2.2.24	fecal qi	矢氣	gas expelled from the anus, the same as flatus
2.2.25	snoring	鼻鼾	rough and noisy breathing while sleeping
2.2.26	mouth odor	口氣	smell emitted from the mouth
2.2.27	fetid mouth odor	口臭	bad smell from the mouth, the same as halitosis
2.3.0	Inquiry	問診	
2.3.1	inquiry	問診	one of the four diagnostic examinations, a way of gaining information for diagnosis by asking the patient about the complaint and the history of the illness
2.3.2	inquiry about cold and heat	問寒熱	asking the patient about sensations of heat and cold

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.3	fever	發熱；身熱	elevation of the body temperature above the normal or subjective feeling of feverishness
2.3.4	aversion to cold	惡寒	sensation of cold which cannot be relieved by warmth, also known as chills
2.3.5	fear of cold	畏寒	sensation of cold which can be relieved by warmth, the same as intolerance of cold
2.3.6	aversion to wind	惡風	strong dislike of wind, also known as wind intolerance
2.3.7	aversion to heat	惡熱	strong dislike of heat, also known as heat intolerance
2.3.8	shivering	寒戰	violent chills with trembling
2.3.9	aversion to cold with fever	惡寒發熱； 發熱惡寒	simultaneous appearance of aversion to cold together with fever
2.3.10	fever without chills	但熱不寒	elevation of the body temperature with no feeling of cold
2.3.11	chills without fever	但寒不熱	feeling of cold with no fever
2.3.12	high fever	壯熱	persistent high fever with aversion to heat but no chills
2.3.13	tidal fever	潮熱	fever with periodic rise and fall of body temperature at fixed hours of the day like the morning and evening tides
2.3.14	mild fever	微熱	low-grade fever, mostly due to interior heat
2.3.15	late afternoon tidal fever	日晡潮熱	fever more marked at 3-5 p.m. daily, as if the tide comes regularly
2.3.16	afternoon tidal fever	午後潮熱	fever more marked in the afternoon
2.3.17	unsurfaced fever	身熱不揚	a persistent fever in which heat is not easily felt on the body surface and can be felt only by prolonged palpation, a sign of dampness-heat
2.3.18	fever worsening at night	身熱夜甚	fever more marked at night than at daytime

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.19	steaming bone	骨蒸	a subjective feeling of fever deep in the body, which appears to emanate from the bone or marrow
2.3.20	bone-steaming fever	骨蒸熱	fever which is felt to emanate from the bone or marrow
2.3.21	bone-steaming tidal fever	骨蒸潮熱	tidal fever in which the heat is felt to emanate from the bones
2.3.22	vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles	五心煩熱	feeling of heat in the palms of hands, soles of feet and in the chest, accompanied by uneasiness or restlessness, also called five center heat
2.3.23	heat vexation	煩熱	fever accompanied by uneasiness or restlessness, also known as irritable heat sensation
2.3.24	vexing heat in the extremities	手足煩熱	uncomfortable heat sensation in the extremities
2.3.25	heat in the palms and soles	手足心熱	subjective feverish feeling in the palms and soles
2.3.26	reversal cold of the extremities	手足厥冷； 厥冷；厥逆	pronounced cold in the extremities up to the knees and elbows or beyond, also the same as cold extremities
2.3.27	reversal of qi	厥	reverse flow of qi characterized by (1) sudden loss of consciousness, usually of short duration or (2) cold extremities up to the elbows and knees or beyond; also known as syncope or severe coldness
2.3.28	alternating chills and fever	寒熱往來； 往來寒熱； 寒熱交作	chills without fever and fever without chills occurring in alternating succession
2.3.29	external cold and interior heat	外寒內熱	a complex condition characterized by the simultaneous presence of cold in the exterior portion of the body and heat in the interior
2.3.30	internal cold and external heat	內寒外熱	a complex condition characterized by the simultaneous presence of heat in the exterior portion of the body and cold in the interior
2.3.31	inquiry about sweating	問汗	asking the patient about his/her condition of sweating
2.3.32	profuse sweating	多汗；大汗	excessive sweating not related to a hot environment, physical exertion or taking diaphoretics

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.33	spontaneous sweating	自汗	excessive sweating during the daytime with no apparent cause such as physical exertion, hot weather, thick clothing or medication
2.3.34	night sweating	盜汗	sweating during sleep that ceases on awakening
2.3.35	cold sweating	冷汗	profuse sweating accompanied by cold body and limbs
2.3.36	expiry sweating	絕汗	incessant profuse sweating of a patient in moribund state
2.3.37	shiver sweating	戰汗	sweating following shivering
2.3.38	sweating from the head	頭汗	excessive sweating on the head, face or neck
2.3.39	sweating from the palms and soles	手足心汗	excessive local sweating from the palms and soles
2.3.40	sweating from the hands and feet	手足汗	excessive local sweating from the hands and feet
2.3.41	sweating from the heart region	心汗	excessive sweating in the precordial region
2.3.42	sweating from the armpits	腋汗	excessive local sweating from the armpit
2.3.43	genital sweating	陰汗	localized sweating in the genital region
2.3.44	absence of sweating	無汗	abnormal deficiency or absence of sweating, the same as anhidrosis
2.3.45	leaking sweat	漏汗	incessant sweating
2.3.46	half-body sweating	半身汗出	sweating only on the upper or lower, right or left half of the body
2.3.47	half-body absence of sweating	半身無汗	no sweating on the upper or lower, right or left half of the body
2.3.48	oily sweat	油汗	sticky sweat like oil
2.3.49	great dripping sweat	大汗淋漓	abnormal profuse sweat with continuous dripping

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.50	lassitude of spirit	神疲	lack of mental vigor
2.3.51	lack of strength	乏力	lack of physical strength
2.3.52	somnolence	嗜睡；嗜臥	excessive sleepiness night and day
2.3.53	inability to sleep	失眠；不寐； 不得眠	inability to sleep or abnormal wakefulness, the same as insomnia
2.3.54	profuse dreaming	多夢	a condition in which sleep is frequently disturbed by dreams
2.3.55	sleep walking	夢遊	rising out of bed and walking about or performing other behavior during an apparent state of sleep
2.3.56	generalized pain	身痛	pain involving the whole body, the same as general body ache
2.3.57	headache	頭痛	pain in the head
2.3.58	stiffness of the neck	項強	muscular contraction and rigidity of the neck and the upper back with impaired movement
2.3.59	headache and painful stiff nape	頭項強痛	headache accompanied by rigidity and pain of the nape
2.3.60	heavy-headedness	頭重	feeling of heaviness in the head
2.3.61	supraorbital pain	眉稜骨痛	pain felt in the eyebrow bone
2.3.62	ear pain	耳痛	pain in the ear
2.3.63	chest pain	胸痛	pain in the middle or lateral part of the chest
2.3.64	breast pain	乳房疼痛	pain in the breast, usually accompanied by feeling of distension
2.3.65	hypochondriac pain	脇痛	pain in the area between the armpit and the lowest rib, unilateral or bilateral
2.3.66	stomach pain	脘痛；胃痛	the same as epigastric pain
2.3.67	abdominal pain	腹痛	pain in the region between the hypochondrium and pubic hairline

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.68	lower abdominal colic	疝	severe colicky pain in the lower abdomen usually accompanied by constipation and ischuria
2.3.69	back pain	背痛	pain in the upper part of the back
2.3.70	lumbago	腰痛	pain in the lumbar region
2.3.71	genital pain	陰器痛	pain in the genitals
2.3.72	heel pain	足跟痛	pain in either or both heels, worsened by standing and walking
2.3.73	distending pain	脹痛	pain accompanied by a distending sensation
2.3.74	stabbing pain	刺痛	a sharp pain as if caused by a stab
2.3.75	cold pain	冷痛	pain accompanied by a cold sensation and relieved by warmth
2.3.76	scorching pain	灼痛	pain accompanied by a burning sensation, also called burning pain
2.3.77	gripping pain	絞痛	an acute pain in the chest or abdomen, often caused by spasm, obstruction or twisting, also called spasm and pain
2.3.78	heavy pain	重痛	a pain accompanied by heaviness sensation
2.3.79	pulling pain	掣痛	pain in one part involving other parts
2.3.80	dull pain	隱痛	a continuous pain not stabbing in nature
2.3.81	empty pain	空痛	a pain accompanied by feeling of emptiness
2.3.82	scurrying pain	竄痛	pain that repeatedly changes location
2.3.83	oppressive pain	悶痛	a pain accompanied by feeling of oppression
2.3.84	aching pain	酸痛	a continuous dull pain as the sensation produced by prolonged physical exertion
2.3.85	wandering pain	遊走痛	pain in the joints of the extremities with repeated change of location
2.3.86	pain of unfixed location	痛無定處	a pain whose location is not fixed

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.87	fixed pain	固定痛	a pain that is fixed in location
2.3.88	severe pain	劇痛	intense intolerable pain
2.3.89	paroxysmal pain	陣發痛	pain recurring in paroxysms
2.3.90	persistent pain	持續痛	pain continuing without interruption
2.3.91	spasm	拘攣；攣急	stiffness and tension in the limbs inhibiting normal bending and stretching
2.3.92	contracture	拘急	abnormal tension of sinews that manifests in inhibited bending and stretching of the limb
2.3.93	contracture of the nape and neck	項背拘急	muscular spasm and rigidity of the nape and back
2.3.94	contracture of the limbs	四肢拘急	muscular contracture of the limbs with difficulty in bending and stretching, the same as acrocontracture
2.3.95	heavy head and light feet	頭重腳輕	the subjective sensation whereby the head is heavier than feet, accompanied by unsteady gait
2.3.96	heavy body	身重	the subjective heaviness sensation of the body with difficult movement
2.3.97	generalized itching	身癢	itching all over the body
2.3.98	numbness of the skin	肌膚麻木	local absence of normal sensation in the skin
2.3.99	insensitivity	不仁	no perception to touch, also known as numbness
2.3.100	muscular twitching and cramp	筋惕肉瞤	short spastic muscular contractions
2.3.101	loss of blood	失血；奪血	a general term for various kinds of profuse bleeding, the same as hemorrhage
2.3.102	hemoptysis	咯血；咳血	the expectoration of blood or blood-stained sputum
2.3.103	epistaxis	衄血	non-traumatic external bleeding, including bleeding from the ear, nose, gum, and tongue, and subcutaneous hemorrhage
2.3.104	spitting of blood	唾血	expulsion of blood with saliva

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.105	blood amassment	蓄血	static blood accumulating in the interior
2.3.106	itchy eyes	目癢	itching of the eye
2.3.107	eye pain	目痛	pain of the eye
2.3.108	dizzy vision	目眩	blurred vision accompanied by vertigo
2.3.109	blurred vision	目昏：視物模糊；視瞻昏渺	clouded and unclear vision
2.3.110	double vision	視歧	seeing one object as two
2.3.111	tinnitus	耳鳴	ringing in the ear
2.3.112	deafness	耳聾	loss, complete or partial, of the sense of hearing
2.3.113	nasal congestion	鼻塞；鼻塞	blockage of the nasal passage
2.3.114	loss of smell	鼻不聞香臭	partial or total inability to smell
2.3.115	dry mouth	口乾	lack of fluid in the mouth
2.3.116	thirst	口渴	feeling of dryness of the mouth with a desire to drink
2.3.117	torpid intake	納呆	loss of appetite with no desire for food with decreased intake, the same as poor appetite
2.3.118	swift digestion with rapid hungering	消穀善饑	excessive appetite with increased food intake and recurrence of hunger sensation shortly after eating
2.3.119	taste in the mouth	口味	the taste experienced when there is nothing in the mouth
2.3.120	bland taste in the mouth	口淡	diminished sensitivity of taste, with no pleasant flavor left by eating
2.3.121	bitter taste in the mouth	口苦	a subjective bitter sensation in the mouth
2.3.122	sweet taste in the mouth	口甜	a subjective sweet sensation in the mouth
2.3.123	sour taste in the mouth	口酸	a subjective sour sensation in the mouth

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.124	astringent taste in the mouth	口澀	a subjective feeling of astringency in the mouth
2.3.125	salty taste in the mouth	口鹹	a subjective salty sensation in the mouth
2.3.126	numbness in the mouth	口麻	numbness of the tongue with diminished taste sensitivity
2.3.127	sticky slimy sensation in the mouth	口粘膩	an unpleasant subjective sensation of stickiness in the mouth
2.3.128	discomfort in the throat	咽喉不利	a mild sensation of blockage in the throat that hampers swallowing
2.3.129	choke	噎	difficulty in swallowing
2.3.130	nausea	惡心	an unpleasant sensation with an urge to vomit
2.3.131	blockage when swallowing	吞食梗塞	difficulty or even inability to swallow
2.3.132	vomiting	嘔吐	forcible expulsion of the stomach contents through the mouth
2.3.133	vomiting in the evening of food eaten in the morning	朝食暮吐	a characteristic symptom of stomach reflux, usually occurring together with vomiting in the morning of food eaten in the evening
2.3.134	vomiting in the morning of food eaten in the evening	暮食朝吐	a characteristic symptom of stomach reflux, usually occurring together with vomiting in the evening of food eaten in the morning
2.3.135	dry retching	乾嘔	a noisy involuntary effort to vomit, but without bringing anything up from the stomach
2.3.136	retained food	宿食	food and drink accumulating in the stomach and intestines, undigested overnight
2.3.137	dietary predilection	嗜偏食	a liking for particular flavors or specific foods
2.3.138	retching	噦	making the sounds and movements of vomiting bringing up little or nothing from the stomach
2.3.139	belching	噯氣；噯氣	the casting up of gas from the stomach, accompanied by a prolonged sound

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.140	acid regurgitation	吞酸	swallowing of acid contents regurgitated from the stomach to the throat
2.3.141	palpitations	心悸	a subjective sensation of rapid and forceful beating of the heart
2.3.142	palpitations below the heart	心下悸	pulsations felt in the epigastric region below the xiphoid process
2.3.143	flusteredness	心慌	a nervous agitated state often with palpitations
2.3.144	vexation	心煩	a feeling of restlessness, heat, and oppression in the region of the heart
2.3.145	vexation of deficiency type	虛煩	vexation due to deficiency fire harassing the inner body
2.3.146	anguish in the heart	心中懊惱	heat vexation and oppression in the region of the heart and chest
2.3.147	distress below the heart	心下急	a feeling of distress associated with slight pain and fullness in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric distress
2.3.148	rigidity below the heart	心下堅； 心下鞭	abnormal stiffness in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric rigidity
2.3.149	tightness below the heart	心下支結	a feeling of obstruction associated with vexation and distension in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric tightness
2.3.150	stiffness and rigidity below the heart	心下痞堅； 心下痞鞭	a feeling of stiffness associated with local rigidity in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric stiffness and rigidity
2.3.151	fullness below the heart	心下滿	a feeling of fullness in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric fullness
2.3.152	stiffness	痞	a localized subjective feeling of fullness and blockage
2.3.153	stiffness and fullness	痞滿	unwell feeling of stiffness and fullness in the chest and upper abdomen
2.3.154	hardness and fullness	鞭滿；硬滿	feeling hard to touch with a subjective feeling of fullness

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.155	stiffness and rigidity in the chest	胸中痞硬； 胸下痞硬	feeling of stiffness and choking in the chest
2.3.156	oppression in the chest	胸悶	feeling of oppression in the chest
2.3.157	fullness in the chest and hypochondrium	胸脇滿； 胸脇苦滿	a bloated feeling in the chest and hypochondriac region
2.3.158	paraumbilical and hypochondriac aggregation	痞癖	elongated masses located at the side of the umbilicus or in the hypochondriac region that occur intermittently with sharp pain
2.3.159	abdominal fullness	腹滿	a subjective feeling of fullness in the abdomen without pronounced visible or palpable expansion
2.3.160	lower abdominal cramp	小腹急結	subjective sensation of distention and fullness of the lower abdomen, usually with difficult urination
2.3.161	lower abdominal contracture	小腹拘急； 小腹弦急	cramping sensation of the lower abdomen
2.3.162	lower abdominal fullness	小腹滿； 小腹硬滿	a subjective feeling of fullness in the lower abdomen
2.3.163	lower abdominal numbness	小腹不仁	loss of sensation in the lower abdominal region
2.3.164	palpitations above the umbilicus	臍上悸	rapid pulsations felt in the region above the umbilicus, the same as supra-umbilical aortic pulsation
2.3.165	palpitations beside the umbilicus	臍傍悸	rapid pulsations felt in the para-umbilical region, the same as para-umbilical aortic pulsation
2.3.166	palpitations below the umbilicus	臍下悸； 臍下悸動	rapid pulsations felt in the region below the umbilicus, the same as sub-umbilical aortic pulsation
2.3.167	contracture below the umbilicus	臍下拘急	muscular contracture in the region below the umbilicus
2.3.168	numbness below the umbilicus	臍下不仁	loss of sensation in the region below the umbilicus
2.3.169	diarrhea	泄瀉	abnormally frequent intestinal evacuations with soft or fluid stool
2.3.170	spontaneous diarrhea	大便自利	diarrhea not attributable to purgation

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.171	watery diarrhea	水瀉；注泄	serious diarrhea with a forceful discharge of watery stool, also the same as outpour diarrhea
2.3.172	ungratifying diarrhea	瀉下不爽	diarrhea that leaves the patient with a feeling that the bowels have not been satisfactorily emptied
2.3.173	undigested food in stool	完穀不化	a condition in which the stool contains undigested food
2.3.174	clear-food diarrhea	下利清穀； 完穀下利	frequent discharge of fluid stools containing undigested food, the same as undigested food diarrhea
2.3.175	abdominal urgency	裏急	(1) urge to defecate; (2) contraction of male genital organ
2.3.176	tenesmus	裏急後重	ineffectual and painful straining at stool
2.3.177	fifth-watch diarrhea	五更泄	diarrhea occurring daily at dawn, usually due to kidney yang deficiency, the same as early morning diarrhea
2.3.178	efflux diarrhea	滑泄	diarrhea with fecal incontinence
2.3.179	throughflux diarrhea	洞泄	diarrhea after eating, with undigested food in the stool
2.3.180	fulminant diarrhea	暴瀉	a pathological change characterized by sudden onset of diarrhea with profuse discharge
2.3.181	sloppy diarrhea	溏泄	diarrhea with soft, unformed stool
2.3.182	cold diarrhea	寒泄	diarrhea caused by attack of cold on the gastrointestinal tract
2.3.183	soggy diarrhea	濡泄	diarrhea due to damage to the spleen by exuberant dampness
2.3.184	swill diarrhea	飧泄	diarrhea marked by watery stool containing undigested food
2.3.185	sloppy stool	便溏	discharge of soft, unformed stools, the same as loose stool
2.3.186	stool sometimes sloppy and sometimes bound	溏結不調	stool that varies greatly in consistency

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.3.187	stool containing pus and blood	便膿血	passage of blood, pus and mucus together with stool, a symptom usually indicating dysentery
2.3.188	hard bound stool	大便硬結	hardened feces difficult to evacuate
2.3.189	dry stool	大便乾燥； 燥屎	feces lacking moisture content, difficult to evacuate
2.3.190	fecal incontinence	大便滑脫	inability to control defecation, with involuntary passage of feces
2.3.191	spontaneous urination	小便自利	spontaneous discharge of urine
2.3.192	difficult urination	小便難；癃閉	difficulty in urination or anuria
2.3.193	inhibited urination	小便不利	difficult discharge of urine, usually scanty in amount, the same as dysuria
2.3.194	urinary incontinence	小便失禁	failure of voluntary control of urination
2.3.195	frequent urination	小便頻數	increased frequency of urination
2.3.196	difficult painful urination	小便澀痛	uneasy and painful voiding of urine
2.3.197	turbid urine	小便渾濁； 尿濁	murky urine like rice water or grease
2.3.198	dribbling urination	小便淋漓	dribbling discharge of urine with inability to achieve a full stream
2.3.199	reddish yellow urine	小便黃赤	dark yellow or even reddish urine
2.3.200	enuresis	遺尿	involuntary discharge of urine during sleep
2.3.201	impotence	陽痿	lack of copulative power in the male
2.3.202	poor libido	性欲淡漠	lack of desire for sexual gratification, the same as low libido
2.3.203	dreaming of intercourse	夢交	dreaming of performing coitus
2.4.0	Palpation	切診	

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.1	palpation	切診	one of the four diagnostic examinations, including touching and pressing the body surface with the hand or fingers
2.4.2	pulse diagnosis	脈診	examination of the pulse for making diagnosis
2.4.3	take the pulse	切脈	examine the pulsation of blood vessels by feeling with the fingertips
2.4.4	pulse condition	脈象	the condition of the pulse felt on examination
2.4.5	disease correspondences of the pulse	脈象主病	a certain type of pulse indicates a particular disease
2.4.6	three positions and nine indicators	三部九候	(1) the upper, middle and lower arteries of the head, and the upper and lower limbs for pulse examination; (2) three sections of the radial artery at the wrist designated as inch, bar and cubit, each felt with light, moderate and heavy force to study the superficial, medium and deep pulses, respectively
2.4.7	wrist pulse	寸口；氣口	the pulsation of the radial artery felt at the wrist
2.4.8	wrist pulse-taking method	寸口診法	method of taking pulse at the radial artery of the wrist
2.4.9	cun/inch, guan/bar and chi/cubit	寸關尺	the three sections over the radial artery for feeling the pulse: The bar/guan is just central to the radial styloid at the wrist, where the tip of the physician's middle finger is placed, the inch/cun is next to it on the distal side where the tip of the physician's index finger rests, and the cubit/chi is on the proximal side where the tip of the physician's ring finger is placed
2.4.10	pulse on the back of the wrist	反關脈	an anatomical anomaly of the radial artery which makes the pulse beat felt on the back of the wrist
2.4.11	oblique-running pulse	斜飛脈	an anatomical anomaly of the radial artery which makes the pulse beat felt running outwards from the cubit/chi to the back of the hand
2.4.12	carotid pulsation	人迎	pulsation of the carotid artery, easily felt beside the laryngeal prominence
2.4.13	anterior tibial pulse	趺陽脈	the artery whose pulsation can be easily felt at the instep

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.14	normal pulse	平脈	the pulse of a normal person
2.4.15	morbid pulse	病脈	a pulse indicating pathological changes
2.4.16	stomach, vitality and root	胃，神，根	the three qualities for a normal pulse: A normal pulse is regular, smooth and harmonious, indicating the presence of stomach qi. It is supple and powerful, indicating the presence of vitality. It can be felt on deep palpation, indicating the presence of root
2.4.17	finger technique	指法	the finger manipulation used in pulse examination
2.4.18	pulse-taking with finger-tips	指目	a form of pulse examination using only the tips of the fingers in contact with the pulse
2.4.19	finger positioning	布指	positioning of fingers in pulse examination
2.4.20	lifting, pressing and searching	舉，按，尋	the three manipulations in pulse taking
2.4.21	pushing and searching	推尋	pushing and moving the finger to examine the pulse
2.4.22	pressing with one finger	單按	taking the pulse at each of the three sections individually
2.4.23	simultaneous palpation	總按	taking the pulse of the three sections with three fingers simultaneously
2.4.24	vessel qi	脈氣	qi flowing in the vessel
2.4.25	tranquil pulse	脈靜	pulse that becomes gentle, in the course of an illness, usually indicating improvement of the condition
2.4.26	agitated pulse	脈躁	pulse that becomes rapid and rushing, usually indicating deterioration of the condition
2.4.27	fulminating pulse	脈暴出	sudden throbbing of a hardly perceptible pulse, usually indicating a critical condition
2.4.28	pulse bereft of stomach qi	脈無胃氣	a pulse that has lost its usual rhythm, frequency and evenness, indicating lack of stomach qi
2.4.29	floating pulse	浮脈	a superficially located pulse which can be felt by light touch and grows faint on hard pressure

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.30	sunken pulse	沈脈	a deeply located pulse which can only be felt when pressing hard, also called deep pulse
2.4.31	slow pulse	遲脈	a pulse with less than four beats to one cycle of the physician's respiration, the same as bradycardia
2.4.32	rapid pulse	數脈	a pulse with more than five or six beats to one cycle of the physician's respiration, the same as tachycardia
2.4.33	surging pulse	洪脈	a pulse beating like dashing waves with forceful rising and gradual decline, also called flooding pulse
2.4.34	fine pulse	細脈	a pulse as thin as a silk thread, straight and soft, feeble yet always perceptible upon hard pressure, also called thin/thready pulse
2.4.35	vacuous pulse	虛脈	a general term for a feeble and void pulse
2.4.36	replete pulse	實脈	a general term for a pulse felt forceful at all the three sections, cun/inch, guan/bar and chi/cubit, also called forceful pulse
2.4.37	long pulse	長脈	a pulse with beats of long duration, exceeding cun/inch, guan/bar and chi/cubit sections
2.4.38	short pulse	短脈	a pulse with beats of short duration, only felt at guan/bar section
2.4.39	slippery pulse	滑脈	a pulse coming and going smoothly like beads rolling on a plate
2.4.40	rough pulse	澁脈	a pulse coming and going unsmoothly with small, fine, slow joggling tempo like scraping bamboo with a knife
2.4.41	string-like pulse	弦脈	a straight, long and taut pulse, like a musical string to the touch
2.4.42	tight pulse	緊脈	a pulse feeling like a tightly stretched cord
2.4.43	soggy pulse	濡脈	a thin and floating pulse which can be felt on light pressure, but growing faint upon hard pressure
2.4.44	moderate pulse	緩脈	a pulse with four beats to one cycle of the physician's respiration, even and harmonious in its form
2.4.45	relaxed pulse	緩脈	a pulse with decreased tension

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.46	faint pulse	微脈	a thready and soft pulse, scarcely perceptible
2.4.47	weak pulse	弱脈	a pulse that is deep, soft, thin and forceless
2.4.48	dissipated pulse	散脈	a pulse that feels diffusing and feeble upon a light touch and faint upon hard pressure
2.4.49	hollow pulse	芤脈	a floating, large, soft, and hollow pulse
2.4.50	drumskin pulse	革脈	a pulse felt hard and hollow as if touching the surface of a drum
2.4.51	firm pulse	牢脈	a broad, forceful and taut pulse, deeply seated and felt only by hard pressure
2.4.52	hidden pulse	伏脈	a pulse which can only be felt upon pressing to the bone, located deeper than sunken pulse or even totally hidden
2.4.53	stirred pulse	動脈	a quick, jerky pulse, like a bouncing pea, slippery, rapid and forceful
2.4.54	intermittent pulse	代脈	a moderate weak pulse, pausing at regular intervals
2.4.55	bound pulse	結脈	a moderate weak pulse, pausing at irregular intervals
2.4.56	skipping pulse	促脈	a rapid pulse with irregular intermittence
2.4.57	large pulse	大脈	a broad pulse with a bigger amplitude than normal
2.4.58	soft pulse	軟脈	a pulse felt softer than normal
2.4.59	racing pulse	疾脈	a pulse having more than seven beats per respiration
2.4.60	strange pulse	怪脈	special pulses signifying critical conditions
2.4.61	true visceral pulse	眞臟脈	a pulse condition indicating exhaustion of visceral qi
2.4.62	pecking sparrow pulse	雀啄脈	an urgent rapid pulse of irregular rhythm that stops and starts, like a sparrow pecking for food
2.4.63	seething cauldron pulse	釜沸脈	an extremely rapid floating pulse that is all outward movement and no inward movement, also known as bubble-rising pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.64	waving fish pulse	魚翔脈	a pulse that seems to be yet seems not to be present, like a fish waving in the water
2.4.65	darting shrimp pulse	蝦遊脈	a pulse that arrives almost imperceptibly and vanishes with a flick, like a darting shrimp
2.4.66	leaking roof pulse	屋漏脈	a pulse that comes at long and irregular intervals, like water dripping from a leaky roof
2.4.67	untwining rope pulse	解索脈	a pulse, not loose, not tight, with an irregular rhythm like an untwining rope
2.4.68	flicking stone pulse	彈石脈	a sunken replete pulse that feels like flicking a stone with a finger
2.4.69	upturned knife pulse	偃刀脈	a pulse like a knife with the blade pointing upward, i.e., fine, string-like, and extremely tight
2.4.70	spinning bean pulse	轉豆脈	a pulse that comes and goes away, elusive like a spinning bean
2.4.71	confused skipping pulse	麻促脈	a pulse extremely fine and faint, and urgent, skipping and chaotic
2.4.72	anomalous pulse	離經脈	a sudden change of pulse condition in a pregnant woman when she is about to give birth
2.4.73	body palpation	按診	examination of the body surface by touch with the hand or fingers
2.4.74	abdominal examination	腹診	examination of the chest and abdomen by touching and pressing in combination with other examinations for the purpose of determining a morbid condition in diagnosis
2.4.75	cubit skin examination	診尺膚	examination of the forearm with the hand for determining the texture of the skin, development of the muscles, and temperature of the extremities
2.4.76	apical impulse examination	診虛裏	examination of the apical pulsation for determining the condition of the stomach qi and ancestral qi
2.4.77	tapping examination	叩擊法	examination of bone fracture or bone diseases with the longitudinal force induced by knocking gently on the distal end of the limb

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.4.78	acupuncture point palpation	按腧穴	palpation of the body surface at the sites of acupuncture points which reflect the condition of the corresponding visceral organs
2.4.79	seven malign signs	七惡	seven signs indicating a poor prognosis of external lesions, i.e., poor heart, poor liver, poor spleen, poor lung, poor kidney, deteriorated viscera, and exhausted qi and blood
2.4.80	five benign signs	五善	five signs indicating a good prognosis of external lesions, i.e., good heart, good liver, good spleen, good lung and good kidney
2.5.0	Eight Principle Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	八綱辨證	
2.5.1	Yin-Yang Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	陰陽辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to yin-yang theory, e.g., interior, cold, and deficiency patterns/syndromes pertaining to yin, and exterior, heat, and excess patterns/syndromes pertaining to yang
2.5.2	yin pattern/syndrome	陰證	a collective term for interior, cold and deficiency patterns/syndromes with inhibitory, hypofunctional, quiescent or dimmed manifestations, or inward and downward symptoms, as well as morbid conditions caused by pathogenic factors of yin nature
2.5.3	yang pattern/syndrome	陽證	a collective term for exterior, heat and excess patterns/syndromes with excitatory, hyperfunctional, restless or bright manifestations, or outward and upward symptoms, as well as morbid conditions caused by pathogenic factors of yang nature
2.5.4	pattern/syndrome of yin-yang disharmony	陰陽失調證	any pattern/syndrome in which yin and yang are out of balance
2.5.5	yang damage pattern/syndrome	傷陽證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by damage to yang resulting from various causes such as exuberance of yin-cold in the interior, excessive use of cold-natured medicinals, excessive sweating or diarrhea, usually manifested as fear of cold, pale complexion, spontaneous sweating, cold extremities and faint or even hardly perceptible pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.6	yin damage pattern/ syndrome	傷陰證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by damage to yin, often resulting from invasion of heat pathogen or in advanced cases of febrile disease with impairment of the liver and kidney yin, usually manifested as low fever, heat sensation in the palms and soles, emaciation, thirst, malar flush, dry and scarlet red tongue, and fine, feeble and rapid pulse
2.5.7	yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	陰虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yin fluid and essence, incapable of restraining yang and usually manifested by emaciation, dizziness, tinnitus, dryness of the mouth and throat, constipation, dark-colored urine, afternoon fever, malar flush, night sweats, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse; in Kampo medicine, it is understood as “yin pattern in combination with deficiency pattern”
2.5.8	yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	陽虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yang qi with reduction in its warming and activating power, manifested by intolerance of cold, cold extremities, spontaneous sweating, loose bowel, long voidings of clear urine, pale tongue, and deep and weak pulse; in Kampo medicine, it is understood as “yang pattern in combination with excess pattern”
2.5.9	pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of yin and yang	陰陽兩虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of both yin fluid and yang qi of the bowels and viscera, usually manifested as dizziness, tinnitus, lassitude, aversion to cold with cold limbs or vexing heat in the chest, palms or soles, palpitations, lumbar soreness, pale and dry tongue, and rapid weak pulse
2.5.10	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with internal heat	陰虛內熱證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yin fluid with endogenous heat, usually manifested by persistent low fever or afternoon tidal fever, heat sensation in the chest, palms and soles, malar flush, night sweats, dry mouth with desire for drink, short voidings of dark-colored urine, constipation, reddened tongue lacking moisture and rapid fine pulse
2.5.11	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with effulgent fire	陰虛火旺證	a pattern/syndrome of effulgent fire arising from yin fluid deficiency, manifested by vexation, insomnia, dry throat and mouth, night sweating, nocturnal emission flushed cheeks, bone-steaming tidal fever, dry and bound stool, short voidings of yellow urine, or hemoptysis, epistaxis, reddened tongue lacking moisture, or ulceration on the tongue and rapid fine pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.12	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with yang hyperactivity	陰虛陽亢證	a pattern/syndrome of yin fluid deficiency with yang hyperactivity, marked by tidal fever, night sweating, flushed cheeks, dizziness, blurred vision, agitation, insomnia, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.5.13	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with fluid depletion	陰虛津虧證	a pattern/syndrome of yin fluid deficiency, manifested by dire thirst, dry skin, sunken eyes, short voidings of yellow urine, dry and bound stool, vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, emaciation, night sweats, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.5.14	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with water retention	陰虛水停證	a pattern/syndrome of yin fluid deficiency complicated with retention of water, manifested by localized edema of limbs, reduced passage of urine, dry throat and mouth, vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, constipation, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.5.15	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency and dampness-heat	陰虛濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome of yin-fluid deficiency complicated with dampness-heat obstruction, manifested by low fever, night sweating, flushed cheeks in the afternoon, vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, bitter and greasy taste in the mouth, cumbersome limbs, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating, and rapid fine pulse
2.5.16	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency and blood stasis	陰虛血瘀證	a pattern/syndrome of yin fluid deficiency complicated with blood stasis, manifested by vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, dry throat and mouth, low fever in the afternoon, local stabbing pain, expectoration of dark blood with clots, purple spots on the tongue, and fine rough (choppy) pulse
2.5.17	pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with qi stagnation	陽虛氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome of qi stagnation arising from yang deficiency, manifested by aversion to cold, cold limbs, pale complexion, painful distention in the chest, epigastrium and abdomen, borborygmi, sloppy stools, long voidings of clear urine, pale and enlarged tongue, and slow, sunken and weak pulse
2.5.18	pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with dampness obstruction	陽虛濕阻證	a pattern/syndrome of dampness obstruction attributed to insufficient yang qi with disordered qi transformation, manifested by aversion to cold, cumbersome limbs, edema, inhibited urine, sloppy stool, reduced food intake and abdominal distension,

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			pale and plump tongue with white slimy or slippery coating, and slow, sunken and weak pulse
2.5.19	pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with water flood	陽虛水泛證	a pattern/syndrome arising when yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney leads to retention of water in the body, usually manifested by generalized edema, inhibited urine, palpitation, dyspnea, aversion to cold with cold limbs, abdominal distension, soggy diarrhea, pale and plump tongue with white slippery coating, and slow, sunken and weak pulse
2.5.20	pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with congealing phlegm	陽虛痰凝證	a pattern/syndrome of insufficient yang qi complicated with congealing phlegm, manifested by aversion to cold, cold limbs, dizziness, somnolence, oppression in the chest with profuse phlegm, obesity, or goiter, swollen inflamed lymph glands, breast nodules, swollen and stiff joints, slimy tongue coating and slippery pulse
2.5.21	pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with congealing cold	陽虛寒凝證	a pattern/syndrome marked by aversion to cold, cold limbs, pain in the chest, epigastrium, abdomen, waist and knees relieved by warmth, and in women, late periods, painful periods, menstrual discharge of dark blood and clots, pale and enlarged tongue with white slippery coating, and slow sunken pulse
2.5.22	yin-blood depletion pattern/syndrome	陰血虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by emaciation, sallow complexion, low fever, flushed cheeks, numb limbs, dizziness, blurred vision, palpitations, insomnia, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.5.23	pattern/syndrome of yin exuberance with yang debilitation	陰盛陽衰證	a pattern/syndrome arising when exuberant yin cold leads to debilitation of yang qi, manifested by aversion to cold, cold limbs, long voidings of clear urine, diarrhea, or cold pain with preference for warmth, pale tongue with white coating, and slow sunken pulse
2.5.24	pattern/syndrome of exuberant yin repelling yang	陰盛格陽證	a pattern/syndrome in which exuberant internal cold forces yang qi to the outer body, giving rise to signs of true internal cold and false external heat
2.5.25	pattern/syndrome of detriment to yin affecting yang	陰損及陽證	a pattern/syndrome arising when long-term depletion of yin fluid causes damage to yang, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang, in which yin deficiency is primary while yang deficiency secondary

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.26	pattern/syndrome of detriment to yang affecting yin	陽損及陰證	a pattern/syndrome arising when long-term debilitation of yang qi causes damage to yin, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang, in which yang deficiency is primary while yin deficiency secondary
2.5.27	pattern/syndrome of yin exhaustion and yang collapse	陰竭陽脫證	a critical pattern/syndrome of yin-essence exhaustion followed by yang collapse
2.5.28	pattern/syndrome of clear yang failing to ascend	清陽不升證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, blurred vision, tinnitus and impaired hearing, aversion to cold with lack of warmth in the extremities, lassitude and lack of strength, anorexia, sloppy stool, pale tongue with white coating, and relaxed weak pulse
2.5.29	upcast yang pattern/syndrome	戴陽證	a critical pattern/syndrome of true lower body cold and false upper body heat characterized by pale complexion with tidal reddening of the cheeks
2.5.30	yin collapse pattern/syndrome	亡陰證	a serious pattern/syndrome resulting from exhaustion of yin fluid, manifested by thirst and craving for cold drink, flushed face, restlessness, dry tongue and rapid fine pulse
2.5.31	yang collapse pattern/syndrome	亡陽證; 陽脫證	a serious pattern/syndrome resulting from exhaustion of yang qi, manifested by pallor, dripping of cold sweats, cold limbs, pale and moistened tongue, and hardly perceptible pulse
2.5.32	Exterior-Interior Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	表裏辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the location of the disease, in the exterior or in the interior, superficially seated or deeply seated
2.5.33	exterior pattern/syndrome	表證	a general term for patterns/syndromes that occur chiefly at the early stage of external contractions affecting the exterior part of the body, characterized by a sudden onset, aversion to cold or to wind, fever, headache, generalized pain, thin tongue coating, and floating pulse
2.5.34	interior pattern/syndrome	裏證	a general term for patterns/syndromes that indicate the existence of disease in the interior of the body such as bowels and viscera, qi and blood, or bone marrow

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.35	half-exterior half-interior pattern/syndrome	半表半裏證	a variety of patterns/syndromes due to affliction located between the exterior and interior of the body, marked by alternate fever and chills, fullness and choking feeling in the chest and costal region, bitter taste in the mouth, dry throat, nausea and loss of appetite, and string-like pulse
2.5.36	exterior cold pattern/syndrome	表寒證；風寒束表證	a pattern/syndrome arising when wind-cold invades the exterior and characterized by pronounced aversion to cold with mild fever, headache, generalized pain, absence of sweating, thin white tongue coating, and tight floating pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of wind-cold fettering the exterior
2.5.37	exterior heat pattern/syndrome	表熱證；風熱犯表證；風熱襲表證	a pattern/syndrome arising when wind-heat invades the exterior and characterized by marked fever with mild aversion to wind and cold, headache, sore throat, sweating and thirst, thin yellow tongue coating and rapid floating pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the exterior
2.5.38	exterior deficiency pattern/syndrome	表虛證	a type of exterior pattern/syndrome resulting from attack by wind while the body's resistance is lowered, manifested by intolerance of wind, persistent sweating, fever, headache, thin white tongue coating, and floating relaxed pulse
2.5.39	exterior excess pattern/syndrome	表實證	an exterior pattern/syndrome with fever, aversion to cold, headache and generalized aching, forceful or tight floating pulse and absence of sweating, showing the external part of the body being attacked by cold, yet the patient's defense qi is not damaged
2.5.40	pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness assailing the exterior	風濕襲表證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from wind-dampness invading the exterior part of the body, manifested by heavy cumbersome limbs, dizziness with heavy head, aversion to cold, fever not relieved after sweating, oppression in the chest, no desire to drink, white slimy tongue coating and soggy relaxed pulse
2.5.41	pattern/syndrome of summerheat-dampness assailing the exterior	暑濕襲表證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from summerheat-dampness attacking the exterior part of the body, manifested by fever, slight aversion to wind and cold, fatigued and cumbersome body, heavy head as if swathed, grimy face, thirst and vexation, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid soggy pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.42	defense-exterior insecurity pattern/syndrome	衛表不固證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fear of cold, spontaneous sweating, shortness of breath, lack of strength, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.5.43	interior cold pattern/syndrome	裏寒證	a type of interior pattern/syndrome attributable to deficiency of yang qi of bowels and viscera or external cold directly attacking on or passing to the interior, mainly manifested by intolerance of cold with cold limbs, somber white complexion, absence of thirst or liking for hot drinks, long voidings of clear urine, pale tongue with white moistened coating and slow sunken pulse
2.5.44	interior heat pattern/syndrome	裏熱證	a type of interior pattern/syndrome with exuberant heat arising when external pathogens enter the internal organs and transform into heat, mainly manifested by fever with sweating, thirst with intake of fluid, vexation, bitter taste in the mouth, short voiding of reddish urine, a reddened tongue with yellow coating, and rapid surging or rapid string-like pulse
2.5.45	interior deficiency pattern/syndrome	裏虛證	a type of interior pattern/syndrome attributable to deficiency of qi, blood, yin, and yang of the internal organs with diminished function, usually manifested by shortage of qi, reluctance to speak, listlessness, lassitude, palpitations, dizziness, tinnitus, decreased food intake, aching lumbus and limp knees, pale tender-soft tongue and weak pulse
2.5.46	interior excess pattern/syndrome	裏實證	(1) any pattern/syndrome resulting from external pathogen transforming into heat and entering the interior to bind in the stomach and intestines, manifested by high fever, vexing thirst, abdominal pain and constipation; (2) a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by retention of phlegm, blood stasis, food stagnation or accumulation of parasitic worms
2.5.47	pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior cold	表裏俱寒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when cold pathogen attacks the exterior and interior of the body simultaneously, usually manifested by aversion to cold with cold limbs, headache and generalized pain, cold pain in the abdomen, vomiting and diarrhea, cough and dyspnea with whitish expectoration, pale tongue with white coating and tight pulse, also called the exterior-interior cold pattern/syndrome

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.48	pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior heat	表裏俱熱證	a heat pattern/syndrome involving both the exterior and the interior, caused either by heat pathogen entering the interior before the exterior pattern/syndrome is resolved or by superimposition of an exterior pattern/syndrome of newly contracted warm disease on a pre-existing interior pattern/syndrome, usually manifested by fever, aversion to wind, headache, flushed face, thirst, vexation or even delirium, constipation, dark-colored urine, reddened tongue with dry yellow coating and rapid forceful floating pulse, also called the exterior-interior heat pattern/syndrome
2.5.49	pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior excess	表裏俱實證	an excess pattern/syndrome involving both the exterior and interior, usually manifested by fever without sweating, headache with stiff painful nape, irritability, abdominal distension and constipation
2.5.50	pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior deficiency	表裏俱虛證	a deficiency pattern/syndrome involving both the exterior and the interior, usually manifested by sweating with aversion to wind, shortage of qi and reluctance to speak, decreased food intake, loose bowels, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.5.51	pattern/syndrome of exterior cold and interior heat	表寒裏熱證; 外寒裏熱證	(1) a pattern/syndrome in which cold pathogen fetters the exterior and depressed heat stays in the interior, mainly manifested by fever without sweat and with aversion to cold, headache and generalized pain, vexation, shortness of breath, fullness of the chest, thirst, reddened tongue with mixed yellow and white coating, and floating tight pulse; (2) a pattern/syndrome marked by true heat in the interior with external pseudo-cold manifestations
2.5.52	pattern/syndrome of exterior heat and interior cold	表熱裏寒證	a pattern/syndrome with pre-existing insufficient yang qi complicated by contraction of wind-heat, manifested by fever, slight aversion to cold, headache and generalized pain, cough, loose bowels, pale and flabby tongue with thin yellow coating and rapid floating pulse
2.5.53	pattern/syndrome of exterior deficiency and interior excess	表虛裏實證	a pattern/syndrome in which insufficiency of defense is complicated by pathogens bound in the interior, manifested by symptoms of exterior deficiency such as aversion to wind and spontaneous sweating, together with symptoms of interior excess such as abdominal pain, constipation and yellow thick tongue coating

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.54	pattern/syndrome of exterior excess and interior deficiency	表實裏虛證	a pattern/syndrome in which exterior excess and interior deficiency occurring simultaneously, manifested by aversion to cold, fever with absence of sweating, listlessness and lassitude, shortness of breath, anorexia, palpitations, white tongue coating and floating pulse
2.5.55	pattern/syndrome of internal block and external collapse	內閉外脫證	a pattern/syndrome in which excess pathogens are trapped in the interior (as manifested by fever, cough and dyspnea, or by abdominal pain with tenesmus, or by constipation and urinary block, or by colicky pain in the chest, epigastrium and abdomen) while the healthy qi collapses (as manifested by pallor, reversal cold of limbs, cold dripping sweats, feeble breathing and scarcely perceptible pulse)
2.5.56	Cold-Heat Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	寒熱辨證	a method of pattern identification/syndrome differentiation in which symptoms are categorized as heat or cold, thereby determining the nature of the disease
2.5.57	cold pattern/syndrome	寒證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused either by external cold pathogen or by insufficient yang within the body, commonly manifested by aversion to cold or fear of cold, cold pain with preference for heat, absence of thirst, thin clear sputum and nasal mucus, long voidings of clear urine, loose bowels, white facial complexion, pale tongue with white coating, and tight or slow pulse
2.5.58	heat pattern/syndrome	熱證	a general term for patterns/syndromes resulting either from attack of external heat or from prevalence of yang qi, usually manifested by fever, aversion to heat and liking for cold, thirst, flushed face, irritability and vexation, thick yellow sputum and nasal mucus, short voidings of dark-colored urine, constipation, reddened tongue with yellow coating, and rapid pulse
2.5.59	cold-heat complex pattern/syndrome	寒熱錯雜證	any pattern/syndrome characterized by complicated heat and cold conditions such as heat in the upper part with cold in the lower part of the body, cold in the upper part with heat in lower part of the body, heat in the exterior and cold in the interior of the body, or cold in the exterior and heat in the interior of the body

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.60	upper cold and lower heat pattern/syndrome	上寒下熱證	any pattern/syndrome with cold symptoms in the upper part of the body and heat symptoms in the lower
2.5.61	upper heat and lower cold pattern/syndrome	上熱下寒證	any pattern/syndrome with heat symptoms in the upper part of the body and cold symptoms in the lower
2.5.62	true cold with false heat pattern/syndrome	真寒假熱證	a pattern/syndrome arising when exuberant internal cold forces yang qi to outer body, manifested by subjective feverishness, flushing face, agitation, thirst and sore throat occurring simultaneously with coolness of the chest and abdomen to touch, reversal cold of the limbs, long voidings of clear urine, diarrhea with undigested food, and pale tongue with white coating and sunken string-like pulse
2.5.63	true heat with false cold pattern/syndrome	真熱假寒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when exuberant pathogenic heat entraps yang qi in the interior, manifested by cold limbs, aversion to cold or even shivering, impaired consciousness, dark purple complexion, but on the other hand, high fever with the chest and abdomen hot to touch and hot breath exhaled from the mouth and nose, fetid mouth odor, coarse breathing, strong thirst, short voidings of yellow urine, reddened tongue with yellow dry coating and rapid string-like pulse
2.5.64	heat block pattern/syndrome	熱閉證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when a heat pathogen congests in the bowels, viscera and meridians/channels, blocking normal movement out of the body
2.5.65	pattern/syndrome of extreme heat engendering wind	熱極生風證; 熱極動風證	a liver wind pattern/syndrome attributed to exuberant pathogenic heat, and marked by high fever with restlessness, convulsions, opisthotonos, and impaired consciousness
2.5.66	Deficiency-Excess Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	虛實辨證	categorization of pattern identification/syndrome differentiation in which the strength of the healthy qi and pathogenic qi are compared, thereby determining the nature of the disease
2.5.67	deficiency pattern/syndrome	虛證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by deficiency of the healthy qi (including deficiency of yin, yang, qi and blood)

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.5.68	excess pattern/ syndrome	實證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by external pathogenic factors such as six excesses, pestilential pathogens, worms and toxins, or by accumulated pathological products due to dysfunction of internal organs, such as phlegm, retained fluid, water, dampness, pus, static blood and retained food
2.5.69	deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	虛寒證	a cold pattern/syndrome arising from deficiency of yang qi, the same as the yang deficiency pattern/syndrome
2.5.70	deficiency heat pattern/syndrome	虛熱證	a heat pattern/syndrome caused by deficiency of yin, qi, blood or fluids
2.5.71	deficiency-excess complex pattern/ syndrome	虛實挾雜證	a pattern/syndrome arising from struggle between the healthy and pathogenic qi while excessive pathogens and insufficient healthy qi exist simultaneously
2.5.72	upper exuberance and lower deficiency pattern/syndrome	上盛下虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by yin deficiency of the liver and kidney in the lower part of the body together with accumulation of qi, static blood or phlegm in the upper part of the body, the same as the excess above and deficiency below pattern/syndrome
2.5.73	true deficiency with false excess pattern/ syndrome	真虛假實證	any pattern/syndrome deficient in nature showing some deceptive symptoms of excess
2.5.74	true excess with false deficiency pattern/ syndrome	真實假虛證	any pattern/syndrome excess in nature showing some deceptive symptoms of deficiency
2.5.75	essential qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	精氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome arising from deficiency of essential qi, marked by emaciation, dizziness, tinnitus, short and slight of stature, slow in movements, low intelligence, or by infertility, sterility, impotence and premature ejaculation
2.6.0	Disease Cause Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	病因辨證	

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.1	disease cause pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	病因辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to pathological conditions attributable to different kinds of causal factors for making diagnosis
2.6.2	external wind pattern/syndrome	外風證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by external wind pathogen alone or together with other pathogenic factors such as dampness, heat, or pestilent toxin
2.6.3	internal wind pattern/syndrome	內風證	any pattern/syndrome of internal wind stirring in the interior, manifested by dizziness and blurred vision, numbness of the limbs, tremors, convulsions or pruritus
2.6.4	wind-stroke block pattern/syndrome	中風閉證	a pattern/syndrome of wind-stroke characterized by blockage of the orifices manifested by sudden loss of consciousness, hemiplegia, clenched jaw and clenched hands
2.6.5	wind-stroke collapse pattern/syndrome	中風脫證	a pattern/syndrome of wind-stroke characterized by desertion of yang qi, manifested by sudden loss of consciousness, closed eyes with opened mouth, faint breathing, flaccid paralysis of the limbs, profuse cold sweats, and incontinence of urine and feces
2.6.6	excess heat pattern/syndrome	實熱證	a pattern/syndrome caused by excessive pathogenic heat while the body resistance is still sufficient with intense reaction, marked by high fever with restlessness, constipation, large or slippery rapid pulse
2.6.7	excess cold pattern/syndrome	實寒證	any pattern/syndrome due to contraction of yin cold
2.6.8	pattern/syndrome of cold in the middle	中寒證	a deficiency-cold pattern/syndrome of the middle energizer arising from insufficiency of yang qi and impaired splenic transportation and transformation, manifested by abdominal pain that can be relieved by warmth and pressure, cold limbs, reduced food intake, loose stool, etc.
2.6.9	summerheat pattern/syndrome	暑證	any pattern/syndrome resulting from contraction of summerheat and marked by high fever with sweating, thirst, shortness of breath, lassitude, cumbersome limbs, short voidings of dark-colored urine, reddened tongue and rapid vacuous pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.10	dampness pattern/ syndrome	濕證	any pattern/syndrome resulting from contraction of external dampness or from dampness arising within, marked by physical fatigue, heavy cumbersome limbs, heavy-headedness, poor appetite, abdominal distention, sloppy stool, slippery and slimy tongue coating, and soggy relaxed pulse
2.6.11	external dryness pattern/syndrome	外燥證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by climatic dryness, commonly manifested by dry skin, dry nose, mouth and throat or dry cough
2.6.12	internal dryness pattern/syndrome	內燥證	any pattern/syndrome of dryness due to consumption of body fluids, manifested by emaciation, withered skin, dry throat, parched lips, thirst, oliguria, constipation, furless reddened tongue and rapid fine pulse
2.6.13	cool dryness pattern/ syndrome	涼燥證	pattern/syndrome due to coolness and dryness in autumn, marked by headache, more chills than fever, absence of sweating, dryness of the nasal cavity and lips, cough with scanty expectoration, thin and dry whitish tongue fur, and floating and tense pulse
2.6.14	warm dryness pattern/syndrome	溫燥證	pattern/syndrome caused by exopathic warmth and dryness in autumn, marked by fever with slight aversion to wind and cold, dryness of the nasal cavity and lips, thirst, dry cough with scanty expectoration, fidgetiness, thin yellowish tongue fur, and rapid and floating pulse
2.6.15	pattern/syndrome of dryness affecting the clear orifices	燥乾清竅證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dry nose, mouth and eyes with lack of nasal mucus, saliva and tears
2.6.16	dryness bind pattern/ syndrome	燥結證	a pattern/syndrome marked by constipation due to deficiency of fluids in the gastrointestinal tract
2.6.17	excess fire pattern/ syndrome	實火證	a pattern/syndrome caused by intense pathogenic fire, most commonly affecting the stomach and intestines or the liver and gallbladder, and characterized by high fever, headache, red eyes, bitter taste in the mouth, dry mouth and thirst for cold drink
2.6.18	fire-heat pattern/ syndrome	火熱證	any pattern/syndrome of heat and fire, either contracted externally or engendered internally

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.19	pattern/syndrome of deficiency fire flaming upward	虛火上炎證	a pattern/syndrome arising when insufficient yin fails to inhibit fire, marked by dry and sore throat, vexation, insomnia, dizziness, tinnitus, forgetfulness, heat in the palms and soles, night sweating, or red eyes, ulcers of the tongue or mouth, reddened tender-soft tongue and rapid fine pulse
2.6.20	pus pattern/syndrome	膿證	a pattern/syndrome marked by purulent discharge from an ulcerative lesion with stinking fetid smell, accompanied by fever, thirst, curdy and slimy tongue coating, and rapid slippery pulse
2.6.21	food accumulation pattern/syndrome	食積證	a pattern/syndrome marked by epigastric and abdominal distention, vomiting of sour matter, anorexia, offensive odor of stools, curdy and slimy tongue coating, the same as the food stagnation pattern/syndrome
2.6.22	worm accumulation pattern/syndrome	蟲積證	a general term for patterns/syndromes caused by intestinal accumulation of parasitic worms, often marked by abdominal distention or pain, emaciation, lack of strength and sallow complexion
2.6.23	wind-phlegm pattern/syndrome	風痰證	a pattern/syndrome attributable either to external wind with phlegm or to liver wind with phlegm, marked by expectoration of foamy sputum, fullness and oppression in the chest, dizziness, and distending pain of the head and eyes, or marked by phlegmatic sounds in the throat, numbness of limbs, and even loss of consciousness with aphasia, and deviated eye and mouth
2.6.24	cold-phlegm pattern/syndrome	寒痰證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cough with whitish expectoration, dyspnea or wheezing, aversion to cold with cold limbs, white slimy tongue coating, and wiry slippery or tense pulse
2.6.25	heat-phlegm pattern/syndrome	熱痰證	a pattern/syndrome arising when turbid phlegm combined with pathogenic heat accumulates in the lung and harasses the heart, marked by cough with yellowish expectoration, vexing stuffiness in the chest, fever, thirst, palpitations, insomnia, short voidings of deep-colored urine, reddened tongue with yellow greasy slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.26	dryness-phlegm pattern/syndrome	燥痰證	a pattern/syndrome due to accumulation of dryness-heat and phlegm-turbidity in the lung, marked by cough with scanty sticky sputum difficult to spit out, or blood streaked sputum, chest pain with oppression feeling, dry nose and mouth, tongue with scanty moisture but slimy coating, and thin choppy pulse
2.6.27	blood stasis-phlegm pattern/syndrome	瘀痰證	a pattern/syndrome arising when turbid phlegm combined with static blood obstructs the qi movement, marked by formation of masses with local stabbing pain, or numbness and wilting of the limb, oppression in the chest with expectoration of profuse sputum or dark bloody sputum, purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, slimy coating and string-like rough pulse
2.6.28	purulent phlegm pattern/syndrome	膿痰證	a pattern/syndrome marked by expectoration of pus or purulent sputum
2.6.29	dampness-phlegm pattern/syndrome	濕痰證	a pattern/syndrome due to accumulation of dampness phlegm in the lung, marked by cough with profuse expectoration, heaviness sensation of the limbs, feeling of stuffiness in the chest, reduced food intake, stickiness of the mouth, white slimy tongue coating and slippery pulse
2.6.30	pattern/syndrome of binding of phlegm and qi	痰氣互結證	a pattern/syndrome marked by depressed mood, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, a sensation of a foreign body in the throat which can be neither swallowed nor ejected, fullness and oppression in the chest, and profuse sputum; white and slimy tongue coating, and slippery string-like pulse
2.6.31	pattern/syndrome of internal harassment of phlegm-heat	痰熱內擾證	a pattern/syndrome arising when phlegm-heat disturbs the spirit and impedes the qi movement, marked by cough with yellow thick expectoration, dyspnea, fever, thirst, vexation, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleeping, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.6.32	pattern/syndrome of internal block of phlegm-heat	痰熱內閉證	a pattern/syndrome arising when phlegm-heat in the interior obstructs and blocks the heart-spirit, manifested by impaired consciousness, delirium or mania associated with fullness, oppression and scorching pain in the chest, cough, dyspnea and expectoration of yellow thick sputum, fever, and thirst, or in some cases, sudden onset of unconsciousness with whizzing in the throat, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and slippery pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.33	pattern/syndrome of phlegm- heat stirring wind	痰熱動風證	a pattern/syndrome marked by convulsions or vertigo associated with fullness and oppression in the chest, cough, dyspnea and expectoration of yellow thick sputum, fever, thirst, or nausea and vomiting, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.6.34	pattern/syndrome of lingering phlegm nodule	痰核留結證	a pattern/syndrome marked by lumps below the skin particularly of the neck, which are movable, round, firm and slippery under the finger, without redness, hotness or pain
2.6.35	pattern/syndrome of blood stasis with wind-dryness	血瘀風燥證	a pattern/syndrome arising when internally retained static blood gives rise to dryness and wind, and manifested by encrusted skin, desquamation and itching, associated with vertigo, numbness of the limb, purplish tongue or appearance of purple spots on the tongue, and fine choppy pulse
2.6.36	pattern/syndrome of blood stasis with water retention	血瘀水停證	a pattern/syndrome marked by formation of mass in the abdomen with stabbing pain, enlarged and distended abdomen, inhibited urination, purplish tongue or appearance of purple spots on the tongue, and fine choppy pulse
2.6.37	pattern/syndrome of internal obstruction of cold-dampness	寒濕內阻證	a pattern/syndrome marked by heaviness feeling of the head and body, joint pain with inhibited bending and stretching, absence of sweat, or edema of the face and limbs, loose stools, and dysuria; white and moistened tongue coating and slippery pulse
2.6.38	pattern/syndrome of congealing cold with blood stasis	寒凝血瘀證	a pattern/syndrome arising when pathogenic cold obstructs qi movement and blood flow, manifested by pain aggravated by cold and alleviated by warmth, cold and cyanotic limbs, and delayed menstruation, painful periods, menstrual discharge of dark purple blood with clots, dark purple tongue with white coating, and sunken, slow and choppy pulse
2.6.39	blood cold pattern/syndrome	血寒證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when congealing cold and qi stagnation inhibit the movement of blood and give rise to blood stasis, commonly manifested by cold pain of the extremities with dark purple skin or cramps in the lesser abdomen that are relieved by warmth and exacerbated by cold, delayed menstruation and dark purple menstrual discharge with blood clots, white tongue coating and sunken, slow and choppy pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.40	pattern/syndrome of retained dampness-heat toxin	濕熱毒蘊證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling, ulceration and exudation of the hand, foot, ear, nose, head, face or genital region, or by fever, jaundice, impaired consciousness, eruptions, reddened tongue and rapid soggy pulse
2.6.41	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat pouring downward	濕熱下注證	a pattern/syndrome marked by frequent and painful urination, or yellow fetid discharge from the vagina, or ulceration of the leg with purulent discharge
2.6.42	pattern/syndrome of pestilential toxin pouring downward	瘟毒下注證	a pattern/syndrome marked by downward pouring of the pestilential toxin, e.g., painful swelling of the testis in mumps
2.6.43	wind-toxin pattern/syndrome	風毒證	a pattern/syndrome due to wind-toxin attack on the skin and flesh, marked by sudden onset of edema, with numbness, itching and pain, or appearance of wheals, redness and swelling of face, eyes, nose and mouth
2.6.44	wind-fire-heat toxin pattern/syndrome	風火熱毒證	a pattern/syndrome due to accumulation of wind-fire-heat toxin in the skin and flesh, marked by formation of boils, abscess or carbuncle accompanied by itching, numbness and scorching pain or suppuration and ulceration accompanied by high fever, crimson tongue with brownish yellow coating and rapid surging pulse
2.6.45	fire toxin pattern/syndrome	火毒證	a pattern/syndrome caused by toxin derived from exuberant heat-fire retaining in the skin and subcutaneous tissue, marked by local redness, swelling and burning pain, followed by abscess formation and accompanied by fever, thirst, reddened tongue with yellow coating, and rapid pulse
2.6.46	pattern/syndrome of inward invasion of fire toxin	火毒內陷證	a syndrome arising when exuberant fire-heat toxin penetrates into the internal organs, usually manifested by high fever with thirst, delirium, constipation, dark-colored urine, crimson tongue with yellow coating and rapid sunken pulse
2.6.47	yin toxin pattern/syndrome	陰毒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when toxin derived from yin-cold accumulates, usually manifested by local diffuse swelling with cold pain that is relieved by warmth and failure to suppurate and rupture, or contains thin foul-smelling pus, accompanied by aversion to cold and cold limbs, white tongue coating and sunken pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.48	pattern/syndrome of inward attack of snake venom	蛇毒內攻證	a pattern/syndrome arising after snake-bite when the snake venom invades the internal organs, marked by headache and dizziness, oppression in the chest, dyspnea, cold sweats and cold limbs, or loss of consciousness
2.6.49	calculus obstruction pattern/syndrome	石阻證	a pattern/syndrome caused by calculus obstruction, marked by distending pain or colicky pain in the right hypochondrium or in the lumbar region referring to the lesser abdomen
2.6.50	wind-cold pattern/syndrome	風寒證	a pattern/syndrome caused by externally contracted wind and cold, and manifested by pronounced aversion to cold with mild fever, headache, generalized pain, absence of sweating, stuffy and runny nose with watery discharge, thin white and moistened tongue coating, and floating pulse
2.6.51	wind-heat pattern/syndrome	風熱證	a pattern/syndrome caused by externally contracted wind and heat, and manifested by pronounced fever and mild aversion to cold, cough, thirst, reddened tongue margins and tip, slightly yellow coating and rapid floating pulse
2.6.52	wind-fire pattern/syndrome	風火證	a pattern/syndrome caused by externally contracted wind and fire in combination
2.6.53	wind-dampness pattern/syndrome	風濕證	a pattern/syndrome caused by externally contracted wind and dampness in combination, manifested by generalized pain, heaviness feeling of the body, joint pain with inhibited articular movement
2.6.54	wind-dryness pattern/syndrome	風燥證	a pattern/syndrome caused by externally contracted wind and dryness in combination, and manifested by headache, fever, aversion to wind, absence of sweating, dry nose, lips, throat and skin, dry cough, thin and dry tongue coating
2.6.55	heat toxin pattern/syndrome	熱毒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when accumulated pathogenic fire-heat is transformed into toxin and manifesting in boils, sores, and eruptive diseases
2.6.56	dampness toxin pattern/syndrome	濕毒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when accumulated dampness turns into toxin and marked by a lingering course difficult to cure, and presence of turbid secretions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.6.57	cold-dampness pattern/syndrome	寒濕證	(1) a pattern/syndrome that arises when the movement of qi and blood is impeded by cold and dampness in combination, and is marked by joint, muscle and bone pains; (2) a pattern/syndrome that arises when dampness harasses the spleen and stomach and cold causes damage to spleen yang, or water-fluid retained in a case of spleen-kidney yang deficiency, and is marked by aversion to cold, cold limbs, abdominal distension, diarrhea or edema
2.6.58	dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome caused by a combination of dampness and heat, either of external or of internal origin, with different manifestations according to location, e.g., jaundice when dampness-heat accumulates in the liver and gallbladder, leukorrhea when dampness-heat pours down, and diarrhea for dampness-heat in the intestines
2.6.59	yin summerheat pattern/syndrome	陰暑證	a pattern/syndrome that results from exposure to wind or drafts or to excessive consumption of cold drinks in the hot summer, and is manifested by fever, headache, aversion to cold, absence of sweating, and generalized pain; and in some cases, vomiting, diarrhea and abdominal pain
2.6.60	phlegm-dampness pattern/syndrome	痰濕證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when dampness gathers to form phlegm, with different manifestations according to location: cough with profuse whitish expectoration and oppression in chest if phlegm obstructs the lung, and epigastric stuffiness, reduced food intake, and greasy taste in the mouth if phlegm accumulates in the spleen. The general signs of phlegm-dampness are white slimy tongue coating and slippery pulse
2.7.0	Qi-Blood Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	氣血辨證	
2.7.1	qi-blood pattern identification/ syndrome differentiation	氣血辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the state of qi and blood

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.7.2	qi deficiency pattern/ syndrome	氣虛證	a pattern/syndrome of deficiency of genuine qi with diminished function of internal organs, marked by shortness of breath, lassitude, listlessness, spontaneous sweating, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.7.3	qi sinking pattern/ syndrome	氣陷證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from failure in its lifting or holding function, marked by dizziness, blurred vision, shortage of qi, lassitude, prolapse of the anus, prolapse of the uterus or visceroptosis, pale tongue with white coating and weak pulse
2.7.4	qi stagnation pattern/ syndrome	氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from stagnation of qi, marked by intermittent thoracic, hypochondriac, epigastric and abdominal distention or pain, often ameliorated by sighing or belching
2.7.5	qi counterflow pattern/syndrome	氣逆證	a pattern/syndrome arising when qi moves abnormally upward, manifested by cough and dyspnea, or nausea, vomiting, hiccup, belching or even hematemesis, or feeling of gas ascending from the lesser abdomen to the chest or throat with distension and oppression, headache and vertigo
2.7.6	qi block pattern/ syndrome	氣閉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by sudden loss of consciousness with restlessness, trismus and contracture of limbs, or by colicky pain in the chest and abdomen, or by sudden onset of panting with cyanosis, or by fecal retention and urinary block
2.7.7	qi collapse pattern/ syndrome	氣脫證	a pattern/syndrome marked by sudden appearance of profuse sweating, somber pale complexion, cyanotic lips, cold extremities, feeble breathing, even fainting or loss of consciousness with incontinence of urine, pale tongue and hardly perceptible pulse
2.7.8	disordered qi movement pattern/ syndrome	氣機失調證	a general term for a group of patterns/syndromes attributed to disorders of qi movement including qi stagnation, qi counterflow, qi fall, qi block and qi collapse
2.7.9	inhibited qi movement pattern/ syndrome	氣機不利證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when impeded, obstructed or stagnant qi flow impairs the functions of viscera and meridians/channels and is marked by sensation of oppression, distension, and pain associated with frequent sighing, depressed mood and string-like pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.7.10	stagnant qi movement pattern/syndrome	氣機鬱滯證	a pattern/syndrome caused by stagnation of qi movement, marked by feeling of oppression, distension and pain with a tendency to sighing, emotional depression and string-like pulse
2.7.11	qi depression pattern/syndrome	氣鬱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by feeling of distension in the chest, pain in the hypochondriac region, irritability, irascibility, anorexia and menstrual disorders in women, the same as the qi stagnation pattern/syndrome
2.7.12	pattern/syndrome of depressed qi transforming into fire	氣鬱化火證	a pattern/syndrome marked by emotional depression, irritability, irascibility, distention and burning pain in the chest, and reddened tongue with yellow coating, the same as the pattern/syndrome of stagnated qi transforming into fire
2.7.13	pattern/syndrome of congealing cold with qi stagnation	寒凝氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when pathogenic cold hampers the qi movement and qi transformation and is characterized by various pains, such as general pain, headache, painful and rigid neck, back pain and lumbago, epigastric and abdominal pain with cold feeling, pain of extremities and joints
2.7.14	sunken middle qi pattern/syndrome	中氣下陷證	a pattern/syndrome marked by bearing-down sensation in the epigastrium and abdomen, protracted diarrhea, even prolapse of rectum or visceroptosis
2.7.15	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with failure to constrain	氣虛不攝證	a pattern/syndrome arising when failure of insufficient qi in constraint leads to loss of liquid substances, marked by seminal emission, incontinence of urine, spontaneous sweating, hemorrhages, lusterless complexion, lassitude, lack of strength, pale and plump tongue, and weak pulse
2.7.16	qi deficiency fever pattern/syndrome	氣虛發熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by a low persistent fever exaggerated by physical exertion, associated with fatigue, lack of strength, shortness of breath, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.7.17	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with dampness obstruction	氣虛濕阻證	a pattern/syndrome marked by listlessness, lassitude, reduced food intake, shortness of breath, heaviness feeling of the head and body, abdominal distension, diarrhea and soggy weak pulse
2.7.18	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with water retention	氣虛水停證	a pattern/syndrome marked by edema of limbs, inhibited urine, heaviness feeling of the head and body, distension, pain and a feeling of pressure in

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			the chest, epigastrium and abdomen, and pale tongue with white slippery coating
2.7.19	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with external contraction	氣虛外感證	a pattern/syndrome marked by aversion to cold, fever, spontaneous sweating, headache, stuffy nose, feeble voice, lassitude, lack of strength and shortness of breath
2.7.20	pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of qi and yin	氣陰兩虛證; 氣陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by listlessness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, reluctance to speak, dry throat and mouth, vexing thirst, flushed cheeks in the afternoon, short voidings of small amount of urine, constipation, emaciation, scanty dry tongue coating and vacuous pulse
2.7.21	blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	血虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by pale or sallow complexion, pale lips and nails, dizziness, dimmed vision, palpitations, numbness of extremities and fine pulse
2.7.22	blood collapse pattern/syndrome	血脫證	a critical pattern/syndrome occurring in cases of acute massive bleeding, marked by pallor, dizziness, palpitations, faint and short breathing, cold extremities and even mental confusion, pale tongue, hollow pulse or hardly perceptible pulse
2.7.23	blood stasis pattern/syndrome	血瘀證	a pattern/syndrome marked by formation of visible painful and tender purple mass, or abdominal mass with stabbing pain and tenderness, or bleeding of dark purple blood with clots, dark purple tongue, and fine choppy or irregular pulse
2.7.24	blood amassment pattern/syndrome	蓄血證	a pattern/syndrome caused by stagnated blood accumulated in a meridian/channel or an organ, e.g., in the uterus, manifested by distention and pain in the lower abdomen, chills and fever, delirium or other mental disorders at night, or in the middle energizer, manifested by pain and tenderness to touch over the epigastrium
2.7.25	blood heat pattern/syndrome	血熱證	a pattern/syndrome that occurs when exuberant pathogenic heat enters the blood aspect and is manifested by fever, nose-bleeds, vomiting of blood, expectoration of blood, bloody stool, skin eruptions, or advanced periods with profuse bright-red menstrual discharge, vexation, or even delirium and convulsions, deep crimson tongue and rapid string-like pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.7.26	pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of qi and blood	氣血兩虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by listlessness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, pale or sallow complexion, dizziness, dimmed vision, pale lips and nails, palpitation, insomnia, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.7.27	qi-blood disharmony pattern/syndrome	氣血失調證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from disharmony of qi and blood with failure in mutual nourishing and complementing, and usually associated with persistent pain, reverse flow of qi, menstrual irregularities and chronic bleeding
2.7.28	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with blood stasis	氣虛血瘀證	a pattern/syndrome of blood stasis resulting from qi deficiency, marked by somber pale complexion, lack of strength, shortness of breath, local stabbing pain, purplish tongue or purple spots on the tongue and sunken choppy pulse
2.7.29	pattern/syndrome of qi stagnation and blood stasis	氣滯血瘀證	a pattern/syndrome marked by moving or stabbing pain in the thoracic, hypochondriac, epigastric or abdominal region with or without mass formation, purple tongue or purple-spotted tongue, and string-like choppy pulse
2.7.30	pattern/syndrome of qi collapse following bleeding	氣隨血脫證	a pattern/syndrome marked by pale complexion, reverse cold of limbs, profuse sweating, feeble breathing, or even respiratory arrest, and hardly perceptible pulse or vacuous rootless large pulse
2.7.31	pattern/syndrome of qi failing to control the blood	氣不攝血證	a pattern/syndrome marked by hematochezia, bleeding through the pores, gum bleeding, uterine bleeding or excessive menstrual discharge, listlessness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, laziness to speak, lusterless complexion, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.7.32	pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency complicated by stasis	血虛挾瘀證	a pattern/syndrome marked by sallow or pale complexion, dizziness, blurred vision, palpitations, dream-disturbed sleep, stabbing pain fixed in location, scanty menstrual discharge of dark purple blood with clots, dysmenorrhea or amenorrhea, purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, and fine choppy pulse
2.7.33	pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and congealing cold	血虛寒凝證	a pattern/syndrome marked by purplish complexion, dizziness, blurred vision, dark purple lips and tongue, cold hands and feet, and localized cold, pain and numbness; in women, late periods with scanty menstrual discharge of dark blood or clots, painful periods or amenorrhea

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.7.34	pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and wind-dryness	血虛風燥證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dry, rough, itchy, shriveled skin with rhagades, withering and loss of hair, numbness of body surface, contraction of hands and feet, lusterless complexion, pale nails, dizziness and blurred vision, pale tongue and fine pulse
2.7.35	pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency engendering wind	血虛生風證	a liver wind pattern/syndrome attributed to blood deficiency that deprives the sinews of nourishment, and marked by numbness, tremor, contraction of limbs, itching, vertigo, lusterless nails, pale tongue and fine weak pulse
2.8.0	Fluid-Humor Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	津液辨證	
2.8.1	fluid-humor pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	津液辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the condition of body fluids
2.8.2	phlegm pattern/syndrome	痰證	a general term for a group of patterns/syndromes marked by cough, dyspnea with profuse expectoration, or by nausea, vomiting and dizziness, or by formation of lumps or nodes
2.8.3	fluid retention pattern/syndrome	飲證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, thoracic and epigastric stuffiness sensation, vomiting of clear fluid, slippery tongue coating and string-like pulse
2.8.4	water retention pattern/syndrome	水停證	a pattern/syndrome marked by edema, oliguria, or accompanied by ascites, pale plump tongue with white slippery coating and soggy relaxed pulse
2.8.5	humor collapse pattern/syndrome	液脫證	a severe case of fluid deficiency pattern/syndrome, marked by parched or cracked lips, withered skin, sunken eyes, tinnitus, oliguria and dry fecal binding, reddened tongue with no moisture and fine weak pulse
2.8.6	fluid-humor deficiency pattern/syndrome	津液虧虛證； 津液虧損證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dry mouth and throat, parched or cracked lips, thirst with desire for drink, oliguria, constipation, reddened tongue lacking moisture, and rapid fine weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.8.7	fluid-qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	津氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome due to deficiency of both fluid and qi, manifested by listlessness, shortness of breath, vexing thirst, dry skin, reddened tongue with dry coating and fine weak pulse
2.8.8	pattern/syndrome of qi stagnation with water retention	氣滯水停證	a pattern/syndrome marked by edema of limbs, oliguria, heaviness feeling of the head and body, distension, oppression and scurry pain in the chest, epigastrium and abdomen, pale tongue with white slippery coating and string-like relaxed pulse
2.8.9	pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the chest and hypochondrium	飲停胸脅證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by pain in the chest and hypochondrium, which is aggravated by twisting movements or breathing, and particularly by coughing, and associated with thoracic distension, a feeling of pressure in the chest and shortness of breath, white and slippery tongue coating, and string-like pulse
2.8.10	pattern/syndrome of mutual contention of wind and water	風水相搏證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when pathogenic wind attacking the lung causes dysfunction in diffusion and depurative downbearing and leads to abnormal accumulation of water under the skin, and is manifested by acute onset of edema of the head and face, and then generalized, associated with aversion to cold, fever, absence of sweating, reduced amount of urine, thin white tongue coating and floating pulse
2.9.0	Visceral Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	臟腑辨證	
2.9.1	visceral pattern identification/ syndrome differentiation	臟腑辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the pathological changes of viscera and bowels
2.9.2	Heart Diseases Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	心病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with diseases of the heart
2.9.3	heart qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	心氣虛證； 心氣不足證； 心氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by palpitations, shortness of breath, listlessness, spontaneous sweating, pallor, pale tongue, and weak or irregular pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.4	heart blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	心血虛證； 心血不足證； 心血虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of blood to nourish the heart spirit, manifested by palpitations, dizziness, dream-disturbed sleep, forgetfulness, pale or sallow complexion, pale lips and tongue, and fine pulse
2.9.5	pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of heart qi and blood	心氣血兩虛證	a pattern/syndrome arising when deficiency of both qi and blood deprives the heart and spirit of nourishment, usually manifested by palpitations, shortness of breath, listlessness, fatigue, dizziness, forgetfulness, dream-disturbed sleep, pale complexion and tongue, and fine weak pulse
2.9.6	pattern/syndrome of heart deficiency with timidity	心虛膽怯證	a pattern/syndrome marked by palpitations, insomnia, timidity and susceptibility to fright, dizziness, a feeling of pressure in the chest, pale tongue, weak pulse or rapid stirred pulse
2.9.7	heart yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	心陰虛證； 心陰不足證； 心陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yin fluid to nourish the heart spirit, manifested by mental irritability, palpitation, insomnia, low fever, night sweating, malar flush, thirst and rapid fine pulse
2.9.8	heart yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	心陽虛證； 心陽不足證； 心陽虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yang qi to warm and activate the heart, usually manifested by palpitation, dyspnea, a feeling of pressure in the chest, aversion to cold with cold limbs, bright pale complexion, dark lips and tongue with white coating, weak or irregular pulse
2.9.9	heart yang collapse pattern/syndrome	心陽虛脫證	a pattern/syndrome marked by sudden profuse sweating and cold skin, reversal cold of limbs, feeble breathing, palpitations, clouding or loss of consciousness, pale complexion and hardly perceptible pulse
2.9.10	pattern/syndrome of heart fire flaming upward	心火上炎證	a pattern/syndrome of up-flaring fire from the heart, marked by oral ulceration, mental irritability, insomnia, and a red tip of the tongue
2.9.11	intense heart fire pattern/syndrome	心火熾盛證	a pattern/syndrome of exuberant fire disturbing the heart spirit, marked by fever, thirst, vexation, insomnia, and in severe cases, manic agitation, and delirious speech, reddened tongue tip and yellow coating, and rapid slippery pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.12	pattern/syndrome of heat harassing the heart spirit	熱擾心神證	a pattern/syndrome caused by exuberant heat which disturbs the heart spirit, and marked by fever, thirst, vexation, insomnia, or even manic or delirious speech, flushed face, constipation, deep-colored urine, reddened tongue tip, yellow tongue coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.13	pattern/syndrome of transmission of heart heat to the small intestine	心移熱小腸證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when heart fire is exuberant and spreads to the small intestine, and that is characterized by fever, thirst, vexation, oral sores with painful ulceration, rough painful voidings of reddish urine or even hematuria, reddened tongue tip and yellow coating, and rapid pulse
2.9.14	heart blood stasis (obstruction) pattern/syndrome	心血瘀阻證	a pattern/syndrome arising when the blood flow in the heart vessels is impeded, marked by palpitations and stabbing pain in the precordial region
2.9.15	heart vessel obstruction pattern/syndrome	心脈痹阻證	a pattern/syndrome arising when the heart vessels are impeded, marked by paroxysms of palpitations with fearful throbbing, pain and a feeling of pressure in the heart and chest referring to the shoulder or upper arm
2.9.16	pattern/syndrome of phlegm clouding the heart spirit	痰蒙心神證	a pattern/syndrome marked by impairment of consciousness, psychotic depression, or even coma, accompanied with phlegmatic sound in the throat
2.9.17	pattern/syndrome of phlegm-fire harassing the heart	痰火擾心證; 痰火擾神證	a pattern/syndrome caused by phlegm-fire which harasses the heart spirit, marked by restlessness, insomnia or even raving madness, reddened tongue tip, yellow dense and slimy tongue coating, and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.18	pattern/syndrome of water qi intimidating the heart	水氣凌心證	a pattern/syndrome arising when deficiency of yang qi of the heart and the kidney results in water flooding, marked by palpitations and shortness of breath associated with general edema, especially in the legs, short voidings of scanty clear urine, associated with listlessness, lassitude, cold extremities, pale or dark gloomy complexion, pale plump tongue with white slippery coating and sunken weak pulse
2.9.19	pattern/syndrome of (blood) stasis obstructing the brain collateral	瘀阻腦絡證	a pattern/syndrome arising when a brain collateral is obstructed by static blood, marked by dizziness, headache with fixed location, or forgetfulness, insomnia, or loss of consciousness, dull lusterless

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			complexion, purple tongue or tongue with purple spots, and fine choppy pulse
2.9.20	pattern/syndrome of qi block with syncope	氣閉神厥證	a pattern/syndrome arising when emotional stimuli cause obstruction of qi movement involving the heart spirit, marked by fainting, aphasia or loss of consciousness, trismus, convulsions and string-like or hidden pulse
2.9.21	pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the pericardium	飲停心包證	a pattern/syndrome caused by fluid retention in the pericardium impeding the flow of qi and blood, marked by a forceful heart beat, fullness and a feeling of pressure in the chest, dyspnea with inability to lie flat, purplish tongue with white slippery coating, and sunken or hidden pulse
2.9.22	small intestinal qi stagnation pattern/syndrome	小腸氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome caused by qi stagnation in the small intestine, marked by abdominal pain with borborygmi
2.9.23	Lung Diseases Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	肺病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with lung diseases
2.9.24	lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺氣虛證； 肺氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by pale complexion, shortness of breath, feeble voice, intolerance of wind and spontaneous sweating
2.9.25	lung yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺陰虛證； 肺陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to yin deficiency of the lung with endogenous heat, manifested by unproductive cough, afternoon fever, night sweating, flushed cheeks, dry throat, red and dry tongue, and rapid fine pulse
2.9.26	lung yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺陽虛證	a pattern/syndrome resulting from deficiency of yang qi to warm the lung, usually manifested by cough, dyspnea and thin expectoration, fear of cold and cold extremities, spontaneous sweating, pale complexion, enlarged tongue with white slippery coating and weak pulse
2.9.27	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the lung	風寒襲肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by chilliness, stuffy nose, sneezing, profuse watery nasal discharge, thin sputum, thin white tongue coating and floating tight pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.28	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold fettering the lung	風寒束肺證	a pattern/syndrome arising when wind-cold invades the lung to cause nondiffusion of lung qi, manifested by cough with thin white phlegm, aversion to cold with possible mild fever, stuffy nose with clear nasal discharge, itchy throat, oppression in the chest, white tongue coating and floating tight pulse
2.9.29	pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the lung	風熱犯肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever with mild chilliness, headache, sore throat, cough, reddened tip of the tongue with thin yellowish coating, and rapid floating pulse
2.9.30	pattern/syndrome of dryness invading the lung	燥邪犯肺證; 燥邪傷肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dry cough without sputum or with scanty sticky sputum difficult to expectorate, chest pain, mild chills and fever, thirst, dry lips, mouth, throat and nose, and floating pulse
2.9.31	lung heat pattern/syndrome	肺熱證	a general term for heat patterns/syndromes of the lung
2.9.32	intense lung heat pattern/syndrome	肺熱熾盛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever, thirst, cough, dyspnea or chest pain, constipation, dark urine, reddened tongue with yellow coating
2.9.33	pattern/syndrome of phlegm- heat obstructing the lung	痰熱閉肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cough, dyspnea, expectoration of thick, yellow or blood-stained sputum, chest pain, reddened tongue with yellowish slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.34	pattern/syndrome of phlegm turbidity obstructing the lung	痰濁阻肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cough with expectoration of copious whitish sputum, feeling of stuffiness in the chest, whitish slimy coating of the tongue and soggy pulse
2.9.35	pattern/syndrome of cold- phlegm obstructing the lung	寒痰阻肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cough with profuse phlegm easy to expectorate and a feeling of pressure in the chest, or phlegmatic wheezing, aversion to cold and cold limbs, pale tongue with white slimy or slippery coating, and string-like slippery pulse
2.9.36	pattern/syndrome of summerheat damaging the lung vessel	暑傷肺絡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever, thirst, cough, expectoration of fresh blood, reddened tongue with yellow fur and rapid weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.37	pattern/syndrome of heat toxin blocking the lung	熱毒閉肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever, reversal cold of limbs, cough, dyspnea, a feeling of pressure in the chest with coarse breath, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid sunken pulse
2.9.38	pattern/syndrome of lung dryness with intestinal obstruction	肺燥腸閉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cough, dyspnea, thirst, constipation, abdominal distension, yellow dry coating of the tongue and sunken replete pulse
2.9.39	Spleen Diseases Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	脾病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with spleen diseases
2.9.40	spleen deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾虛證	any deficiency pattern/syndrome of the spleen, including deficiency of spleen qi, yin and yang
2.9.41	spleen qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾氣虛證； 脾氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, fatigue, sallow face, indigestion, abdominal distension, lassitude, anorexia and loose bowels
2.9.42	pattern/syndrome of spleen failing in transportation	脾失健運證	a pattern/syndrome that occurs in any deficiency condition of the spleen and that is often characterized by anorexia, abdominal distention, diarrhea, borborygmi, and in chronic cases, emaciation, lack of strength, and edema of limbs
2.9.43	spleen yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾陰虛證； 脾陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to deficiency of yin fluid with impaired splenic transportation, and marked by hunger with inability to eat, emaciation and lassitude
2.9.44	spleen yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾陽虛證； 脾陽虧虛證； 脾虛寒證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficient yang qi failing to warm and activate the spleen, usually manifested by cold limbs, coldness and pains in the abdomen, anorexia, abdominal fullness, chronic diarrhea, lassitude, emaciation and edema, the same as the spleen deficiency cold pattern/syndrome
2.9.45	pattern/syndrome of spleen failing to control the blood	脾不統血證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when weak spleen qi fails to control blood, resulting in various kinds of chronic bleeding such as purpura, flooding and spotting in women, accompanied by sallow complexion, anorexia, loose bowels, lassitude, lack of strength, shortness of breath, reluctance to speak, pale tongue and weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.46	sunken spleen qi pattern/syndrome	脾虛氣陷證； 脾氣下陷證	a pattern/syndrome marked by epigastric bearing-down sensation, more prominent after meals, or urgency of defecation at short intervals with bearing-down feeling of the anus, or chronic persistent diarrhea, or prolapse of the rectum or uterus, associated with shortness of breath, lassitude, reluctance to speak, dizziness, pale tongue with white coating, and relaxed weak pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with sunken qi
2.9.47	pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with dampness encumbrance	脾虛濕困證	a pattern/syndrome marked by epigastric distension, poor appetite, borborygmi, diarrhea, nausea, thirst but no desire to drink, lassitude, and dense and slippery tongue coating, the same as the pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with dampness accumulation
2.9.48	pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with stirring of wind	脾虛動風證	a pattern/syndrome marked by tremor of the limbs or convulsions associated with reduced food intake, abdominal distension, loose bowels, lassitude, lack of strength, pale complexion, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.9.49	pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with water flood	脾虛水泛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by edema of the face and limbs or together with ascites, associated with reduced food intake, abdominal distension, sloppy stools, lassitude, lack of strength, pale complexion, pale plump tongue with white slippery coating, and soggy or weak pulse
2.9.50	pattern/syndrome of cold-dampness encumbering the spleen	寒濕困脾證； 濕困脾陽證	a pattern/syndrome marked by epigastric and abdominal distention, stickiness and tastelessness in the mouth, nausea, loose bowels, heaviness sensation of the head and body, or jaundice with dull yellow discoloration, pale plump tongue with white slimy coating and soggy relaxed pulse
2.9.51	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the spleen	濕熱蘊脾證	a pattern/syndrome marked by abdominal distention, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, heaviness sensation in the limbs, or jaundice, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid soggy pulse
2.9.52	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the spleen and stomach	脾胃濕熱證； 中焦濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by epigastric or abdominal distention, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, lassitude, heaviness sensation of the body, or jaundice with bright yellow discoloration of the skin and the white of the eyes, yellow dense and slimy tongue coating, the same as the pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the middle energizer

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.53	spleen-stomach deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	脾胃虛寒證； 脾胃陽虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficient yang qi to warm the spleen and stomach with endogenous cold, and manifested by cold and pains over the stomach, accompanied by anorexia, abdominal fullness, belching, vomiting thin fluid, chronic diarrhea, lassitude and cold limbs, the same as the spleen-stomach yang deficiency pattern/syndrome
2.9.54	spleen-stomach weakness pattern/syndrome	脾胃虛弱證	a combined pattern/syndrome of spleen qi deficiency and stomach qi deficiency
2.9.55	spleen-stomach yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾胃陰虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficient yin fluid to moisten the spleen and stomach, and manifested by dry mouth and throat, hunger but no desire for food, gastric upset, abdominal distension and dull pain, retching and hiccough, leanness, constipation, reddened tongue lacking moisture and fine rapid pulse
2.9.56	spleen-stomach disharmony pattern/syndrome	脾胃不和證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to stagnation of qi movement that causes dysfunction of the spleen and stomach, and manifested by epigastric stuffiness and distension, anorexia, sloppy stool, belching, borborygmi and string-like pulse
2.9.57	Gastrointestinal Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	胃腸病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with diseases of the stomach and intestines
2.9.58	stomach deficiency pattern/syndrome	胃虛證	a collective term for various deficiency patterns/syndromes of the stomach, including deficiency of stomach qi, yang and yin
2.9.59	stomach qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	胃氣虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dull epigastric pain relieved by pressure, anorexia, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.9.60	stomach yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	胃陽虛證；胃 虛寒證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficiency of yang qi to warm the stomach and marked by continuous epigastric pain, ameliorated by warmth and pressure, reduced food intake, stuffiness sensation in the stomach, aversion to cold with cold limbs, pale tongue with whitish coating and sunken slow weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.61	stomach yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	胃陰虛證；胃陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficiency of yin fluid to moisten the stomach and marked by dryness in the mouth, thirst, anorexia, constipation, retching and reddened peeled tongue
2.9.62	stomach cold pattern/syndrome	胃寒證	a pattern/syndrome of stomach cold, either of excess type or of deficiency type
2.9.63	stomach excess cold pattern/syndrome	胃實寒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when the stomach is attacked by pathogenic cold, usually manifested by acute severe epigastric pain with cold sensation, vomiting of watery fluid, aversion to cold with cold limbs and white tongue coating
2.9.64	stomach heat pattern/syndrome	胃熱證；胃火證；胃熱壅盛證；胃火熾盛證	a pattern/syndrome due to impairment of the stomach by pathogenic heat or caused by overeating of hot pungent food, mainly manifested by thirst, foul breath, hyperorexia, oliguria with dark urine, constipation, and ulceration of the mouth or gingivitis, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid pulse, the same as the (intense) stomach fire pattern/syndrome
2.9.65	pattern/syndrome of (blood) stasis in the stomach collateral	瘀阻胃絡證	a pattern/syndrome arising when static blood obstructs the stomach collateral, marked by epigastric stabbing pain that is aggravated by pressure or palpable mass in the epigastric region, or vomiting of dark-colored blood with clots, purple spots on the tongue and string-like choppy pulse
2.9.66	pattern/syndrome of intestinal dryness and fluid depletion	腸燥津虧證；腸燥津傷證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dry feces difficult to evacuate, infrequent bowel movement, abdominal distension and pain, or palpable mass in the lower abdomen, thirst, reddened tongue with scanty moisture and yellow dry coating, and string-like choppy pulse
2.9.67	pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and intestinal dryness	血虛腸燥證	a pattern/syndrome caused by deficiency of blood depriving the intestines of moisture, and marked by dry stool difficult to defecate or accompanied by hematochezia, pale complexion and tongue, and fine choppy pulse
2.9.68	pattern/syndrome of cold stagnating in stomach and intestines	寒滯胃腸證	a pattern/syndrome arising when pathogenic cold invades the gastrointestinal tract and gives rise to disordered transmission and transformation, usually manifested by sudden pain in the epigastric region and abdomen aggravated by cold and alleviated by warmth, nausea, vomiting, bland taste in the mouth

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			with no thirst, watery diarrhea, aversion to cold with cold limbs, white tongue coating and string-like tight pulse
2.9.69	intestinal dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	腸道濕熱證	a syndrome marked by discharge of purulent and bloody stools, accompanied by abdominal pain, tenesmus, scanty dark urine, yellow and slimy tongue coating, and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.70	pattern/syndrome of intestinal heat and bowel excess	腸熱腑實證	a pattern/syndrome marked by high fever or late afternoon fever, abdominal fullness, pain, tenderness and refusal of pressure, constipation or heat bind with circumfluence, thirst, or impaired consciousness and delirium, short voidings of reddish urine, reddened tongue with thick yellow and dry coating, and sunken rapid forceful pulse
2.9.71	gastrointestinal qi stagnation pattern/syndrome	胃腸氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome marked epigastric and abdominal distending pain or moving pain, belching, borborygmi alleviated by the passing of flatus, nausea, ungratifying diarrhea, thick tongue coating and string-like pulse
2.9.72	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with stirring wind	陰虛動風證	a pattern/syndrome arising when deficiency of yin fluid deprives the meridians/channels of nourishment and stirs up the internal wind, marked by twitching of extremities, accompanied by dizziness, tinnitus, flushed cheeks and dry reddened tongue
2.9.73	pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the stomach and intestines	飲留胃腸證	a pattern/syndrome caused by retention of fluid in the stomach and intestines, and marked by epigastric distension and fullness with splashing sounds in the stomach, rumbling noises in the intestines, bland taste in mouth with no thirst, white and slimy tongue coating, and sunken slippery pulse
2.9.74	pattern/syndrome of worms accumulating in the intestines	蟲積腸道證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to intestinal parasitosis, especially ascariasis, and marked by paroxysms of abdominal pain, sometimes accompanied by mass formation or discharge of ascaris with stool, grinding of teeth during sleep, or appearance of white miliary spots on the inside of the lips
2.9.75	large intestinal fluid deficiency pattern/syndrome	大腸津虧證	a pattern/syndrome marked by constipation or difficulty in defecation accompanied by dry throat and reddened tongue with scanty coating

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.76	large intestinal heat bind pattern/syndrome	大腸熱結證	a pattern/syndrome marked by constipation with abdominal pain and tenderness, yellow and dry coating of the tongue, and sunken forceful pulse
2.9.77	large intestinal dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	大腸濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by discharge of purulent and bloody stools, abdominal pain, tenesmus, scanty dark urine, yellow and slimy tongue coating, and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.78	Liver-gallbladder Diseases Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	肝膽病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with liver and gallbladder diseases
2.9.79	liver qi depression pattern/syndrome	肝氣鬱結證； 肝鬱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by depression, frequent sighing, hypochondriac or lower abdominal distention or moving pain, and string-like pulse; and in women, distending pain of the breast and irregular menstruation, the same as the liver qi stagnation/constraint pattern/syndrome
2.9.80	liver blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	肝血虛證； 肝血虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by sallow complexion, impaired vision, insomnia, deficient amount or absence of menstruation, pale tongue and lips
2.9.81	liver yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	肝陰虛證； 肝陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficient yin fluid that fails to moisten and nourish the liver, marked by dizziness, headache, blurred vision, dryness of eyes, insomnia, thirst, dry throat, scanty tongue coating and fine pulse
2.9.82	liver yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	肝陽虛證	a pattern/syndrome due to weakened yang qi with diminished function of the liver, marked by depression and susceptibility to fright, distension and oppression in the hypochondriac regions, fear of cold with cold limbs, dizziness, blurred vision, pale tongue with white coating and sunken slow weak pulse
2.9.83	pattern/syndrome of internal stirring of liver wind	肝風內動證； 肝風證	a pattern/syndrome marked by convulsion, tremor or spasm, also known as the liver wind pattern/syndrome
2.9.84	pattern/syndrome of liver yang transforming into wind	肝陽化風證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness with tendency to fall or even sudden attack of syncope, shaking of head, tremor of limbs, irritability, irascibility, flushing of face, reddened tongue and string-like pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.85	pattern/syndrome of liver depression and qi stagnation	肝鬱氣滯證	a pattern/syndrome marked by depressed mood, frequent sighing, feeling of a foreign body in the throat, distension, oppression and scurrying pain in the chest or lesser abdomen, distending pain of the breast and menstrual irregularities in women, white tongue coating and string-like pulse
2.9.86	pattern/syndrome of liver depression and blood stasis	肝鬱血瘀證; 肝血瘀滯證	a pattern/syndrome arising when stagnant liver qi causes blood stasis in the liver, marked by depressed mood, hypochondriac distending or stabbing pain, or formation of mass in the hypochondriac region or lesser abdomen, purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, and string-like choppy pulse
2.9.87	pattern/syndrome of depressed liver qi transforming into fire	肝鬱化火證	a pattern/syndrome marked by distension, pain and burning sensation in the hypochondriac region, irritability, irascibility, bitterness and dryness in the mouth, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid string-like pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of stagnated liver qi transforming into fire
2.9.88	pattern/syndrome of liver fire flaming upward	肝火上炎證	a pattern/syndrome marked by headache, dizziness, tinnitus with buzzing in the ears, impairment of hearing, blood-shot eyes, mental irritability, bitter taste in the mouth, yellow coating of the tongue, rapid string-like pulse, and hematuria, hemoptysis or epistaxis in severe cases
2.9.89	intense liver fire pattern/syndrome	肝火熾盛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by hypochondriac pain, dryness and bitterness in the mouth, vomiting of bitter fluid, irritability, irascibility, insomnia or dream-disturbed sleep, flushed face, blood-shot eyes, constipation, dark urine, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid string-like pulse
2.9.90	pattern/syndrome of ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang	肝陽上亢證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, headache, flushed face, blurred vision, tinnitus, bitter taste in the mouth and string-like pulse
2.9.91	liver-gallbladder dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	肝膽濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever and chills, jaundice, hypochondriac and abdominal pain, bitter taste in the mouth, nausea and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.92	pattern/syndrome of cold stagnating in the liver meridian	寒滯肝脈證	a pattern/syndrome marked by spasmodic symptoms in the area related to the liver meridian, such as stretching pain with cold sensation in the lower abdomen and testicles

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.93	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the liver meridian	肝經濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by distending pain in the hypochondriac region, or itching and painful swollen genitalia, or ear pain with purulent discharge, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.9.94	gallbladder heat pattern/syndrome	膽熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by irritability, irascibility, hypochondriac distension, bitterness in the mouth, or ear pain, tinnitus, insomnia, reddened tongue with yellow coating
2.9.95	pattern/syndrome of depressed gallbladder with harassing phlegm	膽鬱痰擾證	a pattern/syndrome marked by timidity, susceptibility to fright, insomnia and dreamful sleep, vexation, oppression and distension in the chest and hypochondriac region, frequent sighing, dizziness, bitter taste in the mouth, nausea, vomiting, white slimy tongue coating and string-like pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of stagnated gallbladder with harassing phlegm
2.9.96	gallbladder qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	膽氣虛證； 膽氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by panic, suspicion, sighing, nervousness, irritability, lassitude, dizziness and insomnia
2.9.97	pattern/syndrome of worms harassing the gallbladder	蟲擾膽腑證	a pattern/syndrome marked by paroxysms of unbearable abdominal pain associated with pale complexion, reversal cold of limbs, vomiting of bitter fluid or ascarides
2.9.98	Kidney-bladder Diseases Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	腎膀胱病辨證	visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with diseases of the kidney and bladder
2.9.99	kidney deficiency pattern/syndrome	腎虛證	any deficiency pattern/syndrome of the kidney, including deficiency of kidney qi, yin and yang
2.9.100	kidney essence insufficiency pattern/syndrome	腎精不足證	a pattern/syndrome marked by retarded development in children, premature senility, decreased reproductive function, tinnitus, loosening of teeth, loss of hair and forgetfulness in adults
2.9.101	kidney qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	腎氣虛證； 腎氣虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, forgetfulness, tinnitus, backache, lack of libido and weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.102	kidney qi insecurity pattern/syndrome	腎氣不固證	a pattern/syndrome marked by frequent urination, dribbling of urine after voiding, incontinence of urine or feces, nocturnal emission or premature ejaculation in men, continuous dribbling of menstrual discharge or liability to abortion in women, aching back and knees, and weak pulse
2.9.103	kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	腎陰虛證； 腎陰虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by lumbago, lassitude, dizziness, tinnitus, nocturnal emission in men and oligomenorrhea in women, emaciation, dry throat, thirst, flushed cheeks, hot sensation in the palms and soles, afternoon fever, night sweating, reddened tongue with little or no coating, and rapid fine pulse
2.9.104	pattern/syndrome of kidney yin deficiency with fire effulgence	腎陰虛火旺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by tidal fever, night sweating, flushed cheeks, vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, nocturnal emission, premature ejaculation, hypersexuality, lumbar pain, tinnitus, reddened tongue with yellow coating lacking moisture and rapid fine pulse
2.9.105	kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	腎陽虛證； 腎陽虧虛證	a pattern/syndrome arising when declined kidney yang fails to warm the body, marked by aversion to cold, cold limbs, listlessness, weakness and soreness of the loins and knees, premature ejaculation or impotence in men and frigidity or infertility in women, nocturia, whitish tongue coating and weak pulse at cubit (chi) section
2.9.106	pattern/syndrome of kidney failing to receive qi	腎不納氣證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dyspnea with prolonged exhalation, asthenic cough and feeble voice
2.9.107	pattern/syndrome of kidney deficiency with water flood	腎虛水泛證	a pattern/syndrome arising when insufficient kidney qi fails in qi transformation and leads to water flooding, marked by edema, particularly of the lower extremities, accompanied by oliguria, tinnitus, aching of the back and knees, pale tongue with whitish slippery coating and weak pulse
2.9.108	kidney meridian cold-dampness pattern/syndrome	腎經寒濕證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to deficiency of kidney yang with infusion of cold-dampness, and marked by feeling of heaviness, cold and pain in the lumbus and knees with limitation of movement, aversion to cold and cold limbs, white slimy tongue coating and soggy relaxed pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.109	bladder deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	膀胱虛寒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when kidney yang deficiency causes impaired bladder qi transformation, marked by frequent urination, incontinence of urine or dribbling of urine, cold feeling in the lower abdomen, whitish moist tongue coating and weak pulse
2.9.110	bladder dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	膀胱濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to dampness-heat attacking on and accumulating in the bladder, marked by frequency and urgency of urination, strangury, turbid urine or hematuria, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid pulse
2.9.111	pattern/syndrome of heat accumulating in the bladder	熱積膀胱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by distension and fullness of the lower abdomen, strangury, frequent urination and fever without chills
2.9.112	Combined Visceral Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	臟腑兼病辨證	pattern identification/syndrome differentiation dealing with diseases in which two or more visceral organs are simultaneously involved
2.9.113	heart-kidney non-interaction pattern/syndrome	心腎不交證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to deficiency of yin fluid of the heart and the kidney with relative preponderance of yang, marked by restlessness, insomnia, palpitation, dizziness, tinnitus, aching of the lower back and knees, seminal emission, vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, night sweating, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.9.114	heart-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	心腎陽虛證	a pattern/syndrome arising when insufficient yang qi fails to warm and activate both the heart and the kidney, marked by palpitations, aversion to cold, lack of warmth in the extremities, inhibited urination, edema of the legs, aching and cold lumbus and knees, white slimy tongue coating and weak sunken pulse
2.9.115	heart-lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	心肺氣虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by palpitations, a feeling of pressure in the chest, cough, dyspnea and shortness of breath aggravated on exertion, thin expectoration, dizziness, listlessness and lack of strength, feeble voice, spontaneous sweating, pale tongue and weak pulse
2.9.116	pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of the heart and spleen	心脾兩虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by palpitation, amnesia, insomnia or dream-disturbed sleep, loss of appetite, abdominal distention, loose bowels, lassitude, sallow face, pale tender-soft tongue and fine weak pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.117	heart-liver blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	心肝血虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by palpitations, forgetfulness, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, dizziness, blurred vision, pale complexion, numbness of the limbs, lusterless nails, scanty volume of pale menstrual flow or even amenorrhea in women, pale tongue and fine pulse
2.9.118	lung-kidney qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺腎氣虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dyspnea with prolonged exhalation, spontaneous sweating, lack of strength, aching lumbus and limp legs, and cough with thin sputum
2.9.119	lung-kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺腎陰虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to deficiency of yin fluid of the lung and the kidney with harassment of endogenous heat, marked by cough with scanty expectoration, dryness of the mouth and throat or hoarseness of voice, aching lumbus and limp legs, bone-steaming tidal fever, flushed cheeks, night sweats, nocturnal emission in men and menstrual irregularities in women, reddened tongue with scanty coating and rapid fine pulse
2.9.120	lung-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	肺腎陽虛證; 水寒射肺證	a pattern/syndrome arising when debilitated kidney yang causes water flood harassing the lung, marked by aversion to cold with cold limbs, cough and dyspnea with expectoration of profuse white thin sputum, edema of legs, oliguria, pale enlarged tongue with whitish slippery coating and weak pulse
2.9.121	spleen-lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾肺氣虛證; 脾肺兩虛證	a pattern/syndrome marked by anorexia, loose stools, abdominal distension, protracted cough with dyspnea and shortness of breath, expectoration of large amount of thin sputum, feeble voice, laziness to speak, pale lusterless complexion, pale tongue with white slippery coating and weak fine pulse
2.9.122	pattern/syndrome of liver fire invading the lung	肝火犯肺證	a pattern/syndrome marked by bitter taste in the mouth, dizziness and red eyes, irritability, irascibility, moving pain in the chest and hypochondriac region, cough with thick expectoration or even hemoptysis, reddened tongue and rapid tight string-like pulse
2.9.123	pattern/syndrome of liver qi invading the stomach	肝氣犯胃證; 肝胃不和證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dizziness, hypochondriac pain, irritability, epigastric distension and pain, anorexia, belching, nausea, vomiting and string-like pulse, also known as the liver-stomach disharmony pattern/syndrome

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.9.124	pattern/syndrome of liver depression and spleen deficiency	肝鬱脾虛證； 肝脾不調證	a pattern/syndrome marked by hypochondriac and abdominal painful distension, depressed mood, frequent sighing, anorexia, uncomfortable loose bowels or alleviation of abdominal pain after defecation, borborygmi with flatus and white slimy tongue coating, the same as the pattern/syndrome of liver stagnation and spleen deficiency, also known as the liver-spleen disharmony pattern/syndrome
2.9.125	liver-kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	肝腎陰虛證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficiency of yin fluid of the liver and the kidney with harassment of endogenous heat, marked by dizziness, blurred vision, tinnitus, forgetfulness, insomnia and dream-disturbed sleep, hypochondriac pain, aching lumbus and poor muscle tone in legs, flushed cheeks, heat sensation in the chest, palms and soles, night sweating, nocturnal emission in men and scant menstruation in women, reddened tongue with scanty coating, and rapid fine pulse
2.9.126	spleen-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	脾腎陽虛證； 脾腎虛寒證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to insufficient yang qi of the spleen and the kidney with endogenous cold, marked by bright pale complexion, aversion to cold with cold limbs, coldness and pain in the loins and lower abdomen, chronic diarrhea, or edema with inhibited urination, pale enlarged tongue with white slippery coating, and slow, sunken and forceless pulse
2.10.0	Various Pattern Identification/ Syndrome Differentiation	各科辨證	
2.10.1	pattern/syndrome of insecurity of thoroughfare and conception vessels	衝任不固證	a pattern/syndrome marked by continuous dribbling of menstrual discharge, profuse uterine bleeding or threatened abortion
2.10.2	pattern/syndrome of disharmony of thoroughfare and conception vessels	衝任失調證	a pattern/syndrome marked by irregular menstruation and lower abdominal distention and pain
2.10.3	pattern/syndrome of cold congealing in the uterus	寒凝胞宮證	a pattern/syndrome marked by cold and pain in the lower abdomen, dysmenorrhea or delayed periods with dark menstrual discharge, white tongue coating and sunken tight pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.4	pattern/syndrome of (blood) stasis obstructing the uterus	瘀阻胞宮證	a pattern/syndrome marked by stabbing lower abdominal pain, fixed in location and tender to touch, or accompanied by mass formation, or late periods with scanty discharge of dark purple blood and clots, or cessation of menstruation, or abnormal uterine bleeding, dark purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, and string-like rough pulse
2.10.5	uterine deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	胞宮虛寒證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to deficiency of kidney yang that fails to warm the uterus, and manifested by aversion to cold with cold limbs, aching and coldness of the lumbus and knees, dull pain in the lower abdomen which is alleviated by warmth and pressure, pale-colored and thin menstrual flow, or clear thin leukorrhea, or infertility, or abortion, accompanied by pale complexion, pale tongue with white coating and sunken weak pulse
2.10.6	uterine dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	胞宮濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by large amount of yellowish leukorrhea, thick, fetid, associated with pudental itching and erosion, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.10.7	pattern/syndrome of accumulated heat in the uterus	胞宮積熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by scorching pain in the lower abdomen, early periods and large amount of bright red menstrual discharge, or yellowish thick and fetid leukorrhea, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid pulse
2.10.8	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat obstructing the essence chamber	濕熱阻滯精室證	a pattern/syndrome marked by heat and pain in the perineum, scrotal itching and erosion, seminal emission or pus in the seminal fluid, difficult and painful urination, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.10.9	pattern/syndrome of phlegm obstructing the essence chamber	痰阻精室證	a pattern/syndrome marked by impotence, thin seminal fluid, lack of libido, obesity, lack of strength, pale tongue with white slimy coating and slippery pulse
2.10.10	pattern/syndrome of (blood) stasis obstructing the essence chamber	瘀阻精室證	a pattern/syndrome marked by stabbing pain that refuses pressure in the perineal region with fixed location or mass formation or oligospermia and impotence or painful ejaculation or hematospermia

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.11	pattern/syndrome of wind striking the meridians and collaterals	風中經絡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by numbness, itching or sudden onset of deviation of eye and mouth
2.10.12	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the collaterals	風寒襲絡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by aversion to cold, pain and cold feeling of the limbs with contracture or numbness and purple or pale discoloration of the skin, white tongue coating and string-like tight pulse
2.10.13	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold obstructing the collaterals	風寒阻絡證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to impeded blood flow in superficial meridians/channels and collaterals/networks by pathogenic cold, and manifested by aversion to cold, coldness, pain, contracture or numbness of limbs with dark purple or pale skin, pale tongue coating and string-like tight pulse
2.10.14	pattern/syndrome of wind-prevailing migratory arthralgia	風勝行痹證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to stagnation of pathogenic wind-cold-dampness (with predominance of wind) in sinews, bones and joints, and manifested by wandering arthralgia with inhibited movement of the joint, thin white tongue coating and floating pulse
2.10.15	pattern/syndrome of cold-prevailing agonizing arthralgia	寒勝痛痹證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to stagnation of pathogenic wind-cold-dampness (with predominance of cold) in sinews, bones and joints, and manifested by joint cold pain with fixed location, white tongue coating and string-like tight pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of cold-prevailing painful arthralgia
2.10.16	pattern/syndrome of dampness-prevailing fixed arthralgia	濕勝着痹證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to stagnation of pathogenic wind-cold-dampness (with predominance of dampness) in sinews, bones and joints, and manifested by pain, feeling of heaviness and swelling in the joint with fixed location, local skin numbness, white slimy tongue coating, and slippery or soggy pulse
2.10.17	pattern/syndrome of heat-obstructing arthralgia	熱邪阻痹證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to stagnation of pathogenic wind-dampness-heat (with predominance of heat) in sinews, bones and joints, and manifested by joint pain with local scorching hotness, redness and swelling, yellow tongue coating and rapid slippery pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.18	pattern/syndrome of stasis and stagnation due to traumatic injury	外傷瘀滯證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to traumatic injury causing local stagnation of qi and blood, manifested by local ecchymosis, pain and tenderness
2.10.19	pattern/syndrome of damage to sinew and bone	損傷筋骨證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to traumatic injury causing damage to the tendons and bones, marked by local swelling, pain and impaired movement
2.10.20	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold invading the head	風寒犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome marked by headache with pain of the nape and back, aggravated by wind and cold, thin white tongue coating and floating tight pulse
2.10.21	pattern/syndrome wind-heat invading the head	風熱犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome marked by headache with a distention sensation, fever or aversion to wind, thirst, flushing of face, reddened tongue tip and edges, thin and yellowish tongue coating, and rapid floating pulse
2.10.22	pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness invading the head	風濕犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome marked by headache as if the head were tightly swathed, slight aversion to wind and cold, heaviness feeling of the body and limbs, stuffiness sensation in the chest, anorexia, white slippery tongue coating and soggy pulse
2.10.23	pattern/syndrome of static blood invading the head	瘀血犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome arising when static blood obstructs the vessels of the head due to traumatic injury, manifested by persistent sharp pain with fixed location, dizziness, forgetfulness, gloomy complexion, purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, and string-like rough pulse
2.10.24	pattern/syndrome of phlegm turbidity invading the head	痰濁犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome marked by headache associated with mental clouding, tinnitus, impaired hearing, blurred vision, stuffiness and a feeling of pressure in the chest and epigastrium, vomiting of phlegm/mucus, white slimy tongue coating and string-like slippery pulse
2.10.25	pattern/syndrome of liver fire invading the head	肝火犯頭證	a pattern/syndrome marked by severe headache associated with flushing face, red eyes, irritability, irascibility, bitter taste in the mouth, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid string-like pulse
2.10.26	pattern/syndrome of wind-fire attacking the eyes	風火攻目證	a pattern/syndrome marked by reddened, swollen and painful eye and lacrimation associated with fever, aversion to wind and floating rapid pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.27	pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness insulting the eyes	風濕凌目證	a pattern/syndrome marked by swelling of the eyelid, reddened and itchy eye with lacrimation, and photophobia
2.10.28	pattern/syndrome of traumatic injury of ocular vessel	外傷目絡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by swollen and painful eyelid dark purple in color, or the white of the eye turning into red or dark purple, or pain of the eye with fundus bleeding
2.10.29	pattern/syndrome of worm accumulation transforming into malnutrition	蟲積化疳證	a pattern/syndrome that arises when intestinal parasites deprive the eyes of nourishment, and that manifests in impaired vision, night blindness, dryness of the eyes and photophobia
2.10.30	pattern/syndrome of liver fire blazing the ear	肝火燔耳證	a pattern/syndrome marked by painful distension in the ear, congestion or perforation of tympanic membrane, or discharge of pus and blood from the meatus, associated with tinnitus, dizziness, bitter taste in the mouth, reddened face and eyes, vexation, irascibility, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid string-like pulse
2.10.31	pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the ear	風熱犯耳證	a pattern/syndrome marked by distension and obstruction in the ear, congestion of the tympanic membrane or a feeling of pressure in the ear, associated with tinnitus, headache, fever with slight aversion to wind and cold, thin yellow tongue coating and rapid floating pulse
2.10.32	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat invading the ear	濕熱犯耳證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling, pain, erosion, exudation, incrustation of the meatus or auricle, or discharge of thick yellow pus from the ear, or distension of the ear with tinnitus, yellow slimy tongue coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.10.33	pattern/syndrome of phlegm- dampness attacking the ear	痰濕犯耳證	a pattern/syndrome marked by distension and pressure in the ear associated with dizziness, tinnitus, heaviness feeling of the head and nausea; or thin purulent discharge from the ear, impaired hearing and visible fluid horizon through the drum membrane; slippery slimy tongue coating and string-like slippery pulse
2.10.34	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with hearing loss	氣虛耳竅失充證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to weakened healthy qi with the clear yang qi failing in ascending, and marked by tinnitus like the sound of cicadas, impairment of hearing, associated with dizziness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, reluctance to speak, pale tongue

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			and weak pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of hearing loss due to qi deficiency
2.10.35	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold invading the nose	風寒犯鼻證	a pattern/syndrome marked by stuffy runny nose or nasal itching with sneezing, pale mucous membrane of the nose with thin clear secretion, associated with aversion to wind and cold, thin white tongue coating and floating tight pulse
2.10.36	pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the nose	風熱犯鼻證	a pattern/syndrome marked by nasal obstruction and discharge, swollen conchae and congested mucous membrane with thick secretion, impairment of the sense of smell, associated with fever and slight aversion to wind and cold, thin yellow tongue coating and floating rapid pulse
2.10.37	pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with loss of smell	氣虛鼻竅失充證	a pattern/syndrome marked by nasal obstruction with clear discharge and frequent sneezing, and pale swollen conchae, associated with dizziness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, reluctance to speak, pale tongue and weak pulse, the same as the pattern/syndrome of loss of smell due to qi deficiency
2.10.38	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with dryness of the nose	陰虛鼻竅失濡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by enlarged nasal cavity with feeling of scorching hotness, dried nasal membrane, atrophied conchae and discharge of a little mucus with crusts or blood, or even epistaxis, dry throat and mouth, tidal fever with malar flush, dry tongue with dry coating and rapid fine pulse
2.10.39	pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the throat	風寒襲喉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by painful, itchy and slightly swollen throat dark red in color associated with hoarseness, fever, aversion to cold, absence of sweat, stuffy nose and floating tight pulse
2.10.40	pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the throat	風熱侵喉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by painful swollen throat or enlarged congested tonsils, with discomfort in swallowing and hoarseness of voice, fever, slight aversion to wind and cold, mild thirst, thin yellow tongue coating and rapid floating pulse
2.10.41	pattern/syndrome of toxic heat attacking the throat	毒熱攻喉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling and pain of the throat with difficulty in swallowing or even ulceration and suppuration with fetid mouth odor, intense fever, thirst, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid forceful pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.42	pattern/syndrome of qi stagnating and phlegm congealing in the throat	氣滯痰凝咽 喉證	a pattern/syndrome marked by depressed mood, discomfort sensation of a foreign body present in the throat, swelling of the pharyngeal mucous membrane, slimy tongue coating and string-like slippery pulse
2.10.43	pattern/syndrome of stomach fire blazing the gums	胃火燔齦證	a pattern/syndrome marked by red, swollen and painful gums with exudation of blood and pus between the teeth, thirst, fetid mouth odor, constipation, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid pulse
2.10.44	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the teeth	濕熱蒸齒證	a pattern/syndrome marked by toothache or dental caries with pain aggravated by heat, sweetness and sourness, or red swollen gums, fetid mouth odor, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.10.45	pattern/syndrome of deficiency fire scorching the gums	虛火灼齦證	a pattern/syndrome marked by dried and atrophied gums with exposure of the dental roots, looseness of the teeth with dull pain, associated with vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles, flushed cheeks, reddened tongue with little moisture and rapid fine pulse
2.10.46	pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with dryness of the throat	陰虛咽喉失 濡證	a pattern/syndrome marked by a scorching feeling in the throat with itching, mild pain and hoarseness, or sensation of presence of a foreign body in the throat, dry and slightly reddened pharynx or local ulceration, reddened tongue with little moisture and rapid fine pulse
2.10.47	pattern/syndrome of toxic fire attacking the lips	毒火攻脣證	a pattern/syndrome marked by a red swollen lip with severe pain or local ulceration with discharge of fetid pus, intense fever, thirst, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid pulse
2.10.48	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the mouth	濕熱蒸口證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling and pain of the mucous membrane of the mouth, or ulceration in the oral cavity with discharge of fetid pus, or reddened, swollen and ulcerated lip with inflamed angular rhagades, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid soggy pulse
2.10.49	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the tongue	濕熱蒸舌證	a pattern/syndrome marked by a reddened, swollen and painful tongue, even with festering ulceration and yellow slimy tongue coating

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.10.50	pattern/syndrome of heat toxin attacking the tongue	熱毒攻舌證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling and pain of the tongue or a part of the tongue with impaired lingual movement, fever, thirst and rapid forceful pulse
2.10.51	sublingual blood stasis pattern/syndrome	血瘀舌下證	a pattern/syndrome marked by the development of a sublingual dark purple mass, purple tongue or purple spots on the tongue, and impaired motility of the tongue
2.11.0	Six-Meridian Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	六經辨證	
2.11.1	six-meridian pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	六經辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the theory of the six meridians/channels, applied to the diagnosis of acute febrile diseases at different stages, but also useful for the pattern identification/syndrome differentiation of other diseases
2.11.2	greater yang disease pattern/syndrome	太陽病證： 太陽病	a general term for greater yang meridian pattern/syndrome and greater yang bowel pattern/syndrome, occurring at the onset of the febrile disease, chiefly manifested by headache, painful stiff nape, aversion to cold and floating pulse, also called the greater yang disease
2.11.3	greater yang meridian pattern/syndrome	太陽經證	one of the patterns/syndromes of the six meridians due to attack of pathogenic wind-cold on the greater yang meridian of the body surface, usually seen in the initial stage of the contraction, marked by chills and fever, headache and painful stiff nape, and floating pulse
2.11.4	greater yang bowel pattern/syndrome	太陽腑證	a pattern/syndrome in which the urinary bladder (greater yang bowel) is attacked by the pathogen in an unrelieved greater yang meridian
2.11.5	greater yang cold damage pattern/syndrome	太陽傷寒證： 太陽傷寒	a pattern/syndrome caused by pathogenic cold attacking the greater yang meridian, chiefly manifested by fever, chills, absence of sweat and floating pulse, also called the greater yang cold damage

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.11.6	greater yang water-retention pattern/syndrome	太陽蓄水證； 太陽蓄水	a type of greater yang bowel pattern/syndrome marked by disordered water metabolism, chiefly manifested by impaired urination and thirst but vomiting immediately after the ingestion of water, also called the greater yang water-retention
2.11.7	yang brightness disease pattern/syndrome	陽明病證； 陽明病	a pattern/syndrome marked by exuberant yang and dryness-heat in the stomach and intestines occurring in the course of an externally contracted disease, manifested by abdominal distention with constipation, tidal fever and deep and replete pulse, also called the yang brightness disease
2.11.8	yang brightness meridian pattern/syndrome	陽明經證	a pattern/syndrome caused by exuberant pathogenic heat flooding in the yang brightness meridian and spreading over the body but not yet inducing constipation, characteristically manifested by high fever without chills, profuse sweating, strong thirst and large surging pulse
2.11.9	yang brightness bowel pattern/syndrome	陽明腑證	a pattern/syndrome caused by accumulation of pathogenic heat in the stomach and large intestine, manifested by tidal fever, abdominal distension, fullness and pain, constipation, agitation or even delirium
2.11.10	lesser yang disease pattern/syndrome	少陽病證； 少陽病	a pattern/syndrome in which the pathogen exists between the exterior and interior of the body, marked by alternate fever and chills, fullness and choking feeling in the chest and hypochondriac region, dry throat and string-like pulse, also called the lesser yang disease
2.11.11	lesser yang meridian pattern/syndrome	少陽經證	a lesser yang pattern/syndrome involving the gallbladder meridian, marked by alternating chills and fever, chest and hypochondriac pain and fullness, no desire for food and drink, irritable disposition, desire to vomit, bitter taste in the mouth, dry throat, dizzy vision, white tongue coating and string-like pulse
2.11.12	lesser yang bowel pattern/syndrome	少陽腑證	a lesser yang pattern/syndrome associated with heat binding in the gastrointestinal tract, marked by alternating chills and fever, chest and hypochondriac pain and fullness, incessant vomiting, epigastric cramp, irritable disposition, constipation or heat bind with circumfluence, reddened tongue with yellow dry coating and forceful string-like pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.11.13	greater yin disease pattern/syndrome	太陰病證； 太陰病	a pattern/syndrome characterized by decline of spleen yang with production of cold-dampness, and manifested by anorexia, vomiting, abdominal fullness and dull pain, diarrhea and weak pulse, also called the greater yin disease
2.11.14	greater yin wind stroke pattern/syndrome	太陰中風證	a pattern/syndrome of greater yin deficiency cold combined with exterior wind-cold, marked by aversion to wind, fever, sweating, abdominal fullness and pain alleviated by warmth and pressure, and watery diarrhea
2.11.15	lesser yin disease pattern/syndrome	少陰病證； 少陰病	a pattern/syndrome occurring at the late stage of an externally contracted disease, marked by deficiency cold of the heart and kidney, and manifested by aversion to cold, listlessness, irritable disposition, insomnia, cold limbs, diarrhea with undigested food and fine pulse, also called the lesser yin disease
2.11.16	lesser yin exterior cold pattern/syndrome	少陰表寒證	a pattern/syndrome arising when pathogenic cold invades the lesser yin and then the greater yang concurrently in a patient with yang deficiency constitution, and manifested by fever, aversion to cold, headache, absence of sweating, cold limbs, listlessness, white tongue coating and sunken pulse
2.11.17	lesser yin cold transformation pattern/syndrome	少陰寒化證	a lesser yin pattern/syndrome with cold transformation of the pathogen which invades the heart and kidney, usually manifested as aversion to cold, cold limbs, sleepiness, lienteric diarrhea, pale tongue and sunken faint pulse
2.11.18	lesser yin heat transformation pattern/syndrome	少陰熱化證	a lesser yin pattern/syndrome with heat transformation of the pathogen, manifested by irritable disposition, insomnia, dry mouth and throat, reddened tongue tip and fine rapid pulse
2.11.19	reverting yin disease pattern/syndrome	厥陰病證； 厥陰病	a pattern/syndrome occurring at the latest stage of three yin disease characterized by interweaving of cold and heat or yin and yang in a critically ill case, also called the reverting yin disease
2.11.20	reverting yin heat reversal pattern/syndrome	厥陰熱厥證	a pattern/syndrome occurring at the latest stage of an externally contracted disease when the pathogen prevents the extremely exuberant yang heat from reaching the exterior, and manifested by cold extremities, flushed face and congested eyes,

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			scorching hotness of the chest and abdomen, thirst, irritable disposition, restlessness and inability to sleep, short voidings of reddish urine, constipation, reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.11.21	reverting yin cold reversal pattern/syndrome	厥陰寒厥證	a pattern/syndrome occurring at the latest stage of an externally contracted disease characterized by reversal cold of the extremities and hardly perceptible or skipping pulse
2.11.22	greater yang blood amassment pattern/syndrome	太陽蓄血證 ; 太陽蓄血	a type of greater yang bowel pattern/syndrome in which the pathogen combines with blood and remains in the lower abdomen, marked by lower abdominal cramps or fullness with rigidity, polyuria, delirium, amnesia, dark stool, and sunken choppy or sunken bound pulse, also called the greater yang blood amassment
2.11.23	pattern/syndrome of heat entering blood chamber	熱入血室證	a pattern/syndrome marked by penetration of heat into the uterus, which causes abdominal pain, menstrual disturbances, alternate fever and chills, and delirium at night
2.12.0	Defense, Qi, Nutrient and Blood Pattern Identification / Syndrome Differentiation	衛氣營血辨證	
2.12.1	defense, qi, nutrient and blood pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	衛氣營血辨證	categorization of epidemic febrile diseases patterns/syndromes according to the theory of defense, qi, nutrient and blood which indicate the stages of the clinical course with corresponding pathological changes
2.12.2	defense aspect pattern/syndrome	衛分證	the initial stage of an epidemic febrile disease when only the superficial part of the defense qi is involved, marked by fever, slightly aversion to wind and cold, headache, reddened tongue tip and rapid floating pulse
2.12.3	qi aspect pattern/syndrome	氣分證	the second stage of an epidemic febrile disease showing intrusion of pathogenic heat on the yang brightness meridian or the lung, gallbladder, spleen, stomach or large intestine, marked by high fever without chills, strong thirst, flushed face, dark urine,

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			reddened tongue with yellow coating and rapid forceful pulse
2.12.4	nutrient aspect pattern/syndrome	營分證	serious development of an epidemic febrile disease characterized by pathogenic heat entering the nutrient aspect and disturbing the heart (mind), manifested by fever higher at night, restlessness or delirium, faint skin rashes and crimson tongue
2.12.5	blood aspect pattern/syndrome	血分證	epidemic febrile disease at its severest stage, characterized by severe damage of yin blood, with various forms of bleeding such as hemoptysis, epistaxis, hematuria, hematochezia, in addition to high fever, coma or convulsions
2.12.6	pattern/syndrome of both defense-qi aspects disease	衛氣同病證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by coexistence of pathogenic heat in the defense and qi aspects, manifested by high fever, slight aversion to wind and cold, thirst, irritability, reddened tongue and rapid floating pulse
2.12.7	pattern/syndrome of both defense-nutrient aspects disease	衛營同病證	a pattern/syndrome of epidemic febrile disease characterized by coexistence of pathogenic heat in the defense and nutrient aspects, manifested by high fever and delirium together with chills, headache and general aching
2.12.8	pattern/syndrome of dual blaze of qi-nutrient aspects	氣營兩燔證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by simultaneous existence of syndromes of qi and nutrient aspects, manifested by high fever, thirst, mental irritability, delirium and barely visible skin eruption
2.12.9	pattern/syndrome of dual blaze of qi-blood aspects	氣血兩燔證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by coexistence of syndromes of qi and blood aspects, manifested by high fever, thirst, delirium, skin eruptions, and various bleeding symptoms
2.12.10	pattern/syndrome of heat entering the blood aspect	熱入血分證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever, impaired consciousness, bleeding and deep crimson tongue
2.12.11	pattern/syndrome of heat entering nutrient-blood aspects	熱入營血證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever higher at night, vexing insomnia or impaired consciousness, barely visible skin rashes or bleeding, constipation, crimson tongue and rapid fine pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.12.12	pattern/syndrome of exuberant heat stirring wind	熱盛動風證	a pattern/syndrome marked by high fever, coma, convulsions with rigid neck, opisthotonos, lockjaw, crimson tongue with yellow coating and rapid string-like pulse
2.12.13	pattern/syndrome of exuberant heat with bleeding	熱盛動血證	a pattern/syndrome marked by high fever, thirst, delirium, flushed face, red eyes, hematochezia, hematuria, epistaxis, distinct skin eruption, crimson tongue with yellow coating and rapid surging pulse
2.12.14	pattern/syndrome of heat entering the pericardium	熱入心包證; 熱閉心包證	a pattern/syndrome marked by high fever, thirst, delirium, red face, coarse breath, reddened tongue with yellow coating and slippery rapid pulse
2.12.15	residual heat pattern/syndrome	餘熱未清證	a pattern/syndrome characterized by lingering of residual heat with damage to body fluids, and manifested by persistent low fever, irritable disposition, thirst, constipation, deep-colored urine, reddened tongue lacking moisture and rapid fine pulse
2.12.16	pattern/syndrome of toxin congesting the upper energizer	毒壅上焦證	a pattern/syndrome marked by chills and fever at the onset, with reddened and swollen head and face, itching and sore throat, and then by high fever, thirst, hot and swollen head and face, skin eruption, agitation, inflamed and infected throat, associated with cough and dyspnea
2.12.17	pattern/syndrome of wind-heat with epidemic toxin	風熱疫毒證	a pattern/syndrome marked by chills and fever, redness and swelling of the head and face, painful swollen throat, skin eruption, agitation, thirst, headache, nausea, crimson tongue and rapid surging pulse
2.12.18	pattern/syndrome of dampness obstructing defense yang	濕遏衛陽證	a pattern/syndrome marked by aversion to cold, lack of sweat, unsurfaced fever, headache as if swathed, cumbersome body and limbs, oppression in the chest, no feeling of hunger, absence of thirst, white slimy tongue coating and soggy relaxed pulse
2.12.19	pattern/syndrome of pathogen hidden in the pleurodiaphragmatic interspace	邪伏膜原證	a pattern/syndrome marked by episodes of chills and fever at fixed hours, severe headache and generalized pain, distension and oppression in the chest and hypochondriac regions, vomiting of phlegmatic substance, and white powdered coating of the tongue

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.12.20	qi aspect dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	氣分濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome arising when pathogenic dampness-heat invades qi aspect, marked by unsurfaced fever, oppression in the chest and distension in the abdomen, jaundice, cumbersome limbs, nausea and vomiting, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.12.21	pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat obstructing qi movement	濕熱鬱阻氣機證	a pattern/syndrome arising when the dampness-heat pathogen obstructs qi movements, marked by fever, lassitude, aching limbs, thoracic oppression and abdominal distension, nausea, vomiting, reddish urine, and white slimy or slimy turbid tongue coating
2.12.22	pattern/syndrome of dampness predominating over heat	濕重於熱證	a pattern/syndrome marked by unsurfaced fever, thirst without appreciable intake of fluid, heavy feeling of the head and cumbersome limbs, impaired urination, diarrhea, reddened tongue with yellowish slimy coating, and slightly rapid and slippery pulse
2.12.23	pattern/syndrome of heat predominating over dampness	熱重於濕證	a pattern/syndrome marked by fever, thirst, reddened face and eyes, cumbersome limbs and head, ungratifying loose bowels, short voidings of little urine, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
2.12.24	spreading dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	濕熱浸淫證	a pattern/syndrome marked by redness, swelling, itching, ulceration and exudation of the eyelid, ear, nose, mouth angle, fingers or toes
2.12.25	pattern/syndrome of summerheat with cold-dampness	暑兼寒濕證	a pattern/syndrome arising when a combination of summerheat and cold-dampness attacks the exterior of the body, marked by headache, fever, aversion to cold, absence of sweating, epigastric oppression, irritable disposition and thin slimy tongue coating
2.12.26	pattern/syndrome of summerheat-dampness encumbering the middle energizer	暑濕困阻中焦證	a pattern/syndrome arising when a combination of summerheat and dampness harasses the spleen and stomach, marked by intense fever, persistent thirst, profuse sweating, short voidings of urine, epigastric stuffiness, heaviness of the body and large surging pulse
2.12.27	summerheat-heat pattern/syndrome	暑熱證	a pattern/syndrome of summerheat marked by fever, thirst, listlessness, shortness of breath, irritable disposition, dizziness, sweating, short voidings of yellow urine, reddened tongue with dry yellow coating and large surging pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
2.12.28	summerheat-dampness pattern/syndrome	暑濕證	a pattern/syndrome caused by a combination of summerheat and dampness, marked by fever, vexation, sensation of pressure in the chest, nausea and vomiting, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating, and rapid slippery pulse
2.12.29	pattern/syndrome of summerheat entering yang brightness	暑入陽明證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to exuberant summerheat that enters yang brightness, i.e., the qi aspect, marked by intense fever, profuse sweating, irritable disposition, headache with dizziness, reddened face, coarse breathing, thirst, dry teeth, yellow dry tongue coating, large surging pulse or large surging hollow pulse
2.12.30	pattern/syndrome of summerheat damaging fluid and qi	暑傷津氣證	a pattern/syndrome caused by summerheat which consumes qi and damages fluids, and manifested by fever with sweating, strong thirst, irritable disposition, flushed face, listlessness, lack of strength, shortness of breath, short voidings of deep-colored urine, reddened tongue with dry yellow coating, and large floating weak pulse
2.12.31	pattern/syndrome of summerheat-heat stirring wind	暑熱動風證	a pattern/syndrome of summerheat marked by high fever, loss of consciousness, convulsion, opisthotonos and trismus
2.12.32	pattern/syndrome of summerheat blocking qi movement	暑閉氣機證	a pattern/syndrome of summerheat marked by sudden fainting, fever without much sweating, reversal cold of limbs, dyspnea, lockjaw, or nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain
2.13.0	Triple Energizer Pattern Identification/Syndrome Differentiation	三焦辨證	
2.13.1	triple energizer pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	三焦辨證	categorization of patterns/syndromes according to the theory of the triple energizer
2.13.2	upper energizer disease pattern/syndrome	上焦病證	a pattern/syndrome arising when the pathogen invades the lung meridian at the early stage of epidemic febrile disease, marked by chills and fever, sweating, headache, cough, thirst, reddened tongue tip and edges, and rapid floating pulse; or marked

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			by high fever without chills, cough, dyspnea, sweating, delirium and even loss of consciousness if the pathogen adversely passes to the pericardium
2.13.3	middle energizer disease pattern/syndrome	中焦病證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to invasion of the pathogen on the stomach meridian at the middle stage of epidemic febrile disease, either marked by dryness-heat in the stomach with yin damage, or marked by dampness-heat in the spleen with yin damage
2.13.4	lower energizer disease pattern/syndrome	下焦病證	a pattern/syndrome due to impairment of liver-kidney yin at the later stage of epidemic febrile disease
2.13.5	triple energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	三焦濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to invasion of the pathogenic dampness-heat on the whole body involving all three energizers
2.13.6	upper energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	上焦濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome occurring at the initial stage of dampness-heat disease, generally manifested by chills and fever, heaviness feeling of the head and body, oppression in the chest, cough, absence of sweat and rapid soggy pulse
2.13.7	lower energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	下焦濕熱證	a pattern/syndrome attributed to invasion of the pathogenic dampness-heat on the large intestine or bladder

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.0.0	DISEASE	臨床各科	
3.1.0	Internal Medicine	內科	
3.1.1	yin disease	陰病	(1) disease of yin meridians; (2) a general designation for deficiency patterns/syndromes and/or cold patterns/syndromes of the viscera, also called yin stages of disease transformation
3.1.2	yang disease	陽病	(1) disease of yang meridians; (2) a general designation for excess patterns/syndromes and/or heat patterns/syndromes, also called yang stages of disease transformation
3.1.3	cold damage	傷寒	(1) a general term for various externally contracted febrile diseases; (2) a condition caused by cold, manifested as chills and fever, absence of sweating, headache and floating tense pulse
3.1.4	miscellaneous disease	雜病	various internal diseases other than cold-induced diseases and warm diseases
3.1.5	new contraction	新感	immediate onset of the febrile diseases after invasion by the exopathogen, marked by exterior syndrome of aversion to wind-cold at the beginning
3.1.6	seasonal epidemic	時疫	epidemic infectious disease in a certain season
3.1.7	common cold	感冒	affliction of the lung-superficies by pathogenic wind, mainly manifested as fever, chills, headache, general aching, congested nose, sneezing, itching throat and cough
3.1.8	influenza	時行感冒	a disease attributable to invasion of the lung-superficies by an epidemic pathogen that causes acute fever, sore throat, headache and general aching
3.1.9	dampness damage	傷濕	a disease due to external contraction of dampness or obstruction of the stomach and intestines by dampness-turbidity
3.1.10	dysentery	痢疾	a disease characterized by abdominal pain, tenesmus, diarrhea with stool containing mucus and blood
3.1.11	epidemic toxin dysentery	疫毒痢	severe case of dysentery characterized by acute onset of high fever, headache, severe abdominal pain, frequent stools containing blood and mucus,

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			and even loss of consciousness with convulsions or reversal cold of the limbs and cyanosis
3.1.12	intermittent dysentery	休息痢	chronic dysentery with frequent relapse
3.1.13	food-denying dysentery	噤口痢	severe case of dysentery with utter loss of appetite and vomiting upon eating and drinking
3.1.14	cholera	霍亂	a disease characterized by sudden onset of simultaneous vomiting and diarrhea with the vomitus and stool like rice water, referring to acute gastroenteritis, food poisoning and cholera
3.1.15	dry cholera	乾霍亂	an acute illness characterized by sudden onset of abdominal colic and epigastric oppression accompanied by desire but failure to vomit and desire but failure to defecate
3.1.16	malaria	瘧；瘧疾(病)	a disease attributed to contraction of malarial parasites, marked by paroxysms of shivering chills, high fever and sweating, also known as malaria-like disease
3.1.17	dampness malaria	濕瘧	malaria complicated by dampness, manifested as paroxysms of chills and unsurfaced fever, accompanied by impaired sweating, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, slimy tongue coating and relaxed pulse
3.1.18	warm malaria	溫瘧	malaria with higher fever and lower chills than an ordinary attack, accompanied by inhibited sweating and dire thirst
3.1.19	cold malaria	寒瘧	malaria with higher chills and lower fever or even no fever, no sweating, and absence of thirst
3.1.20	taxation malaria	勞瘧	chronic malaria with mild chills and fever, and with attacks being brought on by fatigue
3.1.21	miasmatic malaria	瘴瘧	severe malaria with loss of consciousness or jaundice
3.1.22	miasma	瘴氣	noxious effluvium that is alleged to cause malaria
3.1.23	pestilence	瘟疫	a general term for virulent infectious epidemic diseases
3.1.24	erysipelas facialis	大頭瘟	an acute infection of the face marked by high fever and local redness, swelling, hotness and pain

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.25	warm toxin	溫毒	(1) warm pathogen combined with heat toxin; (2) any acute inflammatory disease attributable to contraction of such pathogen
3.1.26	warm disease	溫病	a general terms for acute externally contracted diseases caused by warm pathogens, with fever as the chief manifestation, also known as warm pathogen disease
3.1.27	spring warmth	春溫	a warm disease contracted in spring
3.1.28	wind-warmth	風溫	a warm disease attributable to contraction of wind-heat pathogen
3.1.29	summerheat stroke	中暑；暈	an acute febrile disease attributable to contraction of summerheat, the same as heatstroke
3.1.30	summerheat affliction	冒暑	common cold in summer
3.1.31	summerheat damage	傷暑	a general term for various conditions caused by summerheat, especially for mild cases of heatstroke and sunstroke
3.1.32	latent summerheat	伏暑	an acute febrile disease caused by latent summerheat or summerheat-dampness pathogen, occurring in autumn or winter
3.1.33	summerheat convulsions	暑癇	a type of severe summerheat stroke in summer with loss of consciousness and convulsions
3.1.34	summerheat-warmth	暑溫	a warm disease attributable to contraction of summerheat pathogen
3.1.35	summerheat-wind	暑風	a disease marked by sudden onset of opisthotonos and convulsions caused by summerheat
3.1.36	dampness-warmth	濕溫	a warm disease attributable to contraction of dampness-heat pathogen
3.1.37	yin toxin	陰毒	a disease characterized by erythema and bluish facial complexion, accompanied by generalized pain and sore throat
3.1.38	yang toxin	陽毒	a disease characterized by erythema bright in color, accompanied by sore throat and spittle with bloody pus

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.39	cough	咳嗽	(1) the expelling of air from the lungs suddenly with an explosive noise or expectoration of sputum; (2) any disease mainly manifested by cough
3.1.40	dry cough	乾咳	cough with no or little expectoration
3.1.41	fifth-watch cough	五更咳	cough occurring or exaggerated daily just before daybreak
3.1.42	lung cough	肺咳	cough due to ascending counterflow of lung qi
3.1.43	wheezing and dyspnea	哮喘	a diseased state characterized by paroxysmal labored breathing accompanied by a whistling sound, such as in asthma
3.1.44	wheezing	哮	difficult and labored breathing with a whistling sound
3.1.45	cold wheezing	寒哮；冷哮	a type of asthma due to cold-phlegm obstructing the airway, marked by dyspnea with wheezing, cough with thin mucous expectoration, fullness and oppression in the chest, whitish and slippery tongue coating, and floating tight pulse
3.1.46	heat wheezing	熱哮	a type of asthma due to retention of heat-phlegm in the lung, marked by dyspnea, wheezing, thick and yellowish expectoration, flushed face, thirst, reddened tongue with yellow slimy coating and rapid slippery pulse
3.1.47	dyspnea	喘	difficult and labored breathing
3.1.48	dyspnea of excess type	實喘	dyspnea caused by external contraction, marked by rapid, forceful and coarse breathing with acute onset and short duration
3.1.49	dyspnea of deficiency type	虛喘	dyspnea due to insufficient lung and kidney qi, marked by shortness of breath and dyspnea upon exertion, usually gradual on onset and chronic in nature
3.1.50	shortness of breath	短氣	rapid labored breathing
3.1.51	shortage of qi	少氣	weak or faint breathing, also known as shallow breathing
3.1.52	lung distention	肺脹	a disease of the lung characterized by persistent distension of the lung, manifested by a sensation of

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			pressure in the chest, chronic cough and expectoration, shortness of breath or dyspnea, cyanotic lips and tongue
3.1.53	lung abscess	肺癰	abscess occurring in the lung due to heat toxin, marked by sudden onset of fever, cough, chest pain, expectoration of foul-smelling bloody purulent sputum
3.1.54	lung consumption	肺癆	a consumptive disease due to overstrain, characterized by cough, hemoptysis, tidal fever, night sweating and emaciation
3.1.55	plum-pit qi	梅核氣	a disease characterized by a sensation of a foreign body present in the throat which can be neither swallowed nor ejected, also known as globus hystericus
3.1.56	fright palpitations	驚悸	palpitation ascribed to being frightened
3.1.57	fearful throbbing	怔忡	a severe case of palpitation
3.1.58	chest impediment	胸痹	a disease characterized by paroxysms of pectoral pain, sometimes accompanied by a feeling of oppression
3.1.59	chest bind	結胸	a diseased state attributable to accumulation of pathogens (such as heat or cold in combination with retained fluid or phlegm or stagnant food) in the chest and abdomen, often manifested by local rigidity, fullness and tenderness, also the same as chest constriction
3.1.60	heart pain	心痛	a general term for pain in the precordial and epigastric regions
3.1.61	sudden heart pain	卒心痛	sudden attack of heart pain due to contraction of pathogenic heat
3.1.62	true heart pain	真心痛	a disease characterized by sudden occurrence of severe heart pain accompanied by sweating, pale complexion, cyanotic lips, cold limbs with the hands and feet turning blue up to the joints, and hardly perceptible pulse
3.1.63	dizziness	眩暈；頭暈； 暝眩	a diseased state characterized by a whirling sensation in the head with visual distortion

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.64	loss of consciousness	神昏	any diseased state characterized by loss of consciousness with no response to stimulation
3.1.65	apoplectic wind stroke	類中風	cerebral stroke caused by endogenous pathogenic wind
3.1.66	prodrome of wind stroke	中風前兆症	symptoms indicating the onset of wind stroke, such as headache and dizziness, numbness and weakness of the limb
3.1.67	sequela of wind stroke	中風後遺症	functional disturbances following an attack of wind stroke, such as hemiplegia, dysphasia and dementia
3.1.68	collateral stroke	中絡	mildest form of wind stroke with slight distortion of the face and numbness of limbs
3.1.69	meridian stroke	中經	mild form of wind stroke with hemiplegia, paralysis of the face and limbs, dysphasia, but no impairment of consciousness
3.1.70	bowel stroke	中腑	serious form of wind stroke with onset of fainting, hemiplegia, distortion of the face and dysphasia
3.1.71	visceral stroke	中臟	very serious form of wind stroke with sudden loss of consciousness, aphasia, and paralysis of lips with salivation
3.1.72	hemiplegia	半身不隨； 偏枯	paralysis of one side of the body
3.1.73	numbness	麻木	reduced sensitivity to touch
3.1.74	insomnia	不得臥；失眠	prolonged inability to obtain normal sleep
3.1.75	forgetfulness	健忘	poor memory; tendency to forget matters, the same as amnesia
3.1.76	dementia	痴呆	diseases characterized by marked decline of cognitive and intellectual functions, usually progressive, without loss of perception or consciousness
3.1.77	yang epilepsy	陽癇	epilepsy of yang nature, characterized by paroxysmal transient loss of consciousness, seizures, upward staring of the eyes often preceded by vocalizations
3.1.78	yin epilepsy	陰癇	epilepsy of yin nature characterized by transient clouding of consciousness without convulsions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.79	depressive psychosis	癲病	a psychotic disorder characterized by severe depression
3.1.80	manic psychosis	狂病	a psychotic disorder characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and elevation of mood
3.1.81	lily disease	百合病	ancient term for neurosis characterized by mental strain, listlessness, sleeplessness, anorexia, pseudo heat and pseudo cold, bitterness in the mouth, yellow urine and rapid pulse
3.1.82	stomach duct pain	胃脘痛	a diseased state characterized by pain in the epigastric region, the same as epigastric pain
3.1.83	gastric stuffiness	脘痞；心下痞	a diseased state characterized by discomfort in the epigastric region with feelings of fullness and pressure but without local rigidity and tenderness
3.1.84	stuffiness of excess type	實痞	sensation of stuffiness caused by accumulation of pathogenic factors
3.1.85	stuffiness of deficiency type	虛痞	sensation of stuffiness occurring in deficiency conditions
3.1.86	vomiting	嘔吐	a diseased state characterized by forcible expulsion of the stomach contents through the mouth
3.1.87	acid vomiting	吐酸	expulsion through the mouth of sour fluid that flows up from the stomach
3.1.88	gastric upset	嘈雜	a diseased state characterized by a disturbed feeling in the stomach, often accompanied by acid regurgitation
3.1.89	hiccup	呃逆；噦	upward reversion of stomach qi with an involuntary movement of the diaphragm, causing a characteristic sound
3.1.90	dysphagia-occlusion	噎膈	difficulty in swallowing caused by narrowing or obstruction of the esophagus
3.1.91	stomach reflux	反胃；胃反	flowing back of the stomach contents into the esophagus and mouth a long time after eating, also known as gastro esophageal reflux

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.92	block and repulsion (disease)	關格	a diseased state characterized by urinary stoppage and vomiting
3.1.93	constipation	便秘	infrequent or difficult evacuation of the feces
3.1.94	diarrhea	泄瀉；下利；泄瀉病	a diseased condition characterized by abnormal frequency and liquidity of fecal discharge
3.1.95	chronic diarrhea	久泄	diarrhea lasting for a long time or continually recurring
3.1.96	splenic constipation	脾約	infrequent passage of dry hardened feces as a consequence of dysfunction of the spleen
3.1.97	visceral bind	藏結；臟結	a diseased state arising when excess cold bound in the internal organs and manifested by epigastric distension, fullness and pain or tender mass accumulated in the hypochondriac region
3.1.98	food damage	傷食	any disease of damage to the spleen and stomach by food
3.1.99	sallow disease	黃胖病	a diseased state characterized by withered-yellowish discoloration of the skin and swelling of the face and ankles
3.1.100	jaundice	黃疸	a diseased condition characterized by yellow discoloration of the skin and sclera
3.1.101	acute jaundice	急黃	a critical case of jaundice with sudden onset, rapid deterioration and poor prognosis, accompanied by high fever, dire thirst, impairment of consciousness and delirium, indicating inward invasion of dampness-heat with toxin into the blood and nutrient aspects
3.1.102	yang jaundice	陽黃	a type of jaundice characterized by bright yellow discoloration of the skin and sclera, accompanied by damp-heat symptoms such as fever, thirst and yellow slimy tongue coating
3.1.103	yin jaundice	陰黃	a type of jaundice characterized by dim yellow discoloration of the skin and sclera, usually chronic and accompanied by cold-dampness symptoms such as listlessness, fear of cold, white slimy tongue coating and soggy relaxed pulse

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.104	dietary jaundice	穀疸	a type of jaundice characterized by dizziness immediately after meal, and painful fullness in the stomach due to indigestion
3.1.105	alcoholic jaundice	酒疸	a type of jaundice due to excessive consumption of liquor
3.1.106	liver fixity	肝著	a diseased condition arising when qi and blood of the liver meridian become depressed and stagnant
3.1.107	gallbladder distention	膽脹	a diseased condition arising when the gallbladder qi is stagnant, and manifested by recurrent right upper abdominal pain with stuffiness and distension
3.1.108	tympanites	鼓脹	a disease characterized by the severely distended abdomen like a drum accompanied by a somber yellow discoloration of the skin and prominent veins on the abdominal wall
3.1.109	cutaneous distention	膚脹	a type of distension disease due to contraction of cold pathogen, arising when the pathogen stays in the skin together with the defense qi
3.1.110	distention and fullness	脹滿	distension without and fullness within, a diseased condition in which damage to the spleen and stomach results in qi stagnation
3.1.111	water distention	水脹	edema due to insufficiency of yang qi that leads to accumulation of water-dampness, marked initially by abdominal distension, and then swelling of the extremities
3.1.112	edema	水腫；水氣(病)	any disease characterized by subcutaneous fluid retention
3.1.113	yang edema	陽水	edema due to attack of wind or immersion of water-dampness involving the lung and the spleen respectively, usually with an acute onset and a short course, accompanied by exterior, heat and excess symptoms
3.1.114	yin edema	陰水	edema due to deficiency of the spleen and the kidney with inhibited qi movement, usually with a gradual onset and a long course, accompanied by interior, cold and deficiency symptoms

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.115	wind edema	風水	a type of edema especially of the face and head, ascribed to attack on the lung by pathogenic wind, manifested by sudden onset of edema accompanied by fever with aversion to wind, aching joints, and oliguria
3.1.116	skin edema	皮水：裏水	pitting edema accompanied by abdominal distension and floating pulse
3.1.117	regular edema	正水	a type of edema accompanied by abdominal fullness and dyspnea
3.1.118	stony edema	石水	a type of edema marked by stony hardness of the lower abdomen
3.1.119	yellow sweat	黃汗	a disease mainly caused by the interior accumulation of dampness-heat, and characterized by edema, fever and yellow-colored sweat
3.1.120	strangury disease	淋病	a variety of diseases characterized by frequent, painful and dripping urination
3.1.121	heat strangury	熱淋	strangury ascribed to dampness-heat, marked by urgency and frequency of painful urination with acute onset, and accompanied by chills and fever, lumbar pain and cramps, and distension in the lower abdomen
3.1.122	stone strangury	石淋	painful and difficult urination due to the passage of urinary calculi
3.1.123	qi strangury	氣淋	strangury due to bladder qi disorders, characterized by painful voiding of urine and lower abdominal distension and fullness
3.1.124	blood strangury	血淋	strangury characterized by painful discharge of bloody urine
3.1.125	unctuous strangury	膏淋	painful discharge of turbid, milky urine like rice-water
3.1.126	fatigue strangury	勞淋	a type of strangury characterized by recurrent dripping of urine ascribed to taxing fatigue, usually seen in chronic cases
3.1.127	white ooze	白淫	seminal fluid in the urine or persistent vaginal discharge

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.128	white turbidity	白濁	(1) murky urine white in color; (2) discharge of a murky white substance from the urethra
3.1.129	turbid urine (disease)	尿濁	discharge of turbid urine, white like rice water, with no difficulty or pain in urination, a condition different from unctuous strangury
3.1.130	dribbling urinary block (disease)	癰閉	dribbling urination or complete blockage of urine flow
3.1.131	seminal emission (disease)	遺精	a diseased state characterized by involuntary emission of semen
3.1.132	dream emission (disease)	夢遺	involuntary emission of semen during sleep associated with dreaming
3.1.133	spermatorrhea	滑精	involuntary and frequent discharge of semen without copulation
3.1.134	premature ejaculation (disease)	早泄	ejaculation of semen immediately after or even prior to penetration
3.1.135	impotence	陽痿	an abnormal state of a male characterized by inability to initiate or maintain an erection in sexual intercourse
3.1.136	persistent erection	陽強	abnormal persistent erection accompanied by tenderness of the penis
3.1.137	seminal cold	精冷	a diseased state characterized by cold thin seminal fluid which leads to sterility
3.1.138	seminal turbidity (disease)	精濁	an inflammatory disease of male genital organ marked by frequent discharge of white turbid secretion from the urethra, generally referring to prostatitis
3.1.139	yin-yang transmission	陰陽易	the disease contracted by a healthy person after sexual intercourse with one who has not yet recovered from an external contraction, also known as yin-yang exchange
3.1.140	running piglet	奔豚：奔豚氣	an ancient name for the morbid condition characterized by a feeling of masses of gas ascending within the abdomen like running piglets, also known as running piglet qi

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.141	depression	鬱病	a general term for diseased states characterized by a depressed mood with feelings of despair or uneasiness
3.1.142	blood disease	血病	a general term for diseases involving the blood, including bleeding, blood stasis and blood heat
3.1.143	nosebleed	鼻衄	hemorrhage from the nose irrelevant to trauma, also called epistaxis
3.1.144	gum bleeding	齒衄	bleeding from the gums irrelevant to trauma
3.1.145	hematemesis	吐血	vomiting of blood
3.1.146	hematochezia	便血	passage of blood in the stool
3.1.147	hematuria	尿血	discharge of bloody urine or blood streaks in the urine, but with no pain during urination
3.1.148	purpura	紫斑	any disease characterized by ecchymosis or small hemorrhages in the skin and mucous membrane
3.1.149	blood amassment (disease)	蓄血	a disease caused by stagnated blood accumulated in a meridian/channel or an organ, e.g., in the uterus, or in the middle energizer
3.1.150	phlegm-fluid retention	痰飲	(1) a general term for retention of phlegm and fluid in any part of the body; (2) a particular designation for retention of fluid in the gastrointestinal tract, e.g., gastric retention in pyloric stenosis
3.1.151	pleural fluid retention	懸飲	a disease characterized by excess fluid retained in the side of the thorax with stretching pain during cough
3.1.152	subcutaneous fluid retention	溢飲	a disease characterized by excessive fluid of the body spilling outward to the body surface
3.1.153	thoracic fluid retention	支飲	retention of excessive fluid in the lung and chest
3.1.154	recurrent fluid retention	伏飲	a disease characterized by phlegm-fluid lying latent in the body with episodes brought on by external contractions
3.1.155	mild fluid retention	微飲	a mild case of fluid retention mainly manifested by shortness of breath

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.156	persistent fluid retention	留飲	a case of fluid retention with lingering course and difficult to cure
3.1.157	abnormal sweating	汗證；汗病	any diseased state characterized by generalized or local abnormal sweating
3.1.158	shock sweating	脫汗	profuse sweating associated with listlessness, cold limbs, and hardly perceivable pulse, usually occurring in a critical case
3.1.159	wasting-thirst	消渴；消渴病	any diseased state characterized by polydipsia, polyphagia, and polyuria, similar to diabetes
3.1.160	upper wasting-thirst	上消	a wasting-thirst case characterized by polydipsia with excessive drinking
3.1.161	middle wasting-thirst	中消	a wasting-thirst case characterized by polyphagia and emaciation
3.1.162	lower wasting-thirst	下消	a wasting-thirst case characterized chiefly by polyuria
3.1.163	consumptive disease	虛勞	a general term for chronic deficiency diseases due to consumption of yin, yang, qi and blood
3.1.164	fatigue due to overexertion	勞倦	a diseased state caused by overexertion, manifested by fatigue, lassitude, shortness of breath upon exertion, and spontaneous sweating
3.1.165	aggregation-accumulation	積聚；癥瘕	a general term referring to mass formation in the chest and abdomen, also called abdominal mass
3.1.166	syncope	厥；厥證	a morbid state characterized by temporary loss of consciousness with cold extremities up to the elbows and knees or beyond, the same as collapse
3.1.167	flopping syncope	薄厥	an acute disease characterized by sudden fainting
3.1.168	visceral syncope	藏厥；臟厥	syncope due to yang debilitation of internal organs
3.1.169	crapulent syncope	食厥	syncope due to eating and drinking too much at one sitting
3.1.170	heat syncope	熱厥；煎厥	syncope due to yin debilitation and excessive heat, also called scorching syncope
3.1.171	cold syncope	寒厥	syncope due to yang debilitation and excessive cold

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.172	wind syncope	風厥	syncope due to transformation of liver qi into wind
3.1.173	qi syncope	氣厥	syncope induced by emotional upset with upward counterflow of qi
3.1.174	blood syncope	血厥	syncope due to a fit of rage that causes an upward reverse flow of qi and blood, marked by flushed face and stringy forceful pulse
3.1.175	phlegm syncope	痰厥	syncope due to exuberant phlegm that causes a qi block
3.1.176	true headache	眞頭痛	a critical case of headache marked by sudden attack of severe pain in the head accompanied by nausea, vomiting, and counterflow cold of extremities up to the elbows and knees
3.1.177	head wind	頭風；腦風	(1) chronic headache with repeated recurrence; (2) a general term for affections of the head caused by pathogenic wind, including headache, dizziness, facial paralysis, and itching of the scalp with much scurf
3.1.178	hemilateral head wind	偏頭風	chronic recurrent headache occurring on one side or one part of the head
3.1.179	thunder head wind	雷頭風	a diseased state characterized by pain with loud noise in the head
3.1.180	impediment disease	痺病	a group of diseases caused by the invasion of wind, cold, dampness or heat pathogen on the meridian/channel involving muscles, sinews, bones and joints, manifested by local pain, soreness, heaviness, or hotness, and even articular swelling, stiffness and deformities, also referring to arthralgia
3.1.181	moving impediment	行痺；風痺	an impediment disease characterized by migratory joint pains, also called wind impediment
3.1.182	painful impediment	痛痺；寒痺	an impediment disease with severe joint pain exaggerated by cold, also called cold impediment
3.1.183	fixed impediment	着痺；濕痺	an impediment disease with fixed joint pain, also called dampness impediment

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.184	heat impediment	熱痹	an impediment disease with an acute onset of joint pain accompanied by local redness, swelling and hotness
3.1.185	joint-running wind	歷節風	a disease characterized by redness and swelling of multiple joints, with acute pain and difficulty in bending and stretching, and finally developing into articular deformity
3.1.186	bone impediment	骨痹	a type of impediment disease mainly involving the bones and joints
3.1.187	flesh impediment	肌痹	a type of impediment disease mainly involving the flesh
3.1.188	blood impediment	血痹	a type of impediment disease marked by local numbness of extremities
3.1.189	vessel impediment	脈痹	a type of impediment disease mainly involving the vessels
3.1.190	heart impediment	心痹	a type of impediment disease mainly involving the heart
3.1.191	intestinal impediment	腸痹	a type of impediment disease mainly involving the intestines
3.1.192	convulsive disease	瘳病	any diseased state marked by neck rigidity, convulsion of the limbs, and even clenched jaw and opisthotonos
3.1.193	febrile convulsion without chills	柔瘳	a type of pyretic convulsion associated with sweating but no chills
3.1.194	febrile convulsion with chills	剛瘳	a type of pyretic convulsion associated with chills but no sweating
3.1.195	wilting disease	痿病	weakness and limpness of the sinews that in severe cases leads to muscular atrophy and prevents the lifting of the legs and arms, the same as atrophy-flaccidity
3.1.196	lung atrophy	肺痿	a disease of the lung due to chronic cough, marked by atrophy of the lung with shortness of breath and expectoration

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.1.197	bone wilting	骨痿；腎痿	wilting attributed to heat in kidney qi, characterized by limp aching lumbar spine and weak wilting lower limbs preventing the patient from getting up and standing, the same as kidney atrophy
3.1.198	vessel wilting	脈痿；心痿	wilting attributed to heat in heart qi, characterized by articular relaxation of the lower limbs preventing the patient from standing, the same as heart atrophy
3.1.199	fleshy wilting	肉痿；脾痿	wilting attributed to heat in spleen qi, characterized by numbness of the flesh, and in severe cases, inability to move the limbs, the same as spleen atrophy
3.1.200	sinew wilting	筋痿；肝痿	wilting attributed to heat in liver qi, characterized by sinew contracture gradually giving way to wilting that prevents normal movements, the same as liver atrophy
3.1.201	leg flaccidity	痿躄	loss of muscle tone in the legs due to atrophy and difficulty in legs movement
3.1.202	tremor	顫震	a diseased state characterized by involuntary trembling of the head or limbs
3.1.203	lumbago	腰痛	pain in the lumbar region caused by disordered qi and blood flow in the related collateral vessels in exogenous afflictions, traumatic injuries or kidney deficiency
3.1.204	genital disease	疝；疝氣	a collective term for various diseases characterized by pain and/or swelling of the lower abdomen or scrotum
3.1.205	hernia	疝；小腸氣	protrusion of a part of an organ or tissue from a body cavity through the tissues that normally contain it
3.1.206	cold abdominal colic	寒疝	acute abdominal pain due to cold, also called cold induced colic
3.2.0	External Medicine	外科	
3.2.1	sore and ulcer	瘡瘍	a general term for suppurative diseases of the body surface
3.2.2	sore	瘡	an abbreviation of sore and ulcer

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.3	ulcerating sore	潰瘍	a break in skin or mucous membrane with loss of surface tissue, disintegration and necrosis
3.2.4	swollen sore	腫瘍	any swelling in external diseases that has not suppurated and ruptured
3.2.5	hairline sore	髮際瘡	sore occurring at the back of the neck close to the hairline
3.2.6	seat sore	坐板瘡	sore on the buttock
3.2.7	shank sore	臙瘡	chronic ulcer on the lower leg
3.2.8	bedsore	褥瘡	an ulceration caused by prolonged pressure in a patient lying in bed for a long period of time
3.2.9	furuncle	癰	an acute localized inflammation of the skin, having a hard central core, and forming pus, also known as boil
3.2.10	mole cricket boil disease	螻蛄癰	multiple abscesses of the scalp, referring to folliculitis abscedens et suffodiens
3.2.11	furunculosis	癰病	a condition of tending to develop multiple furuncles
3.2.12	deep-rooted boil	疔	a boil with its central core deeply rooted
3.2.13	snake-head whitlow	蛇頭疔	a swollen fingertip resembling the head of a snake, referring to digital pyogenic inflammation
3.2.14	cutaneous anthrax	疫疔	an infectious disease characterized by small pruritic papular lesions of the head, face and limbs, which enlarge, ulcerate, discharge bloody serum, associated with severe systemic symptoms such as septicemia, high fever, vomiting, sweating, headache and prostration
3.2.15	abscess	癰	a pyogenic infection with localized collection of pus buried in tissues or organs
3.2.16	cervical abscess	頸癰	a pyogenic infection with abscess formation at the lateral aspect of the neck
3.2.17	axillary abscess	腋癰	a pyogenic infection with abscess formation in the axillary region

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.18	popliteal infection	委中毒	an acute pyogenic inflammation in the popliteal region
3.2.19	umbilical abscess	臍癰	a pyogenic infection with abscess formation in the umbilical region
3.2.20	gluteal abscess	臀癰	a pyogenic infection with abscess formation in the gluteal region
3.2.21	intestinal abscess	腸癰	a localized pyogenic inflammation of the intestine, referring to acute appendicitis
3.2.22	effusion	發	acute, diffuse and suppurative inflammation of the subcutaneous tissue
3.2.23	effusion of the back of the hand	手發背	acute pyogenic infection of the dorsum of the hand with diffuse swelling and inflammation
3.2.24	effusion of the dorsum of the foot	足發背	acute pyogenic infection of the dorsum of the foot with diffuse swelling and inflammation
3.2.25	carbuncle	有頭疽	a necrotizing infection of skin and subcutaneous tissue with multiple openings for the discharge of pus and sloughing of dead tissue
3.2.26	suppurative osteomyelitis	附骨疽	a suppurative inflammatory disease of bone, marked by local death and separation of tissue
3.2.27	suppurative coxitis	環跳疽	suppurative inflammation of the hip joint
3.2.28	digital gangrene	脫疽	gangrene of the extremities, especially referring to thromboangiitis
3.2.29	deep multiple abscess	流注	a secondary abscess, usually multiple, deeply located, and distant from the primary lesion, also called metastatic abscess
3.2.30	suppurative parotitis	發頤	inflammation of the parotid gland associated with suppuration
3.2.31	erysipelas	丹毒；火丹	an acute infection of the skin marked by intense local redness
3.2.32	wandering erysipelas	赤遊丹	a type of erysipelas in the newborn characterized by changing the location of the lesion either from the trunk to the extremities or from the extremities to the trunk

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.33	flowing phlegm	流痰；骨癆	chronic pyogenic infection, especially tuberculosis, of bone and joint, also known as osteoarticular tuberculosis
3.2.34	scrofula	瘰癧	chronic inflammation of the cervical lymph nodes
3.2.35	acute mastitis	乳癰	acute pyogenic inflammation of the breast
3.2.36	mastitis during pregnancy	內吹乳癰	inflammation of the breast occurring during pregnancy
3.2.37	postpartum mastitis	外吹乳癰	inflammation of the breast occurring after delivery
3.2.38	phlegmonous mastitis	乳發	a serious suppurative inflammation of the breast leading to necrosis and abscess formation
3.2.39	mammary phthisis	乳癆；乳痰	tuberculosis of the breast
3.2.40	gynecomastia	乳癰	excessive development of the breast in the children and male adults
3.2.41	mammary fistula	乳漏	an abnormal passage that leads to the cutaneous surface of the breast or areola of the nipple and exudes pus
3.2.42	thelorrhagia	乳衄	bleeding from the mammary nipple
3.2.43	mammary hyperplasia	乳癖	benign hyperplasia of mammary gland
3.2.44	cracked nipple	乳頭風	painful fissuring of the mammary nipple or areola
3.2.45	goiter	癭	enlargement of the thyroid gland, causing a swelling in the front part of the neck
3.2.46	qi goiter	氣癭	a goiter that is painless and soft to the touch and that swells and shrinks with the patient's moods
3.2.47	fleshy goiter	肉癭	a benign goiter, soft or beefy, with a slow progress, mostly referring to adenomatous or cystic goiter
3.2.48	stony goiter	石癭	enlarged thyroid, nodulated and as hard as stone, mostly referring to carcinoma of the thyroid
3.2.49	tumor	瘤	a neoplasm which persists and has no physiological use

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.50	qi tumor	氣瘤	a term for multiple pedunculated soft tumors arising superficially under the skin, becoming flat on pressing and bulging again when the pressure is removed as if they were filled with air, mostly referring to neurofibroma
3.2.51	blood tumor	血瘤	a vascular tumor composed of dilated blood vessels in the skin or subcutaneously
3.2.52	sinew tumor	筋瘤	a dilated and tortuous vein, usually in the leg
3.2.53	fleshy tumor	肉瘤	tumor of subcutaneous fatty tissue
3.2.54	bone tumor	骨瘤	tumor of the bone, either benign or malignant
3.2.55	rocky mass/cancer	巖	any malignant tumor occurring on body surface that looks and feels like rock
3.2.56	cocoon lip	繭脣	malignant tumor occurring in the labial region
3.2.57	cervical malignancy with cachexia	失榮	advanced case of malignant tumor of the cervical lymph node, either primary or metastatic, accompanied by cachexia
3.2.58	rocky mass in the breast/breast cancer	乳巖	malignant tumor occurring in the mammary region
3.2.59	eruption	疹	visible efflorescent lesions of the skin, resembling millet seeds, and marked by redness and prominence
3.2.60	macula	斑疹	a general term for any spot or area distinguishable by color from the surrounding skin
3.2.61	papule	丘疹	small conical elevation of the skin
3.2.62	pustule	膿皰	small circumscribed elevation of the skin, containing pus
3.2.63	scab	痂	outer layer of wound formed by the drying of a bodily exudate
3.2.64	subcutaneous node	結核	a general term for any round mass formed under the skin
3.2.65	polyp	息肉	a protruding growth from the mucous membrane

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.66	fistula	漏	an abnormal passage leading from an abscess or hollow organ to the body surface
3.2.67	herpes simplex	熱瘡	the development of fluid-filled vesicles on the margin of skin and mucous membrane as a concomitant of fever, usually referring to herpes simplex
3.2.68	herpes zoster	蛇丹； 蛇串瘡； 纏腰火丹； 纏腰蛇丹； 火帶瘡	an acute eruptive disease characterized by severe pain along the girdled distribution of clustered vesicles
3.2.69	verruca	疣	a horny projection on the skin, also known as a wart
3.2.70	verruca vulgaris	疣目	a lobulated hyperplastic epidermal lesion with a horny surface, usually occurring on the back of the hand, fingers or scalp
3.2.71	corn	雞眼；肉刺	a horny thickening of the skin, forming a conical mass pointing down into the corium (dermis)
3.2.72	fat sore	肥瘡	a type of ringworm characterized by formation of yellow cup-shaped crusts, referring to tinea favosa
3.2.73	tinea manuum	鵝掌風	ringworm affecting the hands, referring to chronic dermatitis with keratosis
3.2.74	tinea versicolor	紫白癜風	a non-inflammatory disorder characterized by multiple macular patches of all sizes and shapes, varying from white in pigmented skin to tan or brown in pale skin, usually seen on the neck, trunk and proximal ends of limbs that are apt to sweat
3.2.75	vitiligo	白癜風； 白駁風	a skin disease manifested as smooth white spots on various parts of the body
3.2.76	scabies	疥瘡；疥癩	a contagious skin disease caused by mites
3.2.77	urticaria	癰疹；風癰疹	an allergic disorder of the skin, marked by red or pale wheals, intermittent, associated with intense itching
3.2.78	dry ringworm	乾癬	a chronic skin disease characterized by clearly circumscribed thickening of the skin, fissuring and itching that causes scaling, mostly referring to chronic eczema or neurodermatitis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.79	oxhide lichen	牛皮癬	chronic disorder of the skin characterized by patches of itching lichenoid eruption resembling cattle hide, referring to neurodermatitis
3.2.80	psoriasis	白疖；松皮癬	a chronic skin disease marked by rounded, circumscribed, erythematous, dry, scaling patches, covered by silvery white, lamellar scales, resembling the bark of a pine tree
3.2.81	seborrheic dermatitis	面遊風	a chronic inflammation of the skin marked by excessive secretion of sebum
3.2.82	acne	粉刺；酒刺	a chronic inflammatory disease of the follicles and sebaceous glands, occurring on the face, chest and back
3.2.83	alopecia	油風	a disease marked by sudden patchy loss of hair, which usually occurs in sharply defined areas, referring to alopecia areata
3.2.84	erythema multiforme	貓眼瘡	an acute self-limited inflammatory skin disease characterized by sudden onset of erythematous macular, bullous, papular, or vesicular eruption
3.2.85	erythema nodosum	瓜藤纏	a skin disease which most often affects young women and is characterized by the development of crops of transient, inflammatory nodules that are usually tender, multiple, and bilateral, most commonly located on the shins
3.2.86	skin impediment	皮痹	a disease characterized by hardening and thickening of the skin, followed by atrophy at the late stage, referring to scleroderma
3.2.87	hemorrhoid	痔	varicose dilatation of a vein of the superior or inferior hemorrhoidal plexus
3.2.88	internal hemorrhoid	內痔	varicose dilatation of a vein of the superior hemorrhoidal plexus, situated proximal to the pectinate line
3.2.89	external hemorrhoid	外痔	varicose dilatation of a vein of the inferior hemorrhoidal plexus, situated distal to the pectinate line
3.2.90	anal fistula	肛漏；肛瘻	a fistula opening on the cutaneous surface near the anus, which may communicate with the rectum

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.2.91	prolapse of the rectum	脫肛	protrusion of the rectal mucous membrane through the anus
3.2.92	polyp of rectum	息肉痔	a protruding growth from the mucous membrane of the rectum
3.2.93	abscess of the testicle	子癰	an inflammatory infection of the testis and epididymis marked by local pain and swelling, referring to epididymitis and orchitis
3.2.94	scrotal abscess	囊癰	an acute pyogenic inflammation of the scrotum excluding the testis, marked by redness, swelling and pain of the scrotum associated with chills and fever, and followed by tightness and luster of the scrotal skin with excruciating pain
3.2.95	hydrocele	水疝	an accumulation of fluid in the testicle
3.2.96	frostbite	凍瘡；凍風	a lesion marked by swelling, numbness, cyanosis, blister or ulcerating sore attributed to exposure to cold that causes local stagnation of qi and blood
3.2.97	tetanus	破傷風；金瘡瘰	a disease characterized by sustained muscular contraction caused by pathogenic wind toxin which enters the body through a puncture wound
3.2.98	green-blue snake toxin sore	青蛇毒	inflammation of a superficial vein associated with thrombus formation, referring to superficial thrombophlebitis
3.2.99	thigh swelling	股腫	thrombus formation and inflammation of a deep-located vein, referring to deep thrombophlebitis
3.2.100	fox-creeper disease	狐惑；狐惑病	a disease characterized by erosion of the mouth, throat and genitalia, red eyes and black canthi, resembling Behcet's syndrome
3.3.0	Gynecology and Obstetrics	婦產科；產婦人科	
3.3.1	bimonthly menstruation	並月	menstruation occurring once every two months, but causing no symptoms
3.3.2	trimonthly menstruation	居經；季經	menstruation occurring once every three months, but causing no symptoms

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.3.3	annual menstruation	避年	menstruation occurring once a year, but causing no symptoms
3.3.4	five unwomanlinesses	五不女	five forms of female infertility
3.3.5	menstruation during pregnancy	激經；垢胎	regular menstruation during early pregnancy, which stops spontaneously when the fetus is fully developed
3.3.6	labor	臨產	the process of giving birth to offspring, including the expulsion of the fetus, placenta and membranes from the uterus through the vagina
3.3.7	testing labor	試胎；試月	abdominal pain that occurs for a short time and then stops, occurring during the eighth or ninth month of pregnancy
3.3.8	false labor	弄胎	intermittent abdominal pain that occurs toward the end of the term of pregnancy without backache, also known as agitated fetus
3.3.9	early leakage of amniotic fluid	試水	the condition characterized by leakage of the amniotic fluid which is not followed by childbirth
3.3.10	injured labor	傷產	premature delivery due to traumatic injury
3.3.11	puerperium	產褥	the period between childbirth and the return of the uterus to its normal condition
3.3.12	menstrual disease	月經病	a collective term for diseases characterized by abnormal interval, duration, quantity, color, quality of menses, non-physiological stoppage, as well as manifest symptoms with the periods or around menopause, the same as emmeniopathy
3.3.13	menstrual irregularities	月經不調	a general term for irregular menstruation and other menstrual complaints, such as abnormal duration, amount, color and quality of menstrual discharge
3.3.14	advanced menstruation	月經先期； 經行先期； 經早	periods that come one week or more ahead of due time, for more than two successive periods
3.3.15	delayed menstruation	月經後期； 經行後期； 經遲	periods that come one week or more after due time, for more than two successive periods

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.3.16	menstruation at irregular intervals	月經先後無定期；經亂	periods that come with an irregular cycle, more than one week early or later
3.3.17	scant menstruation	月經過少；月經澀少	menstrual discharge of less than the normal amount occurring at regular intervals
3.3.18	profuse menstruation	月經過多；經水過多；月水過多	excessive uterine bleeding occurring at regular intervals, the same as menorrhagia
3.3.19	flooding and spotting	崩漏	sudden onset of profuse uterine bleeding or incessant dripping of blood, occurring not in the regular menstruation period, the same as metrorrhagia
3.3.20	flooding	血崩；崩中	sudden massive uterine bleeding, the same as metrorrhagia
3.3.21	spotting	漏下	slight but persistent leakage of blood from the uterus, the same as metrostaxis
3.3.22	prolonged menstruation	經期延長	excessively prolonged menstruation in regular cycles, the same as menostaxis
3.3.23	intermenstrual bleeding	經間期出血	uterine bleeding occurring not in the regular menstruation period
3.3.24	amenorrhea	閉經；經閉	failure of menstruation to occur at puberty or abnormal stoppage of the menses for more than three months after menarche
3.3.25	dysmenorrhea	痛經；月經痛；經行腹痛	lower abdominal pain or referring pain to the lower back occurring around or during the menstrual period
3.3.26	inverted menstruation	倒經；逆經	discharge of blood from some part other than the vagina during the menstrual period, such as bleeding from the nose or vomiting of blood
3.3.27	distending pain in the breasts during menstruation	經行乳房脹痛	distention or sensation of fullness and pain in the breasts before, during, or after menstruation
3.3.28	moodiness during menstruation	經行情志異常	depression, gloominess, irritability and other changes of mood occurring around each menstrual period and returning to normal after the period

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.3.29	vaginal discharge	帶下	(1) normal discharge from the vagina; (2) diseases characterized by discharge from the vagina, the same as leukorrhea
3.3.30	white vaginal discharge	白帶	(1) whitish discharge from the vagina; (2) a disease marked by white discharge from the vagina
3.3.31	yellow vaginal discharge	黃帶	yellowish viscous discharge from the vagina, usually indicating the presence of pathogenic damp-heat
3.3.32	morning sickness	惡阻; 妊娠惡阻	nausea and vomiting during early pregnancy
3.3.33	uterine obstruction	胞阻; 妊娠腹痛	lower abdominal pain occurring in pregnancy, usually due to the impeded flow of qi and blood in uterine vessels
3.3.34	vaginal bleeding during pregnancy	胎漏	small amount of blood discharge through vagina during pregnancy, intermittent, but with no lumbar pain or abdominal pain
3.3.35	threatened abortion	胎動不安	continuous moving of the fetus with lumbar pain and abdominal pain or small amount of vaginal bleeding
3.3.36	habitual abortion	滑胎	spontaneous abortion in three or more consecutive pregnancies
3.3.37	early abortion	墮胎	spontaneous abortion occurring within the first twelve weeks of pregnancy
3.3.38	late abortion	小產	spontaneous abortion occurring after the twelfth week and before the twenty-eighth week of pregnancy
3.3.39	pseudopregnancy	鬼胎	abnormal pregnancy resulting in a mass in the uterus resembling a bunch of grapes, referring to hydatidiform mole
3.3.40	hydramnios	子滿; 胎水腫滿	that causing abnormally enlarged abdomen, sensation of fullness and dyspnea
3.3.41	pregnancy swelling	子腫; 妊娠腫脹	edema of the face and limbs occurring in the late stage of pregnancy
3.3.42	pregnancy vexation	子煩; 妊娠心煩	depression or irritability occurring during pregnancy

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.3.43	dizziness in pregnancy	子暈； 妊娠眩暈	dizziness with blurred vision or even fainting occurring in pregnancy, the same as gravid vertigo
3.3.44	pregnancy suspension	子懸； 胎氣上逆	feeling of pressure in the abdomen and thorax, even with dyspnea and irritability, during pregnancy, the same as gravid oppression or upward flow of fetus qi
3.3.45	eclampsia of pregnancy	子癇； 妊娠癇證	sudden onset of convulsions and loss of consciousness occurring in a pregnant or puerperal woman with headache and vertigo
3.3.46	cough during pregnancy	子嗽； 妊娠咳嗽	persistent cough during pregnancy, the same as gravid cough
3.3.47	strangury of pregnancy	子淋； 妊娠小便淋痛	difficult and painful discharge of urine during pregnancy
3.3.48	post-term pregnancy	過期不產	pregnancy extended beyond the expected date of delivery
3.3.49	difficult delivery	難產；產難	slow and difficult delivery
3.3.50	retention of placenta	胞衣不下； 息胞	retarded delivery of the afterbirth
3.3.51	dead fetus in the uterus	子死腹中	retention of a dead fetus in the uterus beyond the period of normal gestation
3.3.52	lochia	惡露	vaginal discharge in the puerperium
3.3.53	retention of the lochia	惡露不下	absence of postpartum vaginal discharge
3.3.54	persistent flow of the lochia	惡露不絕； 惡露不止	abnormally prolonged discharge of lochia for more than 3 weeks after childbirth, the same as lochiorrhea
3.3.55	oligogalactia	缺乳	deficiency of milk secretion during lactation, the same as hypogalactia
3.3.56	agalactia	乳汁不行； 乳汁不通	no milk secretion following childbirth
3.3.57	galactorrhea	乳汁自出； 乳溢	spontaneous flow of milk irrespective of nursing
3.3.58	postpartum galactorrhea	產後乳汁自出	spontaneous flow of milk irrespective of nursing following childbirth

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.3.59	infertility	不孕	lack of capacity to produce offspring
3.3.60	lower abdominal mass (in woman)	腸覃	formation of mass in the lower abdomen with regular menstrual cycle
3.3.61	stony conglomeration	石瘕	a mass as hard as stone formed in the uterus
3.3.62	shifted bladder	轉胞	a disease marked by acute pain below the umbilicus associated with anuresis
3.3.63	prolapse of the uterus	陰挺；陰脫	downward displacement of the uterus, even with the entire uterus outside the vaginal orifice
3.3.64	pudendal itch	陰癢	itching of the female external genitalia or vagina
3.3.65	pudendal swelling	陰腫	painful swelling of the female external genitalia
3.3.66	pudendal sore	陰瘡	sore or ulcer in the female external genital region
3.3.67	pudendal pain	陰痛	pain of the female pudendum, including the vestibule of the vagina and vaginal orifice
3.3.68	vaginal flatus	陰吹	noisy expulsion of gas from the vagina
3.3.69	hysteria	臟躁	a paroxysmal mental disease marked by depression and melancholy, irritability, lack of control over emotions, sadness with an urge to weep, and sighing for no apparent reason
3.4.0	Pediatrics	兒科；小兒科	
3.4.1	fetal weakness	胎怯；胎弱	congenital weak constitution
3.4.2	fetal heat	胎熱	a group of diseases with heat manifestations occurring in the newborn due to contraction of heat toxin in the fetal stage
3.4.3	depressed fontanel	囟陷	sunken fontanel in an infant
3.4.4	bulging fontanel	囟填	outward swelling of the fontanel in an infant
3.4.5	growth fever	變蒸	a physiological phenomenon due to the growth and development of the child
3.4.6	dribbling	滯頤；小兒多涎	salivation in an infant with wet cheeks

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.4.7	milk regurgitation	溢乳	vomiting of milk due to improper feeding
3.4.8	neonatal cough	百晬內嗽	cough with sputum and dyspnea occurring in a newborn within one hundred days after birth
3.4.9	infantile asthma	小兒哮喘	an infantile disease characterized by paroxysmal labored breathing accompanied by a whistling sound
3.4.10	horse-spleen wind	馬脾風	critical case of asthma and lung distension in children with a sudden attack
3.4.11	food accumulation	食積	a diseased state characterized by the accumulation of undigested food in the stomach and intestines, causing abdominal distension and pain, vomiting, diarrhea and anorexia
3.4.12	(infantile) malnutrition	疳；疳癆	a chronic nutritional disorder of infants with emaciation and weakness
3.4.13	mild (infantile) malnutrition	疳氣	a mild case of infantile malnutrition at the early stage
3.4.14	mild (infantile) malnutrition with accumulation	疳積	infantile malnutrition at the intermediate stage, accompanied by food accumulation and stagnation in the stomach and intestines
3.4.15	T-shaped malnutrition	丁奚疳	a severe case of infantile malnutrition with an emaciated T-shaped figure
3.4.16	dryness (infantile) malnutrition	乾疳	a case of infantile malnutrition at the extreme stage with drying up of fluid and blood, marked by a dry and shriveled body worn
3.4.17	blood (infantile) malnutrition	血疳	a case of infantile malnutrition marked by blood deficiency
3.4.18	spleen (infantile) malnutrition	脾疳；食疳	a case of infantile malnutrition due to debilitation of the spleen and stomach with accumulation of dampness-heat, the same as food malnutrition
3.4.19	heart (infantile) malnutrition	心疳；驚疳	a case of infantile malnutrition due to debilitation of the spleen and stomach with depressed heat in the heart meridian, the same as fright malnutrition

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.4.20	liver (infantile) malnutrition	肝疳；筋疳	a case of infantile malnutrition due to debilitation of the spleen and stomach with depressed heat in the liver meridian, the same as sinew malnutrition
3.4.21	lung (infantile) malnutrition	肺疳；氣疳	a case of infantile malnutrition due to debilitation of the spleen and stomach with depressed heat damaging the lung, the same as qi malnutrition
3.4.22	kidney (infantile) malnutrition	腎疳；骨疳	a case of infantile malnutrition ascribed to a congenital defect with weak constitution or chronic spleen disorder that involves the kidney, resulting in dual deficiency of the spleen and kidney, the same as bone malnutrition
3.4.23	eye (infantile) malnutrition	眼疳	attack of liver fire to the eyes in a malnourished child
3.4.24	ascaris (infantile) malnutrition	蛔疳	malnutrition due to ascaris infestation
3.4.25	lactational malnutrition	哺乳疳	malnutrition of an infant due to improper breast-feeding
3.4.26	(infantile) nutritional edema	疳腫脹	infantile malnutrition marked by edema and abdominal distention
3.4.27	anorexia	厭食	a diseased state in children characterized by loss of appetite for food
3.4.28	thrush	鵝口瘡；雪口	a disease marked by white patches on the buccal mucosa and tongue
3.4.29	aphtha	口瘡	small painful oral ulcer
3.4.30	gingival eruption	馬牙	sporadic eruption of small yellowish spots on the gums in the newborn
3.4.31	wooden tongue	木舌	swollen, hardened tongue, stiff as a piece of wood, seen in glossitis of the newborn
3.4.32	teeth grinding	齙齒	noisy grinding of teeth during sleep
3.4.33	infantile convulsion	驚風	infantile diseases marked by convulsions and loss of consciousness
3.4.34	convulsion with uplifted eyes	天釣	infantile convulsion with high fever, tossed head and upward staring eyes

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.4.35	convulsion with abdominal pain	內釣	infantile convulsion mainly manifested as visceral contraction and abdominal colic
3.4.36	acute infantile convulsion	急驚風	infantile convulsion of acute onset, accompanied by high fever and loss of consciousness
3.4.37	chronic infantile convulsion	慢驚風	repeated infantile convulsion of gradual onset, associated with loss of consciousness or paralysis and poor prognosis
3.4.38	chronic spleen wind	慢脾風	a critical case of chronic infantile convulsion marked by yang debilitation and yin exuberance, usually occurring after protracted vomiting and diarrhea with spleen qi deficiency and stirring of liver wind
3.4.39	epilepsy	癲癇；癲疾； 癇病	a disease characterized by temporary loss of consciousness with foaming at the mouth and convulsions of the limbs, and return to normal after the episode
3.4.40	fright epilepsy	驚癇	epileptic seizure induced by fright
3.4.41	wind epilepsy	風癇	epileptic seizure induced by liver wind stirring internally
3.4.42	phlegm epilepsy	痰癇	epileptic seizure induced by depressed qi and bound phlegm
3.4.43	tortoise back	龜背	back shaped like a tortoise-shell due to kyphosis
3.4.44	pigeon chest	龜胸；鷄胸	deformity of the chest in which the sternum is prominent, like the chicken breast, also known as pectus carinatum
3.4.45	ununited skull	解顱	abnormal accumulation of excess fluid within the skull marked by enlargement of the head and retarded closure of the skull sutures, the same as hydrocephalus
3.4.46	five retardations	五遲	retarded development in infants covering standing, walking, hair-growth, tooth eruption and speaking
3.4.47	five limpnesses/ flaccidity	五軟	flaccidity of the neck, nape, extremities, muscles and mastication as striking features of delayed growth and mental retardation in infants

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.4.48	five stiffnesses	五硬	stiffness of the hand, foot, waist, flesh and neck in the newborn due to a congenital defect
3.4.49	summer non-acclimatization	疰夏	children's disease usually occurring in summer, with symptoms of lassitude, dyspepsia, and abnormal bowel movements
3.4.50	smallpox	痘瘡；天花	an acute highly contagious febrile disease characterized by skin eruptions with pustules, sloughing, and scar formation, the same as variola
3.4.51	measles	麻疹	an acute epidemic eruptive disease marked by fever and generalized maculopapular rash preceded by cough, nasal discharge, profuse tearing, and white speckles inside the mouth
3.4.52	exanthem	痧	a general term for skin eruption or rash, but usually referring to measles
3.4.53	rubella	風疹；風痧（病）	a contagious eruptive disease caused by seasonal wind-heat or wind-heat toxin, and marked by mild fever, followed by enlargement of postauricular and suboccipital lymph nodes, and the appearance of pink maculo-papular rash that begins on the head and spreads to become generalized
3.4.54	scarlatina	喉痧； 爛喉丹痧； 丹痧；疫痧； 爛喉風	an acute seasonal infectious disease marked by swelling and erosion of the throat, erythematous rash and raspberry tongue
3.4.55	chickenpox	水痘；水疱； 水花；水瘡	an acute contagious disease caused by seasonal toxin and manifested by fever and bursts of macular and papular eruptions followed by incrustation but no scar formation, the same as varicella
3.4.56	mumps	疳腮；腮腫	an epidemic disease caused by wind-heat toxin and characterized by painful swelling of one or both parotid glands
3.4.57	diphtheria	白喉；白纏喉	an acute infectious disease characterized by fever, sore throat and the formation of white false membrane attached firmly to the pharynx, larynx and nose
3.4.58	whooping cough	頓咳	an acute contagious infection of the respiratory system with characteristic paroxysmal cough, consisting of a deep inspiration, followed by a series of quick, short

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			coughs which end with a long shrill and whooping inspiration, referring to pertussis
3.4.59	night crying	夜啼	morbid night crying in babies, but quiet at daytime
3.4.60	night crying due to fright	客忤夜啼	night crying in babies caused by fright
3.4.61	fright seizure	客忤	a seizure of fright that causes vomiting, abdominal pain, and even convulsions
3.4.62	neonatal jaundice	胎黃；胎疸	yellow discoloration of the skin and sclera seen in the newborn
3.4.63	fetal redness	胎赤	abnormal redness of the skin in a newborn, often due to affection by toxic heat at the fetal stage, the same as erythroderma neonatorum
3.4.64	umbilical wind	臍風	a disease of the newborn characterized by cyanotic lips, lockjaw, generalized tonic spasm and tetanic convulsions, referring to neonatal tetanus
3.4.65	umbilical dampness	臍濕	a condition of wetness of and possible exudation from the umbilicus after the umbilical cord has been shed, referring to omphalorrhea
3.4.66	umbilical sores	臍瘡	redness and swelling of the umbilicus or ulceration spreading around the umbilicus with purulent exudation
3.4.67	umbilical hernia	臍疝；臍突	a type of abdominal hernia in which part of the intestine protrudes at the umbilicus and is covered with skin, sometimes red and swollen
3.5.0	Ophthalmology	眼科	
3.5.1	photophobia	羞明	abnormal fear of light or painful sensitiveness to light with lacrimation
3.5.2	dim vision	目暗	hazy and indistinct vision
3.5.3	corneal opacity	翳	cloudy opacity of the cornea
3.5.4	vision obstruction	障	a general term for any eye disease with visual disturbance
3.5.5	blindness	目盲	lack or loss of ability to see

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.5.6	sty	鍼眼	a small furuncle occurring on the eyelid, in the shape and size of wheat grain
3.5.7	phlegm node of the eyelid	胞生痰核	a small lump formed on the eyelid, without redness or pain, mostly referring to chalazion
3.5.8	trachoma	椒瘡	an eye disease marked by innumerable granulations, red and hard, shaped like Chinese prickly ash, accumulating on the conjunctival surfaces
3.5.9	conjunctival folliculitis	粟瘡	an eye disease marked by formation on the conjunctival surface of numerous follicles in the shape and size of millet
3.5.10	marginal blepharitis	瞼弦赤爛	inflammation and ulceration of the margin of the eyelid
3.5.11	wind red sore	風赤瘡痍	disease of the eyelid characterized by redness of the palpebral skin with vesicles which turn into erosion after rupture
3.5.12	inflammatory swelling of the eyelid	胞腫如桃	severe swelling of the eyelid with redness resembling a ripe peach
3.5.13	non-inflammatory edema of the eyelid	胞虛如球	severe swelling of the eyelid resembling a soft ball, but with no change in the local skin color, and not painful on touch
3.5.14	blepharoptosis	上胞下垂	drooping of the upper eyelid, impairing the vision if it covers the pupil
3.5.15	drooping eyelid	瞼廢	serious blepharoptosis
3.5.16	twitching eyelid	胞輪振跳	involuntary twitching of the eyelid
3.5.17	trichiasis	倒睫拳毛	inversion of the margin of the eyelid with ingrowing eyelashes, causing pain of the eye, lacrimation and photophobia
3.5.18	heat tearing	熱淚	dacryorrhea of heat type, occurring in inflammatory eye diseases
3.5.19	cold tearing	冷淚	dacryorrhea of cold type, with no redness, pain or opacity of the eye

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.5.20	dacryopyorrhea	漏睛； 漏睛膿出； 眥漏	chronic inflammation of the lacrimal sac with frequent outflow of fluid or pus from the inner canthus
3.5.21	pterygium	胬肉攀睛	triangular fleshy mass occurring at the canthus and covering a part of the cornea
3.5.22	sudden attack of wind-heat on the eye	暴風客熱	acute inflammation of the white of the eye with a sudden onset, due to external contraction of wind-heat
3.5.23	epidemic conjunctivitis	天行赤眼	a highly contagious eye disease characterized by sudden onset of inflammation of the white of the eye, usually bilateral, and quickly spreading among the community
3.5.24	acute conjunctivitis with nebula	暴赤生翳	an acute epidemic inflammatory disease of the conjunctiva and cornea with redness, swelling, pain, photophobia and lacrimation, followed by clusters of nebula formation
3.5.25	phlyctenular conjunctivitis	金疳；金瘍	a variety of conjunctivitis marked by the presence of small vesicles, each surrounded by a reddened zone, also known as follicular conjunctivitis
3.5.26	acute scleritis	火疳；火瘍	an eye disease caused by excessive fire which invades the inner surface of the white of the eye, resulting in bulging of localized dark violet patches, also referring to episcleritis
3.5.27	invasion of white membrane into the cornea	白膜侵睛	a special type of phlyctenular conjunctivitis marked by presence of small vesicles close to the cornea with resultant white membranous substance entering the cornea
3.5.28	bluish discoloration of sclera	白睛青藍	bluish discoloration of the bulbar conjunctiva surrounding the cornea after recurrent inflammation of the sclera with violet bulging
3.5.29	subconjunctival hemorrhage	白睛溢血	extravasations beneath the superficial membrane of the white of the eye
3.5.30	superficial punctate keratitis	聚星障	an eye disease characterized by the appearance of multiple fine drops of opacity on the cornea
3.5.31	corneal ulcer	花翳白陷	an eye disease characterized by ulceration of a corneal nebula looking like a flower

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.5.32	purulent keratitis	凝脂翳	severe keratitis with purulent disintegration of the cornea
3.5.33	drooping pannus	赤膜下垂	a membranous vascular tissue extending downward into the cornea, most frequently occurring in cases of trachoma
3.5.34	keratic pannus	血翳包睛	superficial vascularization covering the entire cornea
3.5.35	pupillary metamorphosis	瞳神乾缺；瞳人乾缺	loss of the normal round shape of the pupil, usually seen in chronic iridocyclitis
3.5.36	greenish glaucoma	綠風內障	an acute eye disease characterized by hardening of the eyeball, drastic impairment of vision, dilation of the pupil with greenish discoloration, and severe headache and eye pain
3.5.37	cataract	圓翳內障	a chronic eye disease marked by opacity in the lens, impairing vision or causing blindness
3.5.38	traumatic cataract	驚震內障	cataract resulting from injury to the eye
3.5.39	congenital cataract	胎患內障	opacity of the lens capsule of the eye at birth
3.5.40	hyalosis	雲霧移睛	presence of cloudy or star-shaped opacities in the vitreous humor
3.5.41	sudden blindness	暴盲	a severe eye disease characterized by sudden loss of vision while no abnormal appearance of the eye can be found
3.5.42	bluish blindness	青盲	a group of eye diseases characterized by increasing impairment of vision to total blindness with no abnormal appearance of the external eye, referring to optic nerve atrophy
3.5.43	night blindness	雀目；雀盲	failure of vision at night or in a dim light
3.5.44	retinopathy pigmentosa	高風內障	a progressive degenerative disease characterized by night blindness, constriction of the visual field, and eventual blindness
3.5.45	foreign body in the eye	異物入目	small foreign body attached to or embedded in the surface of the eyeball
3.5.46	collision eye injury	撞擊傷目	eye injury due to a knock with no ruptured wound

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.5.47	ruptured wound of the eyeball	眞睛破損	penetrating injury to the eyeball or other eye injury with a ruptured wound
3.5.48	(nutritional) keratomalacia	疳眼	an eye disease resulting from infantile malnutrition, characterized by dryness of the eyeball, turbidness, softening and ulceration of the cornea
3.5.49	paralytic strabismus	風牽偏視	sudden onset of squint with impaired movement of the eye and double vision attributed to an attack of wind
3.5.50	fixed protruding eye	鵠眼凝睛	a sign marked by fixation and protrusion of the eyeball like a falcon's eye
3.5.51	sudden protrusion of the eyeball	突起睛高	an acute eye disease characterized by painful protrusion and distension of the eyeball, often referring to purulent ophthalmia
3.5.52	distention of eyeball	睛脹	a synonym for sudden protrusion of the eyeball
3.5.53	eye discharge	眵	secretion of the eye, thin or mucilaginous or even pus-like
3.5.54	deviated eye and mouth	口眼喎斜	deviation of one eye and the mouth to one side with the eye unable to close and salivation from the homolateral corner of the mouth
3.6.0	Otorhinolaryngostomatology	耳鼻喉口齒科	
3.6.1	ear boil	耳疔	boil of the external auditory meatus
3.6.2	ear sore	耳瘡	diffuse inflammation of the external auditory meatus
3.6.3	eczema of external ear	旋耳瘡；月蝕瘡	skin lesion characterized by redness, itching, exudation, oozing, vesiculation and crusting surrounding the ear
3.6.4	impacted cerumen	耵耳	accumulated cerumen forming a solid mass that clogs the external auditory meatus
3.6.5	ear distension	耳脹	a disease of the ear characterized by feeling of distension with pain in the ear and impaired hearing, often referring to acute non-suppurative otitis media
3.6.6	purulent ear	膿耳	a disease of the ear characterized by perforation of the tympanic membrane and discharge of pus, referring to otopyorrhea

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.6.7	postauricular infection	耳根毒	a disease marked by pain and tenderness at the mastoid region, local swelling and even rupture with discharge of pus
3.6.8	postauricular abscess	耳根癰	postauricular infection with formation of abscess
3.6.9	ear pile	耳痔	nodular papilloma of the external auditory meatus
3.6.10	ear polyp	耳菌；耳蕈	polyp of the external auditory meatus
3.6.11	ear protuberance	耳挺	a long-stemmed papilloma of the external auditory meatus
3.6.12	ear fistula	耳瘻	fistula anterior or posterior to the auricle of the ear
3.6.13	hardness of hearing	重聽	decreased sense of hearing or distorted hearing
3.6.14	nasal boil	鼻疔	boil occurring at the nasal vestibule, or at the tip or wing of the nose
3.6.15	dry nose	鼻燥；鼻乾	dryness in the nose
3.6.16	nasal sore	鼻瘡；鼻疳	a disease marked by recurrent inflammation of the nasal vestibule with ulceration, crusting, itching and pain, the same as nasal vestibulitis
3.6.17	atrophic rhinitis	鼻槁	a disease of the nose characterized by dry mucous membrane with atrophy, enlarged nasal passages and foul smell
3.6.18	allergic rhinitis	鼻鼽；鼻嚏	a disease characterized by sudden and recurrent attacks of nasal itching, sneezing, thin discharge and stuffy nose
3.6.19	nasal polyp	鼻痔；鼻息肉；鼻菌	a pendulated growth in the nasal cavity
3.6.20	sinusitis	鼻淵；腦漏	a nasal disease characterized by persistent excessive flow of turbid nasal discharge
3.6.21	tonsillitis	乳蛾；喉蛾	inflammation of the palatine tonsils, sometimes covered with a yellowish white secretion like milk
3.6.22	chronic tonsillitis	石蛾	hard hypertrophied palatine tonsils in children with no inflammation

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.6.23	throat impediment	喉痹	redness, swelling and pain or itching of the throat, with impediment to swallowing
3.6.24	throat abscess	喉癰	abscess of the throat, including retropharyngeal abscess and peritonsillar abscess
3.6.25	ominous abscess of the throat	猛疽	a severe case of laryngopharyngeal abscess that causes obstruction of breathing and is often fatal if not properly treated in time
3.6.26	lichenoid erosion of the throat	喉癬	the ulceration of the laryngopharyngeal mucosa resembling tinea, often referring to laryngeal tuberculosis
3.6.27	throat cancer	喉菌；喉巖	malignant tumor of the throat in the shape of mushroom
3.6.28	bone stuck in the throat	骨鯁	a condition in which fish or splintered animal bones become lodged in the throat
3.6.29	tumor of the throat	喉瘤	new growth of the throat
3.6.30	throat wind	喉風	a general term for acute conditions of swelling and pain in the throat
3.6.31	fulminant throat wind	緊喉風	an acute throat infection manifested as swelling and pain in the throat, difficulty in breathing and swallowing
3.6.32	entwining throat wind	纏喉風	a severe throat infection with redness entwining the fauces in the interior and swelling surrounding the neck at the exterior
3.6.33	obstructive throat wind	鎖喉風	acute infection of throat with local pain and swelling, dyspnea, difficulty in speaking and swallowing, and lockjaw
3.6.34	double tongue	重舌	protruding sublingual swelling and redness, making a shape of doubled tongue
3.6.35	ankyloglossia	絆舌	restricted movement of the tongue, often resulting from short lingual frenulum
3.6.36	tongue abscess	舌癰	suppurative inflammation of the tongue

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.6.37	tongue boil	舌疔	a pustule on the tongue characterized by localized painful and hard swelling, associated with chills and fever
3.6.38	tongue sore	舌瘡	a sore occurring on the tongue with local cracking, swelling and discharge of blood, accompanied by foul breath and constipation
3.6.39	tongue cancer	舌菌	cancer of the tongue like a mushroom with a big head and thin stalk
3.6.40	phlegm cyst	痰包; 舌下痰包	a swelling beneath the tongue shaped like a pouch, smooth and soft to touch, containing thick yellowish fluid
3.6.41	toothache	牙痛	pain in a tooth or teeth
3.6.42	dental caries	齲齒	a dental disease marked by decay of the tooth with localized destruction and cavity formation
3.6.43	gum atrophy	牙宣; 食床; 齒挺; 齒齦宣露	exposure of the root surfaces of teeth due to the drawing back of gingivae from the necks of teeth
3.6.44	ulcerative gingivitis	牙疳	a disease marked by painful inflammation of the gums with necrosis and fetid discharge
3.6.45	oral erosion	口糜; 口疳	a condition marked by multiple spots of erosion on the buccal mucosa
3.6.46	maxillary osteomyelitis	骨槽風	an inflammatory disease of the jaw bone characterized by local death and separation of tissue with pus discharge
3.6.47	exfoliative cheilitis	唇風	inflammation of the lip with cracks and exudation
3.6.48	lip pustule	唇疔	furuncle on the lip or at the corner of the mouth, small but deep-rooted, with pustule formation
3.6.49	lip cancer	唇菌	a mushroom-like cancer occurring on the lip
3.6.50	deviated mouth	口僻	a diseased state characterized by skewing of the mouth to one side of the face with drooling from the corner of the mouth and inability to close the eye

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.7.0	Orthopedics and Traumatology	骨傷科	
3.7.1	stiff neck	落枕	acute inflammation or sprain of the soft tissue of the neck
3.7.2	sinew injury	筋傷；傷筋	injury of the subcutaneous tissue, including muscle, sinew, tendon sheath, ligament, joint capsule, synovial bursa, intervertebral disc, peripheral nerve, and blood vessel
3.7.3	ruptured sinew	筋斷	complete or partial disruption of muscle and tendon
3.7.4	contracted sinew	筋縮	permanent shortening of muscle with deformity and dysfunction
3.7.5	thickened sinew	筋粗	thickening of muscle tendon after injury
3.7.6	hypertonicity of the sinews	筋攣	muscular spasm and contracture of a limb, with difficulty in relaxation and movement
3.7.7	impediment of the sinew	筋痹	an impediment disease caused by wind-cold-dampness chiefly involving the sinews
3.7.8	sprain	扭傷	soft tissue injury attributed to a sudden or violent twist or wrench of a joint
3.8.0	Others	其他	
3.8.1	disease produced by viscus	所生病	disease of a certain meridian/channel induced by the disease or syndrome of the relevant visceral organ, also known as viscus-induced disease
3.8.2	disease transmitted by meridian	是動病	disease of a certain visceral organ induced by the disease or syndrome of the relevant meridian/channel, also known as meridian/channel-induced disease
3.8.3	six-meridian disease	六經病	a general term for diseases of greater yang, yang brightness, lesser yang, greater yin, lesser yin and reverting yin
3.8.4	exterior cold disease induced from the spleen affected by cold	脾受寒表寒病	exterior cold disease induced by cold affecting the spleen in a lesser yang person

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
3.8.5	interior febrile disease induced from the stomach affected by heat	胃受熱裏熱病	interior febrile disease induced by heat affecting the stomach in a lesser yang person
3.8.6	exterior febrile disease induced from the kidney affected by heat	腎受熱表熱病	exterior febrile disease induced by heat affecting the kidney in a lesser yin person
3.8.7	interior cold disease induced from the stomach affected by cold	胃受寒裏寒病	interior cold disease induced by cold affecting the stomach in a lesser yin person
3.8.8	interior febrile disease induced from the liver affected by heat	肝受熱裏熱病	interior febrile disease induced by heat affecting the liver in a greater yin person
3.8.9	exterior cold disease induced from the stomach duct affected by cold	胃脘受寒表寒病	exterior cold disease induced by cold affecting the stomach duct in a greater yin person
3.8.10	lumbar vertebrae disease induced by exopathogen	外感腰脊病	lumbar vertebral disease induced by external pathogen in a greater yang person
3.8.11	small intestine disease induced by endopathogen	內觸小腸病	small intestine disease induced by endogenous pathogen in a greater yang person

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.0.0	THERAPEUTICS	治療學	
4.1.0	therapeutic principle	治則	a general rule that should be followed in treating disease
4.1.1	treat the root	治本；本治法	treat the primary aspect of a disease
4.1.2	treat the tip	治標；標治法	treat the secondary aspect of a disease
4.1.3	routine treatment	正治；正治法	use of medicines opposite in nature to the disease, e.g., treating heat syndrome with medicines cold in nature
4.1.4	treat cold with heat	寒者熱之	treat cold conditions with warming or heating method
4.1.5	treat heat with cold	熱者寒之	treat heat conditions with cold or cooling method
4.1.6	treat deficiency by tonification	虛則補之	treat deficiency conditions by supplementation or tonification
4.1.7	treat excess by purgation	實則瀉之	treat excess conditions by purgation or reduction
4.1.8	paradoxical treatment	反治；反治法	use of medicines similar in nature to the disease
4.1.9	treating cold with cold	寒因寒用	treating pseudo-cold symptoms with medicines cool or cold in nature
4.1.10	treating heat with heat	熱因熱用	treating pseudo-heat symptoms with medicines warm or hot in nature
4.1.11	treating the unstopped by unstopping	通因通用	applying unstopping method to unstopped conditions , e.g., using purgation to treat diarrhea caused by food stagnation
4.1.12	treating the stopped by stopping	塞因塞用	applying stopping method to stopped conditions , e.g., using tonification to treat constipation due to qi deficiency
4.1.13	reinforce the healthy qi and eliminate the pathogenic factors	扶正祛邪	two general principles of treatment — to reinforce the patient's healthy qi and to eliminating the invading pathogenic factors, which can be applied separately or in combination according to the particular condition of the case

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.1.14	treat with both elimination and reinforcement	攻補兼施	a principle of treatment with eliminating and reinforcing methods used in combination, suitable for patients with a weak constitution suffering from an excess syndrome
4.1.15	erroneous treatment	誤治	incorrect treatment that may be ineffective and/or that results in harmful effects
4.1.16	same treatment for different diseases	異病同治	applying the same method of treatment to patients with different kinds of disease but have the same pattern/syndrome
4.1.17	different treatments for the same disease	同病異治	applying different methods of treatment to the same kind of disease but have different patterns/syndromes
4.1.18	treating the acute before the chronic	先急後緩	the acute condition should be treated prior to the chronic condition
4.1.19	treating the exterior before the interior	先表後裏	the exterior syndrome should be first treated and then the interior syndrome
4.1.20	modified formula	加減方	a formula derived from the original one with some addition or reduction of ingredients
4.1.21	combined formula	合方	a compound formula composed of two or more formulae in combination
4.2.0	Method of Treatment	治法	
4.2.1	method of treatment	治法	any specific intervention derived from a principle of treatment
4.2.2	eight methods	八法	a collective term for diaphoresis, emesis, purgation, mediation, warming, clearing, tonification and resolution
4.2.3	reinforce the healthy qi	扶正	a general term for treating disease by strengthening the healthy qi of the body
4.2.4	eliminate the pathogenic factors	祛邪	a general term for treating disease by dispelling the pathogenic factors from the body
4.2.5	promoting sweating	汗法	one of the eight principal therapeutic methods used for releasing exterior pattern/syndrome, also called diaphoresis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.6	release the exterior	解表	a general term for dispelling pathogenic factors from the exterior portion of the body
4.2.7	promote sweating to release the exterior	發汗解表	a therapeutic method to release exterior pattern/syndrome by using diaphoretics
4.2.8	release the exterior with pungent-warm	辛溫解表	a therapeutic method to treat wind-cold exterior pattern/syndrome by using pungent-warm exterior-releasing medicinals
4.2.9	release the exterior with pungent-cool	辛涼解表	a therapeutic method to release wind-heat exterior pattern/syndrome by using pungent-cool medicinals
4.2.10	release the flesh	解肌	a general term for dispelling pathogens from the superficial flesh
4.2.11	outthrust through the exterior	透表	a therapeutic method used to expel pathogens from the body in the treatment of externally contracted disease at the early stage with an exterior pattern/syndrome
4.2.12	outthrust rashes	透疹	a therapeutic method used to promote skin eruption in measles for preventing complications, the same as promoting eruption
4.2.13	dispel wind	祛風	a general term for relieving external wind pattern/syndrome
4.2.14	disperse wind	疏風	a therapeutic method used to disperse external wind pathogen for releasing exterior pattern/syndrome
4.2.15	dissipate cold	散寒	a therapeutic method of dissipating external cold pathogen
4.2.16	disperse wind and discharge heat	疏風泄熱	a therapeutic method to treat externally contracted wind with interior heat by using exterior-releasing medicinals and heat-clearing medicinals in combination
4.2.17	disperse from the exterior and moisten dryness	疏表潤燥	a therapeutic method of using exterior-releasing and dryness-moistening medicinals, indicated in the treatment of wind-dryness attacking the exterior
4.2.18	disperse wind-heat	疏散風熱	a therapeutic method to treat external wind-heat contraction by using pungent-cool exterior-releasing medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.19	reinforce the healthy qi and release the exterior	扶正解表	a therapeutic method of combined use of exterior-releasing medicinals and tonifying medicinals to treat exterior pattern/syndrome occurring in a deficiency condition
4.2.20	diffuse the lung	宣肺	a therapeutic method to diffuse the lung and restore the normal qi movement of the lung
4.2.21	diffuse the lung to suppress cough and to calm panting	宣肺止咳平喘	restoring the normal qi movement of the lung to suppress cough and to calm panting
4.2.22	diffuse the lung to suppress cough	宣肺止咳	restoring the normal qi movement of the lung to suppress cough
4.2.23	diffuse the lung to calm panting	宣肺平喘	restoring the normal qi movement of the lung to calm panting
4.2.24	diffuse the lung to resolve phlegm	宣肺化痰	restoring the normal qi movement of the lung to expel the phlegm
4.2.25	relieve the stuffy nose	通鼻; 通(鼻)竅	a therapeutic method that relieves nasal obstruction
4.2.26	soothe the throat	利咽	a therapeutic method that relieves a sore throat
4.2.27	clearing method	清法	one of the eight principal therapeutic methods by administering medicinals of cool or cold nature to treat fire or heat pattern/syndrome
4.2.28	clear heat	清熱	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat
4.2.29	purge fire	瀉火	a therapeutic method of removing pathogenic fire by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.30	clear the qi aspect	清氣; 清氣泄熱	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat from the qi aspect
4.2.31	clear the heart	清心	a therapeutic method to treat pathogen entering the heart or pericardium in a warm disease
4.2.32	clear the pericardium	清宮	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat from the pericardium
4.2.33	clear the nutrient aspect	清營	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat from the nutrient aspect

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.34	purge the heart	瀉心	a therapeutic method to remove intense pathogenic heat or fire from the heart by using purgative medicines
4.2.35	purge the lung	瀉肺	a therapeutic method of purging the lung of fire by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.36	purge the liver	瀉肝	a therapeutic method of purging the liver of fire by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.37	clear the qi aspect and cool the nutrient aspect	清氣涼營； 氣營兩清	combined use of qi-clearing and nutrient-clearing methods to treat pathogenic heat in qi and nutrient aspects
4.2.38	clear the nutrient aspect and cool the blood aspect	清營涼血	combined use of therapeutic methods of nutrient-clearing and blood-cooling methods to treat pathogenic heat in the nutrient and blood aspects
4.2.39	clear the nutrient aspect and promote eruption	清營透疹	a combined therapeutic method of clearing the nutrient of heat and promoting skin eruption
4.2.40	clear heat to cool the blood	清熱涼血； 涼血	a therapeutic method of using heat-clearing and blood-cooling medicinals to treat blood heat pattern/syndrome
4.2.41	expel from the nutrient aspect through the qi aspect	透營轉氣； 透熱轉氣	a therapeutic method of outthrusting pathogenic heat from nutrient aspect to qi aspect and then expelling it out of the body
4.2.42	clear the nutrient aspect and eliminate stasis	清營祛瘀	a therapeutic method of jointly using heat-clearing detoxicating medicinals and blood-activating stasis-resolving medicinals to treat pattern/syndrome of heat toxin contending with blood
4.2.43	clear heat and engender fluid	清熱生津	a therapeutic method of using heat-clearing medicinals together with fluid-producing medicinals for treating fire or heat pattern/syndrome with fluid damage
4.2.44	clear heart fire	清心火	a therapeutic method of clearing the heart fire to treat exuberant heart fire pattern/syndrome
4.2.45	clear liver fire	清肝火	a therapeutic method of clearing the liver fire to treat exuberant liver fire pattern/syndrome and pattern/syndrome of liver fire flaming upward
4.2.46	clear the liver	清肝	a therapeutic method of clearing the liver heat or fire

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.47	clear heat and drain dampness	清熱利濕	a therapeutic method of clearing heat and removing dampness through diuresis to treat accumulation of dampness-heat in the lower energizer by combined use of heat-clearing medicinals and dampness-draining medicinals
4.2.48	clear stomach fire	清胃火	a therapeutic method of clearing fire from the stomach to treat exuberant stomach fire
4.2.49	clear the stomach	清胃	a therapeutic method of clearing the stomach of heat or fire
4.2.50	clear heat and harmonize the stomach	清熱和胃	a therapeutic method to treat exuberant stomach fire by clearing heat and harmonizing the stomach
4.2.51	inhibit acidity to relieve pain	制酸止痛	a therapeutic method to relieve epigastric pain by using acid-inhibiting medicinals
4.2.52	clear lung fire	清肺火；清肺	a therapeutic method to treat exuberant fire in the lung by using lung-heat-clearing medicinals
4.2.53	clear ministerial fire	清相火；清腎火	a therapeutic method of clearing the kidney deficiency-fire
4.2.54	clear summerheat-heat	清暑熱	a therapeutic method for clearing pathogenic summerheat-heat
4.2.55	release summerheat	解暑	a therapeutic method for releasing summerheat
4.2.56	clear summerheat and boost qi	清暑益氣	a therapeutic method to treat pattern/syndrome of summerheat damaging fluid and qi by using heat-clearing and summerheat-resolving medicinals and qi-supplementing medicinals and fluid-engendering medicinals
4.2.57	discharge heat to preserve fluid	泄熱救津	a therapeutic method of using heat-clearing medicinals and fluid-engendering medicinals to treat pattern/syndrome of fire-heat damaging fluid
4.2.58	clear and disperse with lightness	輕清宣化	a therapeutic method of using aromatic medicinals to resolve pathogenic dampness, indicated in the treatment of dampness stagnation pattern/syndrome
4.2.59	discharge fire with bitter-cold	苦寒泄火	a therapeutic method to discharge fire by using bitter-cold medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.60	clear heat with bitter-cold	苦寒清熱	a therapeutic method for clearing internal heat by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.61	clear qi with the bitter-cold	苦寒清氣	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat from the qi aspect by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.62	clear qi with the pungent-cold	辛寒清氣	a therapeutic method of clearing pathogenic heat from qi aspect by using pungent-cold medicinals
4.2.63	downbear fire	降火	a therapeutic method of using heat-clearing and fire-purging medicinals to treat upward invasion of heat-fire
4.2.64	detoxify	解毒	(1) measure to lessen the virulence of pathogens; (2) a method of neutralizing the toxic property of poisons
4.2.65	relieve (infantile) malnutrition fever	除疳熱	a therapeutic method for treating malnutritional fever in children
4.2.66	purgation	下法; 瀉下(法)	one of the eight principal therapeutic methods used to relieve constipation, remove stagnant food, static blood, internal heat or excessive fluid through the bowels
4.2.67	cold purgation	寒下; 瀉下泄熱	a therapeutic method of inducing purgation with cold-natured medicinals to treat excessive heat in the interior
4.2.68	warm purgation	溫下	a therapeutic method of inducing purgation and dissipating cold to treat interior excess pattern/syndrome due to internal cold binding
4.2.69	drastic purgation	峻下; 急下	a therapeutic method of treating interior excess pattern/syndrome with drastic purgatives
4.2.70	mild purgation	輕下; 緩攻	a therapeutic method of inducing bowel movement with mild purgatives
4.2.71	laxation	緩下	a therapeutic method of relieving constipation with laxatives
4.2.72	lubricant laxation	潤下	a therapeutic method of inducing laxation with fluid-nourishing and lubricating medicinals to treat constipation due to intestinal dryness
4.2.73	moisten the intestines	潤腸	a therapeutic method for constipation due to intestinal dryness by using moistening medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.74	relax the bowels	通便	therapeutic method for relieving constipation
4.2.75	soften hardness with purgation	瀉下軟堅	a therapeutic method of removing hard fecal masses in the intestines by using purgatives
4.2.76	remove accumulation with purgation	瀉下攻積	a therapeutic method of removing accumulated undigested food by using purgatives
4.2.77	take away firewood from under cauldron	釜底抽薪	metaphorical expression for the method of discharging heat with purgation
4.2.78	remove cold accumulation with warm purgation	溫下寒積	a therapeutic method of administering warming medicinals with purgatives for treating interior excess pattern/syndrome due to internal cold binding
4.2.79	expel water by purgation	瀉下逐水	a therapeutic method of eliminating water retention by using hydragogues
4.2.80	expel retained fluid by purgation	瀉下逐飲；攻逐水飲	a therapeutic method of expelling retained fluid by using hydragogues
4.2.81	increase humor to relax bowels	增液潤下；增液潤腸	a therapeutic method to promote bowel movement by using fluid-nourishing and intestine-moistening medicinals
4.2.82	harmonizing method	和法	one of the eight principal therapeutic methods to regulate the functions of visceral organs for restoring their normal correlation or to mediate the part between the exterior and interior of the body for eliminating the pathogens
4.2.83	harmonize the blood	和血	a therapeutic method to relieve or cure blood disorders
4.2.84	harmonize the nutrient	和營	a therapeutic method to regulate the nutrient aspect
4.2.85	harmonize qi and blood	調和氣血	a therapeutic method of using qi-regulating and blood-activating medicinals to treat disharmony of qi and blood
4.2.86	harmonize the nutrient and defense	調和營衛	a therapeutic method to treat nutrient-defense disharmony
4.2.87	regulate qi	理氣	a general term for treating disordered flow of qi, including stagnant flow and counterflow

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.88	move qi	行氣	a therapeutic method of relieving stagnation of qi
4.2.89	regulate the middle	理中	a therapeutic method to tonify and regulate the spleen and stomach in deficiency-cold conditions
4.2.90	harmonize the stomach	和胃	a therapeutic method to treat dysfunction of the stomach
4.2.91	harmonize the spleen and stomach	調和脾胃	a therapeutic method of treating disharmony of the spleen and stomach by regulating their qi movement
4.2.92	harmonize the liver and stomach	調和肝胃	a therapeutic method of soothing the liver and harmonizing the stomach to treat liver qi invading the stomach and liver-stomach disharmony
4.2.93	harmonize the liver and spleen	調和肝脾	a therapeutic method of soothing the liver, invigorating the spleen and regulating the qi activity to treat liver qi invading the spleen and liver-spleen disharmony
4.2.94	harmonize and release the exterior and interior	和解表裏	a therapeutic method of treating mild cases of dual exterior-interior pattern/syndrome
4.2.95	harmonize and release the lesser yang	和解少陽	a therapeutic method of treating an externally contracted febrile disease by administering medicinals to combat the pathogens lingering at lesser yang (half-exterior and half-interior of the body)
4.2.96	coordinate the heart and kidney	交通心腎	a therapeutic method of treating heart-kidney non-interaction by clearing heart fire and nourishing kidney yin
4.2.97	open onto the pleurodiaphragmatic interspace	開達膜原	a therapeutic method of eliminating filthy turbid pathogens hidden in the pleuro-diaphragmatic space
4.2.98	release both the exterior and interior	表裏雙解	a general term for therapeutic methods that eliminate pathogens from both the exterior and interior parts of the body, indicated in the treatment of dual disease of the exterior and interior
4.2.99	dispel dampness	祛濕	a general term for various measures to treat dampness pattern/syndrome, including resolving dampness by using aromatics, eliminating dampness by using bitter-cold medicinals, and removing dampness through diuresis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.100	clear heat and eliminate dampness	清熱除濕	a therapeutic method of treating dampness-heat in the upper and middle energizers by combined use of heat-clearing medicinals and dampness-resolving medicinals
4.2.101	purge the liver and eliminate dampness	瀉肝除濕	a therapeutic method of treating dampness-heat in the liver and its meridian
4.2.102	dissipate cold and dispel dampness	散寒祛濕	a therapeutic method of treating cold-dampness obstruction pattern/syndrome by using pungent-warm medicinals to dispel cold and dry dampness
4.2.103	resolve dampness	化濕	one of the measures to dispel dampness by using aromatics with warm nature and drying effect
4.2.104	clear heat and resolve dampness	清熱化濕	a therapeutic method of treating dampness-heat pattern/syndrome by using heat-clearing medicinals and dampness-resolving medicinals in combination
4.2.105	dispel summerheat and resolve dampness	祛暑化濕	a therapeutic method of combined use of summerheat-clearing medicinals and dampness-resolving medicinals for treating summerheat dampness pattern/syndrome
4.2.106	enliven the spleen and resolve dampness	醒脾化濕	a therapeutic method to treat stagnancy of dampness due to spleen dysfunction
4.2.107	resolve dampness with aroma	芳香化濕	a therapeutic method of using aromatics to treat dampness pattern/syndrome
4.2.108	resolve turbidity with aroma	芳香化濁	a therapeutic method of using aromatics to treat dampness-turbidity pattern/syndrome
4.2.109	dispel filth with aroma	芳香辟穢	a therapeutic method of using aromatics to remove filthy turbidity
4.2.110	direct repulsion with bitter-cold	苦寒直折	a therapeutic method to directly purge heat and downbear fire by using bitter-cold medicinals
4.2.111	resolve dampness to move qi	化濕行氣	a therapeutic method to treat qi stagnation by resolving dampness-turbidity
4.2.112	dry dampness	燥濕	one of the measures to dispel dampness by using desiccating medicinals
4.2.113	dry dampness with bitter-warm	苦溫燥濕	a therapeutic method of treating cold-dampness pattern/syndrome by using bitter-warm medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.114	clear heat and dry dampness	清熱燥濕	a therapeutic method for relieving accumulation of dampness-heat
4.2.115	dry dampness to fortify the spleen	燥濕健脾	a therapeutic method of administering pungent-flavored drying medicinals to eliminate dampness for invigorating the spleen, indicated in the treatment of dampness encumbering spleen yang
4.2.116	drain dampness	利濕	one of the measures to dispel dampness by promoting diuresis
4.2.117	induce diuresis to drain dampness	利水滲濕	a therapeutic method to treat internal retention of dampness by using diuretics
4.2.118	drain dampness with bland	淡滲利濕； 淡滲祛濕	a therapeutic method of removing pathogenic water-dampness by using sweet- or bland-tasting diuretics
4.2.119	induce diuresis to alleviate edema	利水消腫	a therapeutic method to treat edema by using diuretics
4.2.120	separate elimination from upper and lower	分消上下； 分消走泄	a therapeutic method of using medicinals to open the upper, diffuse the middle and drain the lower for treating the condition in which the triple energizer's qi movement is obstructed by warm-heat and phlegm-dampness
4.2.121	resolve retained fluid	化飲	any therapeutic method of dispelling retained fluid
4.2.122	dispel phlegm	祛痰	a general term for therapeutic measures to treat phlegm pattern/syndrome, such as resolving phlegm or eliminating phlegm
4.2.123	resolve phlegm	化痰	one of the measures to dispel phlegm in which the phlegm is disintegrated and dissolved
4.2.124	dry dampness to resolve phlegm	燥濕化痰	a therapeutic method of treating dampness-phlegm pattern/syndrome by using medicinals bitter in taste and drying in action
4.2.125	clear and resolve heat-phlegm	清化熱痰	a therapeutic method of combined use of heat-clearing and phlegm-resolving medicinals for treating heat- phlegm pattern/syndrome
4.2.126	warm and resolve cold-phlegm	溫化寒痰	a therapeutic method of using yang-warming, cold-dispelling and phlegm-resolving medicinals to treat cold -phlegm pattern/syndrome

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.127	warm the lung and resolve phlegm	溫肺化痰	a therapeutic method to treat accumulation of cold-phlegm in the lung by using warming and phlegm-resolving medicinals
4.2.128	warm the lung and resolve fluid retention	溫肺化飲	a therapeutic method to treat retention of cold fluid in the lung by using warming and fluid-resolving medicinals
4.2.129	extinguish wind and resolve phlegm	熄風化痰	a therapeutic method to treat wind-phlegm pattern/syndrome by combined use of wind-extinguishing and phlegm-resolving medicinals
4.2.130	dispel wind-phlegm	祛風痰	a therapeutic method of treating pattern/syndrome of phlegm combined with pathogenic wind or wind-heat
4.2.131	moisten dryness to resolve phlegm	潤燥化痰	a therapeutic method to treat dryness-phlegm pattern/syndrome
4.2.132	direct qi downward to resolve phlegm	降氣化痰； 下氣消痰	a therapeutic method of combined use of qi-downbearing medicinals and phlegm-resolving medicinals to treat reverse flow of qi due to phlegm obstruction
4.2.133	downbear counterflow to suppress cough and to calm panting	降逆止咳平喘	a therapeutic method for treating counterflow of lung qi with cough and dyspnea
4.2.134	promote qi absorption to calm panting	納氣平喘	a therapeutic method for treating dyspnea due to kidney failing to receive qi
4.2.135	eliminate phlegm and soften hardness	消痰軟堅	a therapeutic method to treat hard nodules due to phlegm-turbidity accumulation
4.2.136	soften hardness and resolve phlegm	軟堅化痰	a therapeutic method to treat hard phlegmatic mass
4.2.137	clear dryness to moisten the lung	清燥潤肺	a therapeutic method to treat dryness-heat damaging the lung
4.2.138	moisten the lung to suppress cough	潤肺止咳	a therapeutic method of using yin-nourishing and lung-moistening medicinals to treat cough due to lung dryness
4.2.139	constrain the lung to suppress cough	斂肺止咳	a therapeutic method of using astringents to treat persistent unproductive cough due to lung deficiency

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.140	purge the lung to calm panting	瀉肺平喘	a therapeutic method to treat dyspnea caused by accumulation of pathogens in the lung
4.2.141	warming method	溫法	one of the eight principal therapeutic methods in which warming medicinals are used for treating cold pattern/syndrome
4.2.142	warm tonification	溫補	a therapeutic method to treat deficiency-cold conditions by using warm-tonifying medicinals
4.2.143	warm the interior to dissipate cold	溫裏散寒； 溫裏祛寒	a therapeutic method for treating interior-cold pattern/syndrome
4.2.144	warm the interior	溫裏	a general term for the methods of treating interior-cold pattern/syndrome
4.2.145	warm the spleen	溫脾	a therapeutic method to treat cold pattern/syndrome of the spleen by using yang-warming medicinals
4.2.146	warm the stomach	溫胃	a therapeutic method to treat cold pattern/syndrome of the stomach by using warm- or hot-natured medicinals
4.2.147	warm the middle	溫中	a therapeutic method to treat yang deficiency of the spleen and stomach with warm-tonifying medicinals
4.2.148	warm the middle and dissipate cold	溫中散寒； 溫中祛寒	a therapeutic method to treat yang deficiency of the spleen and stomach by dispelling cold and harmonizing the middle energizer with warm-tonifying medicinals
4.2.149	warm the middle to harmonize the stomach	溫中和胃	a therapeutic method of using middle-warming and cold-dissipating medicinals to treat cold stagnation in the stomach
4.2.150	warm the middle to check vomiting	溫中止嘔	a therapeutic method of warming the middle energizer to stop vomiting
4.2.151	warm the lung	溫肺	a therapeutic method to treat cold pattern/syndrome of the lung by using warming medicinals
4.2.152	warm the lung and dissipate cold	溫肺散寒	a therapeutic method to treat deficiency-cold of the lung by using warm-tonifying medicinals
4.2.153	warm the kidney	溫腎；溫腎陽	a therapeutic method of invigorating kidney yang by using warm-tonifying medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.154	warm yang	溫陽	a therapeutic method of warming and unblocking yang qi
4.2.155	warm yang to move water	溫陽行水	a therapeutic method of using yang-warming medicinals and diuretics to treat water retention due to spleen-kidney yang deficiency
4.2.156	warm the uterus	暖宮	a therapeutic method to treat cold congealing in the uterus
4.2.157	warm the meridian	溫經	a therapeutic method of warming and unblocking the meridian/channel
4.2.158	warm the meridian to relieve pain	溫經止痛	a therapeutic method for relieving pain caused by stagnation of pathogenic cold in the meridian/channel
4.2.159	warm the meridian to dissipate cold	溫經散寒	a therapeutic method of using yang-warming, cold-dissipating and collateral-opening medicinals to treat pattern/syndrome of cold congealing in the meridian/channel
4.2.160	warm the meridian to restore yang	溫經回陽; 溫經扶陽	a therapeutic method to treat impending collapse by warming and tonifying yang qi in the meridian/channel
4.2.161	restore yang to save from collapse	回陽救逆; 回陽	a therapeutic method of using a large dose of warm- or hot-natured medicinals to prevent the patient from collapsing, the same as to restore yang
4.2.162	warm the meridian to move stagnation	溫經行滯	a therapeutic method of using meridian/channel-warming medicinals and blood-activating and stasis-resolving medicinals to treat pattern/syndrome of congealing cold with blood stasis
4.2.163	warm the meridian to nourish blood	溫經養血	a therapeutic method of using meridian/channel-warming medicinals and blood-nourishing medicinals to treat pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency with congealing cold
4.2.164	diffuse impediment and free yang	宣痹通陽	a therapeutic method of removing impediments to normalize the flow of yang-qi, as in the treatment of chest impediment
4.2.165	move qi to soothe the middle	行氣寬中	a therapeutic method of promoting the flow of qi to alleviate stuffiness in the spleen and stomach

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.166	move qi to relieve pain	行氣止痛	a therapeutic method of promoting the flow of qi to relieve pain caused by stagnant qi movement
4.2.167	move qi to soothe the chest	行氣寬胸	a therapeutic method of relieving stuffiness of the chest by promoting the flow of qi
4.2.168	regulate qi and fortify the spleen	理氣健脾	a therapeutic method to treat spleen failing in transportation by combined use of qi-moving and stagnation-relieving medicinals and qi-replenishing and spleen-invigorating medicinals
4.2.169	soothe the liver and regulate qi	疏肝理氣	a therapeutic method to regulate liver qi and relieve stagnation for treating liver qi stagnation pattern/syndrome
4.2.170	soothe the liver and nourish the blood	疏肝養血	a therapeutic method with combined use of liver-soothing medicinals and blood-nourishing medicinals for treating liver qi stagnation with blood deficiency
4.2.171	soothe the liver and purge fire	疏肝瀉火	a therapeutic method used to treat pattern/syndrome of stagnated liver qi transforming into fire
4.2.172	soothe the liver and fortify the spleen	疏肝健脾	a therapeutic method of regulating liver qi and strengthening spleen qi to harmonize the liver and spleen for treating pattern/syndrome of liver qi invading the spleen and pattern/syndrome of liver-spleen disharmony
4.2.173	soothe the liver and regulate the spleen	疏肝理脾	a therapeutic method of regulating the activities of the liver and spleen to restore their normal coordination for treating liver stagnation with spleen deficiency
4.2.174	soothe the liver and harmonize the stomach	疏肝和胃	a therapeutic method of regulating the activities of the liver and stomach for treating liver-stomach qi stagnation and liver-stomach disharmony
4.2.175	soothe the liver	疏肝	a therapeutic method of restoring the normal functioning of stagnated liver qi
4.2.176	direct qi downward	降逆下氣； 降氣；下氣	a therapeutic method of treating upward counterflow of qi in the lung and stomach manifested as cough, asthma, hiccupping or vomiting
4.2.177	direct qi downward to relieve hiccup	降氣止呃； 降逆止呃	a therapeutic method of treating hiccups

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.178	break qi	破氣	a therapeutic method of using drastic medicinals to relieve stagnation of qi
4.2.179	cool the blood to stop bleeding	涼血止血	a therapeutic method of using blood-cooling hemostatics to treat bleeding due to heat in the blood
4.2.180	cool the blood and dissipate stasis	涼血散瘀	a therapeutic method for treating blood heat with blood stasis
4.2.181	strengthen thoroughfare vessel to stop bleeding	固衝止血	a therapeutic method of astringing the thoroughfare and conception vessels to treat abnormal uterine bleeding or excessive menstrual flow
4.2.182	activate blood	活血	a general term for promoting blood flow in the treatment of blood stasis
4.2.183	activate blood to relieve pain	活血止痛	a therapeutic method for treating painful conditions caused by blood stasis
4.2.184	activate blood and resolve stasis	活血化瘀	a general term for various therapeutic methods with blood-activating and stasis-resolving effects indicated in the treatment of blood stasis
4.2.185	activate blood and move qi	活血行氣	a therapeutic method to treat blood stasis with qi stagnation
4.2.186	activate blood to regulate menstruation	活血調經	a therapeutic method of activating blood, removing stasis and regulating menstruation to treat menstrual irregularities due to blood stasis
4.2.187	regulate menstruation	調經	a method used for treating menstrual irregularities
4.2.188	unblock the meridian	通經	a method to remove obstruction in meridian/channel
4.2.189	dissipate (blood) stasis	散瘀	a general term for removing static blood in the treatment of blood stasis
4.2.190	break blood and expel stasis	破血逐瘀； 破瘀；逐瘀	a therapeutic method to treat severe cases of blood stasis with intact health qi by using drastic blood-activating medicinals
4.2.191	relax sinews and activate collaterals	舒筋活絡； 舒筋和絡	a therapeutic method used to treat blockage of meridian/channel qi with muscle contraction
4.2.192	free the collateral vessels	通絡	a therapeutic method used to relieve obstruction of collateral vessels

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.193	dispel wind to free the collateral vessels	祛風通絡	a therapeutic method to treat numbness, paralysis or muscle contracture due to wind-dampness impeding the collateral/network vessels
4.2.194	subdue yang	潛陽	a therapeutic method to treat ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang by administering heavy mineral and shell medicinals
4.2.195	pacify the liver to subdue yang	平肝潛陽	a therapeutic method to treat ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang by using yin blood nourishing medicinals and heavy mineral and shell medicinals
4.2.196	extinguish wind	熄風	a therapeutic method of using wind-extinguishing medicinals to relieve internal wind pattern/syndrome
4.2.197	extinguish wind to arrest convulsions	熄風止痙； 熄風解痙	a therapeutic method of administering wind-extinguishing medicinals to relieve internal wind pattern/syndrome with convulsions
4.2.198	cool the liver to extinguish wind	涼肝熄風	a therapeutic method of clearing and purging the liver of fire to calm and extinguish liver wind
4.2.199	nourish yin to extinguish wind	滋陰熄風	a therapeutic method of nourishing yin fluid to treat yin deficiency with stirring wind
4.2.200	clear heat to extinguish wind	清熱熄風	a therapeutic method of treating internal wind due to serious impairment of yin fluid at the late stage of a febrile disease
4.2.201	calm the liver to extinguish wind	鎮肝熄風	a therapeutic method of treating internal wind caused by hyperactivity of the liver
4.2.202	tonifying method	補法	a general term for the methods to restore the healthy qi by using tonifying medicinals, one of the eight principal therapeutic methods, also called restoring method
4.2.203	tonify qi	補氣；益氣	a therapeutic method to treat qi deficiency by using qi tonifying medicinals, the same as to replenish or restore qi
4.2.204	greatly tonify the original qi	大補元氣	a therapeutic method of using potent qi-tonifying medicinals to treat critical cases of qi deficiency with hardly perceptible pulse
4.2.205	tonify qi and invigorate yang	補氣壯陽	a therapeutic method of treating deficiency of yang qi, especially related to the heart and kidney

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.206	tonify qi and engender blood	補氣生血	a therapeutic method of treating deficiency of both qi and blood primarily due to qi deficiency
4.2.207	tonify qi and replenish blood	補益氣血	a therapeutic method to treat deficiency of both qi and blood by using qi-tonifying and blood-nourishing medicinals
4.2.208	upraise the middle qi	升提中氣； 升舉中氣； 升陽；升提	a therapeutic method to treat sunken middle qi by using qi-tonifying medicinals with upraising actions
4.2.209	tonify yang	補陽	a general term for the methods of treating yang deficiency conditions with tonifying medicinals
4.2.210	invigorate yang	壯陽	a therapeutic method to strengthen yang qi of the body with warm-tonifying medicinals
4.2.211	warm and tonify the life gate	溫補命門	a therapeutic method to treat kidney yang deficiency by using yang-warming and kidney-tonifying medicinals
4.2.212	tonify and replenish the middle qi	補益中氣	a therapeutic method of tonifying qi, fortifying the spleen and replenishing the stomach for treating spleen and stomach qi deficiency with sunken middle qi
4.2.213	tonify blood	補血；養血	a therapeutic method to treat blood deficiency by using blood-tonifying medicinals, the same as to nourish or restore blood
4.2.214	tonify and nourish heart blood	補養心血； 養心	a therapeutic method to treat heart blood deficiency by using blood-tonifying and heart-nourishing medicinals, the same as to nourish heart
4.2.215	tonify the spleen	補脾	a therapeutic method to treat diminished functional activities of the spleen by using tonifying medicinals
4.2.216	fortify the spleen	健脾	a therapeutic method of invigorating the transporting and transforming functions of the spleen
4.2.217	fortify the spleen and replenish qi	健脾益氣	a therapeutic method to treat spleen qi deficiency by using spleen-fortifying and qi-replenishing medicinals
4.2.218	fortify the spleen and nourish blood	健脾養血	a therapeutic method to treat pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with blood depletion

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.219	fortify the spleen and support yang	健脾扶陽	a therapeutic method to treat spleen yang deficiency by using spleen-fortifying and yang-reinforcing medicinals
4.2.220	fortify the spleen and drain dampness	健脾利濕	a therapeutic method of using spleen-tonifying and diuretic medicinals to treat spleen deficiency with dampness retention or dampness encumbering the spleen
4.2.221	fortify the spleen to sweep phlegm	健脾豁痰	a therapeutic method to treat phlegm-dampness pattern/syndrome through fortifying the spleen by using qi-tonifying medicinals
4.2.222	invigorate the stomach	健胃	a therapeutic method of invigorating the stomach function to promote digestion
4.2.223	increase the appetite	開胃	a therapeutic method of stimulating the desire for food
4.2.224	warm and tonify the spleen and stomach	溫補脾胃	a therapeutic method used for treating spleen and stomach yang deficiency pattern/syndrome
4.2.225	tonify fire and assist yang	補火助陽； 補腎火	a therapeutic method to treat kidney yang deficiency by using yang-warming and kidney-tonifying medicinals; the same as to tonify the kidney fire
4.2.226	emolliate the liver	柔肝；養肝	a therapeutic method to treat liver yin deficiency or liver blood deficiency by using liver blood-tonifying and liver yin-replenishing medicinals
4.2.227	enrich yin	滋陰	a therapeutic method to treat yin deficiency by using medicinals to replenish yin fluid
4.2.228	enrich yin and tonify yang	滋陰補陽	a therapeutic method to treat dual deficiency of yin and yang
4.2.229	enrich yin and subdue yang	滋陰潛陽	a therapeutic method of using yin-nourishing medicinals and heavy settling medicinals to treat yin deficiency with yang hyperactivity or deficiency yang floating upward
4.2.230	enrich yin to repress yang	滋陰抑陽	a therapeutic method of supplementing yin fluid to suppress excessive yang qi for treating yin deficiency with exuberant yang

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.231	tonify the heart yin	補心陰； 養心陰	a therapeutic method to treat heart yin deficiency by using heart yin tonifying medicinals, the same as to nourish the heart yin
4.2.232	tonify the liver yin	補肝陰； 養肝陰	a therapeutic method of treating liver yin deficiency by using liver yin tonifying medicinals, the same as to nourish the liver yin
4.2.233	tonify the lung	補肺	a general term for therapeutic methods of using tonifying medicinals to treat deficiency patterns/syndromes of the lung
4.2.234	tonify the lung yin	補肺陰； 養肺陰	a therapeutic method to treat lung yin deficiency, the same as to nourish the lung yin
4.2.235	moisten the lung	潤肺	a therapeutic method to treat lung dryness pattern/syndrome by using moistening medicinals
4.2.236	engender fluid	生津	a therapeutic method to treat fluid depletion with fluid-nourishing medicinals
4.2.237	tonify the kidney	補腎	a general term for treating deficiency patterns/syndromes of the kidney with tonifying medicinals
4.2.238	tonify the kidney yin	補腎陰； 滋腎陰	a therapeutic method to treat kidney yin deficiency by using kidney yin tonifying medicinals, the same as to replenish the kidney yin
4.2.239	nourish the stomach yin	養胃陰； 補胃陰； 養胃	a therapeutic method to treat stomach yin deficiency pattern/syndrome, the same as to tonify the stomach yin or to nourish the stomach
4.2.240	tonify the kidney and replenish qi	補腎益氣	a therapeutic method to treat kidney qi deficiency pattern/syndrome
4.2.241	enrich the kidney and replenish yin	滋腎益陰	a therapeutic method to treat kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome
4.2.242	enrich the kidney and nourish the liver	滋腎養肝	a therapeutic method to treat kidney-liver yin deficiency pattern/syndrome
4.2.243	warm the kidney and fortify the spleen	溫腎健脾	a therapeutic method to treat spleen-kidney yang deficiency by using warming and tonifying medicinals
4.2.244	regulate the liver and supplement the kidney	調肝補腎	a therapeutic method to treat liver-kidney yin deficiency with exuberant liver yang

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.245	nourish the blood and emolliate the liver	養血柔肝	a therapeutic method to treat liver blood deficiency with exuberant wind yang by using blood-tonifying and liver-emolliating medicinals
4.2.246	enrich water to moisten wood	滋水涵木	a therapeutic method to treat liver yin deficiency (pertaining to wood) by nourishing kidney yin (pertaining to water)
4.2.247	form yin with the sour and sweet	酸甘化陰	a therapeutic method of replenishing yin blood by combined use of sour-tasted medicinals and sweet-tasted ones
4.2.248	form yang with the pungent and sweet	辛甘化陽	a therapeutic method of reinforcing yang qi by combined use of pungent-tasted medicinals and sweet-tasted ones
4.2.249	conduct fire back to its origin	引火歸原； 引火下行	a therapeutic principle for the ascending of asthenic fire, by adding drugs for tonifying the kidney yang to those for nourishing the kidney yin to lead the ascending deficiency fire back down to the kidney, the same as to conduct fire downward
4.2.250	warm the kidney to promote qi absorption	溫腎納氣	a therapeutic method to treat kidney failing to receive qi from the lung
4.2.251	securing and astringing method	固澀法	a general term for therapeutic methods of using styptic or astringent medicinals to treat spontaneous sweating, seminal emission, chronic diarrhea, or hemorrhage
4.2.252	astringe the intestines and check diarrhea	澀腸止瀉	a therapeutic method to treat chronic diarrhea with astringents
4.2.253	secure essence	固精	a therapeutic method to treat seminal emission due to kidney consumption by using kidney-tonifying and astringent medicinals
4.2.254	secure essence and reduce urination	固精縮尿	a therapeutic method to treat seminal emission, spermatorrhea, enuresis or incontinence of urine due to kidney qi insecurity and bladder retention failure
4.2.255	stem flooding and check vaginal discharge	固崩止帶	a therapeutic method to treat abnormal uterine bleeding or excessive leukorrhea by using astringent medicinals

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.256	secure the thoroughfare vessel and stanch vaginal discharge	固衝止帶	a therapeutic method to treat leukorrhagia due to kidney insufficiency with insecurity of the thoroughfare and conception vessels
4.2.257	secure the exterior	固表	a therapeutic method to treat exterior deficiency and insecurity
4.2.258	secure the exterior to check sweating	固表止汗； 斂汗固表	a therapeutic method to treat defensive qi deficiency with spontaneous sweating
4.2.259	tranquelize	安神	a general term for tranquilizing measures
4.2.260	nourish the heart to tranquilize	養心安神	a therapeutic method of using yin blood tonifying medicinals to treat palpitations, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep and forgetfulness due to disquieted heart spirit
4.2.261	settle fright and tranquilize	鎮驚安神	a therapeutic method of using settling tranquilizers to relieve mental uneasiness caused by fright
4.2.262	tranquelize by heavy settling	重鎮安神； 鎮靜安神	a therapeutic method to treat insomnia and mental excitement by using heavy mineral and shell medicinals
4.2.263	open the orifices	開竅；醒腦	any therapeutic method of inducing resuscitation
4.2.264	clear the heart and open the orifices	清心開竅	a therapeutic method of using heat-clearing, fire-purging and orifice-opening medicinals to induce resuscitation in patients with heat blocked in the pericardium
4.2.265	clear heat to open the orifices	清熱開竅	a therapeutic method to treat impaired consciousness in cases of acute febrile diseases
4.2.266	resolve phlegm to open the orifices	化痰開竅	a therapeutic method of using phlegm-resolving medicinals to treat phlegm syncope and phlegm confounding the orifices of the heart
4.2.267	open the orifices with aroma	芳香開竅	emergency treatment for loss of consciousness by employing aromatic medicinals
4.2.268	promote digestion	消食	a general term for the treatment of food stagnation
4.2.269	promote digestion and remove food stagnation	消食導滯	a therapeutic method of using digestants and laxatives to treat dyspepsia caused by improper diet or overeating

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.270	disperse abscesses and nodules	消癰散結	a therapeutic method of dissolving abscesses and nodules before suppuration
4.2.271	disperse abscesses and boils	消癰散癰	a therapeutic method of dissolving abscesses and boils before suppuration
4.2.272	dissolve fish bones	消骨鯁	a therapeutic method for removing a fish bone stuck in the throat or esophagus
4.2.273	remove nebula and improve vision	退翳明目； 退目翳	a therapeutic method to remove opacity and improve vision used in the treatment of corneal nebula
4.2.274	improve vision	明目	any therapeutic method that can ameliorate impairment of vision
4.2.275	unblock yang	通陽	a therapeutic method used to address blockage of yang qi due to cold-damp obstruction or congealing phlegm and stasis obstruction
4.2.276	unblock yang to dissipate binds	通陽散結	a therapeutic method for dissipating masses caused by yang deficiency and cold congealing
4.2.277	arrest of bleeding, clarification of cause and recovery of health	塞流，澄源，復舊	three therapeutic methods for treating flooding and spotting in gynecology
4.2.278	resolve accumulation	化積	a therapeutic method to treat food accumulation pattern/syndrome by using digestant and evacuant medicinals
4.2.279	prevent abortion	安胎	preventive and therapeutic measure for threatened miscarriage and habitual abortion
4.2.280	promote lactation	下乳	a therapeutic method to promote the flow of breast milk after delivery
4.2.281	terminate lactation	斷乳；回乳	a therapeutic method to stop the flow of milk
4.2.282	expel worms	驅蟲	a therapeutic method of expelling intestinal parasites
4.2.283	kill worms	殺蟲	a therapeutic method of destroying intestinal parasites
4.2.284	quiet ascaris	安蛔	a therapeutic method to treat ascariasis, usually for relieving abdominal pain or biliary colic caused by ascaris

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.285	quiet ascaris to relieve pain	安蛔定痛	a therapeutic method to treat abdominal pain due to intestinal or biliary ascariasis
4.2.286	expel pus	排膿	a therapeutic method of promoting pus discharge
4.2.287	dispel stasis to promote regeneration	祛瘀生新	a therapeutic method of activating blood and removing stasis to promote blood regeneration for treating blood stasis complicated with blood deficiency
4.2.288	promote tissue regeneration and close wound	生肌收口	a therapeutic method of treating wounds to promote the growth of new tissue by using detoxicants and astringents
4.2.289	conduct blood downward	引血下行	a therapeutic method of treating upsurge of blood flow
4.2.290	soften hardness and dissipate binds	軟堅散結	a therapeutic method of using qi-moving, blood-activating and phlegm-eliminating medicinals to treat lumps formed by turbid phlegm or static blood
4.2.291	repel foulness	辟穢	a therapeutic method of using aromatic medicinals to treat diseases caused by pathogenic foul turbidity
4.2.292	relax tension	緩急	a therapeutic method of relieving spasm, contraction or hypertonicity
4.2.293	expel toxin	托毒	a therapeutic method of expelling toxins from within in the treatment of boils and sores
4.2.294	expel pus of sores	托瘡	a therapeutic method of expelling pus in the treatment of boils, sores and abscess
4.2.295	expel from within	內托	a therapeutic method of using tonifying and pus-discharging medicinals to support healthy qi and promote outflow of pus, in order to prevent inward penetration of the pathogenic toxin
4.2.296	constrain spittle	攝唾	a therapeutic method of checking excessive salivation
4.2.297	interrupt malaria	截瘧	method of treating malaria applied before an episode to prevent its arrival
4.2.298	detoxify and kill worms	解毒殺蟲	a therapeutic method to remove toxicity and kill parasites such as mites in the treatment of scabies

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.299	relieve itching	止癢	any therapeutic measure that has an antipruritic effect
4.2.300	dry dampness to relieve itching	燥濕止癢	a therapeutic method for removing exudate and alleviating itching, as used in the treatment of eczema
4.2.301	disperse swelling	消腫	a therapeutic method that induces detumescence or promotes subsidence of swelling
4.2.302	draw out toxin	拔毒	a therapeutic method to remove toxins from inflammatory lesions
4.2.303	draw out pus and toxin	提膿拔毒	a therapeutic method to promote discharge of pus and remove toxins in the treatment of purulent toxin pattern/syndrome
4.2.304	draw out pus and dispel putridity	提膿祛腐	a therapeutic method to promote pus discharge and remove putridity in the treatment of embedded sores
4.2.305	resolve putridity	化腐；去腐肉	a therapeutic method of using corrosive medicinals for treating external diseases, especially wounds and sores
4.2.306	heal wounds and eliminate putridity	蝕瘡去腐	a therapeutic method of eliminating putrid material in the treatment of wounds and sores
4.2.307	promote tissue regeneration and wound healing	生肌斂瘡	a therapeutic method to promote healing of wounds or ulcers on the body surface
4.2.308	promote suppuration to regenerate flesh	煨膿長肉	a therapeutic method of using pus-discharging medicinals or other therapies to promote the growth of granulation tissue and healing of the wound
4.2.309	outthrust the pathogen	透邪	a therapeutic method of driving pathogens out of the body, usually used in the treatment of exterior patterns/syndromes
4.2.310	promote rupture	潰堅	a therapeutic method used to treat abscess by promoting its rupture
4.2.311	blacken the beard and hair	烏鬚髮	a therapeutic method for treating premature graying of the hair and beard

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.312	plaster therapy	膏藥療法； 藥膏療法； 薄貼療法	a therapeutic method of applying plasters to the diseased site or relevant points to treat local or generalized diseases
4.2.313	medicated wine therapy	藥酒療法	a therapeutic method of treatment by taking medicated wine or liquor, a preparation made by steeping medicinals in grain wine or liquor
4.2.314	fumigation	熏法	a therapeutic method by utilizing both the medicinal and heat effects to open the interstices and promote the flow of qi and blood for reducing swelling, alleviating pain, dispelling wind and relieving itching
4.2.315	hot medicinal compress	熨法	a therapeutic measure involving pressing and rubbing the diseased area with hot medical substances wrapped in cloth
4.2.316	cauterization	烙法	application of a searing iron to destroy diseased tissue
4.2.317	suppository therapy	坐藥療法	a therapeutic method involving the introduction of a specially shaped solid medicinal preparation into the rectal, urethral or vaginal orifice to treat diseases, generally diseases of the anus, rectum, lower colon, urethra, uterus and vagina
4.2.318	medicated thread therapy	藥撚療法	an external medical technique whereby a twisted paper coated with or enveloping medicinal powder is introduced into the diseased site for treating abscess, sores, flowing phlegm and cancers
4.2.319	spine pinching	捏脊	a therapeutic method by pinching and kneading the skin and muscles bilateral to the spine
4.2.320	ligation therapy	結紮療法	an external medical technique whereby hemorrhoids, polyps or warts are treated by binding them at the base with threads so that the distal portion sloughs away within several days
4.2.321	fuming-washing therapy	熏洗療法	a therapeutic method involving fuming the diseased area with the vapor of a boiling decoction and then washing the area with the decoction
4.2.322	douche	沖洗法；沖洗療法	an external therapeutic method by directing a stream of a medicinal solution against the diseased site

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.323	insufflations	吹藥法	blowing powdered medicine into the throat or inner part of the mouth for therapeutic purposes
4.2.324	traction therapy	牽引療法	treatment of skeletal or joint disorders by applying a pulling force
4.2.325	therapeutic manipulation for sinew injury	理筋手法	a collective term for various manipulations for restoring and treating injured soft tissues
4.2.326	massage	按摩；推拿；按蹻	rubbing, kneading, or percussion of the soft tissues and joints of the body with the hands, usually performed by one person on another, esp. to relieve tension or pain
4.2.327	rotating manipulation	旋轉法	a manipulation performed by holding the distal end of the injured limb and rotating it gently
4.2.328	twisting manipulation	搓法	a manipulation of giving an injured limb twists with two palms in the direction opposite each other
4.2.329	rubbing manipulation	摩法	rubbing the affected part with the ventral aspect of the finger tips or the palm in a circular motion with moderate force and frequency
4.2.330	kneading manipulation	揉法	a manipulation involving pressing and moving to and fro or circularly on an affected area with the flat of the thumb, the thenar or the root of the palm
4.2.331	pushing manipulation	推法	pushing and squeezing the muscles with the fingers or palms forward, apart or spirally, with force
4.2.332	qi-concentrated single-finger pushing manipulation	一指禪推法	a pushing manipulation performed by using the thumb alone in a swaying movement
4.2.333	rolling manipulation	滾法	a manipulation performed by turning the back of the hand over the patient's body surface back and forth continuously
4.2.334	scrubbing manipulation	擦法	a manipulation performed by rubbing with the flat of the finger, the thenar, or the palm to and fro over the skin continuously with a high frequency

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.335	shaking manipulation	抖法	a manipulation by which the distal end of the affected extremity is held and pulled outwards by the operator and shaken up and down within the limit of movement
4.2.336	flicking manipulation	彈法	a manipulation performed by hitting the affected area with the back of the index fingertip or middle fingertip by flicking against the thumb
4.2.337	sinew-flicking manipulation	彈筋法	a manipulation performed by repeatedly pulling up the tendon or muscle and immediately releasing it
4.2.338	pressing manipulation	按法	a manipulation involving pushing steadily in a direction vertical to the body surface
4.2.339	grasping manipulation	拿法	a manipulation performed by lifting and squeezing the affected muscles with the thumb and the index and middle fingers or with the thumb and the other four fingers of one or both of the operator's hands
4.2.340	pinching manipulation	捏法	a manipulation performed by holding and lifting the soft tissues by using the thumb with the index and middle fingers or the thumb with the other four fingers, and squeezing and pushing forward
4.2.341	treading manipulation	踩蹠法	a manipulation performed by treading on the affected area for reduction, e.g., treading on the back for the reduction of a protruded intervertebral disc
4.2.342	pulling manipulation	扳法	a manipulation of extending or rotating a joint by holding its proximal and distal ends and pulling with force in an opposite or similar direction instantaneously
4.2.343	rocking manipulation	搖法	a manipulation performed by holding the part of the limb proximal to the joint with one hand and the part distal to the joint with the other hand, and gently rotating the joint from side to side
4.2.344	back-packing manipulation	背法	a manipulation to reduce a protruded lumbar intervertebral disc by carrying the patient on the operator's back while the two are standing back to back

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
4.2.345	massage technique before/after acupuncture	揉擦法	a manipulation in which the practitioner using his (her) thenar eminence, palmar root or the ventral aspect of fingers rubs and presses a certain area or point of the patient's body with gentle and circular movements before/after needling
4.2.346	tapping technique	叩打法	a manipulation performed by tapping with the tips of fingers held together
4.2.347	finger pressure	指壓	a manipulation performed by pressing acupuncture points with the finger or thumb instead of needling, also known as shiatsu

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.0.0	ACUPUNCTURE AND MOXIBUSTION	鍼灸(學)	
5.1.0	Acupuncture	鍼; 鍼法	the insertion of needles into humans or animals for remedial purposes or its methods
5.1.1	acupuncture and moxibustion	鍼灸; 鍼灸學	(1) a collective term for acupuncture and moxibustion; (2) a branch of traditional Chinese medicine which mainly involves the theory of meridians, location, usage, indications and combinations of acupoints, needling manipulations and application of ignited moxa in the treatment of disease through regulation of qi, blood and visceral functions
5.1.2	needling and moxibustion method	刺灸法	a collective term for the techniques of acupuncture and moxibustion
5.1.3	fire needling	火鍼	an acupuncture procedure involving the swift pricking of the diseased part with a red hot needle
5.1.4	warm needling	溫鍼; 溫鍼灸	(1) a practice performed by placing an ignited moxa stick on the handle of the needle after insertion; (2) a method of acupuncture in which the needle is warmed before/during needling, the same as warm needling moxibustion
5.1.5	nine classical needles	九鍼	a collective term for the nine types of needles described in Lingshu, namely, filiform needle, shear needle, round-pointed needle, spoon needle, lance needle, round-sharp needle, stiletto needle, long needle and big needle
5.1.6	filiform needle	毫鍼	a type of fine needle of varying length most commonly used in performing acupuncture at present
5.1.7	shear needle	鑱鍼	a pricking instrument like an arrowhead with a sharp tip, the same as a chisel needle or sagital needle
5.1.8	round-pointed needle	圓鍼	a cylindrical instrument with the shaft 1.6 cun long and an oval tip, used for massage on the body surface, the same as a rounded needle
5.1.9	spoon needle	鍥鍼	an instrument with a thick shaft and a slightly sharp round tip used for pressing the meridians/channels
5.1.10	lance needle	鋒鍼	another name for three-edged needle, the same as a lancing needle

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.11	round-sharp needle	員利鍼	a needle with thin shaft and a somewhat enlarged and sharp round tip, the same as a sharp round needle
5.1.12	stiletto needle	鉞鍼	an instrument like a double-edged sword used for drainage of pus, the same as a sword needle
5.1.13	long needle	長鍼	one of the nine classical needles, 7 cun in length, used for deep puncture
5.1.14	big needle	大鍼	a needle with a long and thick shaft and a somewhat round tip, the same as a large needle
5.1.15	great needle	巨鍼	that resembling a filiform needle, but thicker and longer, used in the treatment of hemiplegia and paralysis
5.1.16	stone needle	砭石	needle made of stone used as a primitive instrument for acupuncture and surgical incision in ancient times
5.1.17	stone needle therapy	砭刺療法	treatment of disease with stone needles in ancient times
5.1.18	filiform needle therapy	毫鍼療法	acupuncture therapy which uses filiform needles
5.1.19	tip of the needle	鍼尖	the sharp point of the needle
5.1.20	handle of the needle	鍼柄	the part of the needle, distal to the tip and shaft, by which it is held
5.1.21	shaft of the needle	鍼體	the part of the needle between the handle and tip
5.1.22	root of the needle	鍼根	junction between the handle and shaft of the needle
5.1.23	plum-blossom needle	梅花鍼	a dermal needling instrument with a bundle of five short embedded needles resembling a plum blossom
5.1.24	plum-blossom needle therapy	梅花鍼療法	therapy by tapping with a plum-blossom needle
5.1.25	seven-star needle	七星鍼	a dermal needling instrument with seven short needles attached to the end of a handle in a cluster
5.1.26	three-edged needle	三棱鍼	a thick needle with a sharp three-edged tip

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.27	three-edged needle therapy	三棱鍼療法	a variety of therapeutic method to cure illness by using a three-edged needle
5.1.28	thumbtack needle	揷鍼	an intradermal needle resembling a thumbtack
5.1.29	intradermal needle	皮內鍼	a small needling instrument for embedding in the skin
5.1.30	intradermal needle therapy	皮內鍼療法	a therapeutic method by embedding a needle at a certain point for extended periods
5.1.31	dermal needle	皮膚鍼	a needling instrument composed of several short needles used for tapping the points
5.1.32	dermal needle therapy	皮膚鍼療法	a therapeutic method whereby points are tapped with a dermal needle
5.1.33	roller needle	滾刺筒	a metallic roller designed for dermal needling
5.1.34	silver needle	銀鍼	a needle made of silver
5.1.35	stainless steel needle	不銹鋼鍼	a needle made of stainless steel
5.1.36	disposable needle	一回用鍼； 一次性鍼	a single use needle which is disposed after of use
5.1.37	infant needle	小兒鍼	acupuncture needle used in infant patients
5.1.38	infant acupuncture therapy	小兒鍼法	acupuncture therapy in infant patients
5.1.39	Sa-am acupuncture therapy	舍巖鍼法	a school of acupuncture initiated by Sa-am, characterized by applying the five phases theory and mother-child reinforcement-reduction principle to the selection of points and needling manipulation
5.1.40	eight constitutions acupuncture	八體質鍼	a school of acupuncture developed by Kwon Do-won based on the theory of eight sub-constitutions
5.1.41	microsystem acupuncture	微鍼系統	a general term for various types of acupuncture in a specific local area, including scalp acupuncture, ear acupuncture, nose acupuncture, hand acupuncture, foot acupuncture, etc.
5.1.42	scalp acupuncture	頭鍼；頭皮鍼	acupuncture at the specific lines located on the scalp

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.43	scalp acupuncture therapy	頭鍼療法	one of the microsystem acupuncture therapies, in which specific lines located on the head are needed for therapeutic purpose
5.1.44	facial acupuncture	面鍼	acupuncture at the specific points located on the face
5.1.45	ear acupuncture	耳鍼	acupuncture at the points located on the auricle, also called auriculo-acupuncture
5.1.46	ear acupuncture therapy	耳鍼療法	one of the microsystem acupuncture therapies, in which points located on the auricle are needed for therapeutic purpose
5.1.47	nose acupuncture	鼻鍼	acupuncture at the specific points located on the nose
5.1.48	nose acupuncture therapy	鼻鍼療法	one of the microsystem acupuncture therapies, in which specific points located on the nose are needed for therapeutic purpose
5.1.49	hand acupuncture	手鍼	acupuncture at the specific points located on the hand
5.1.50	hand acupuncture therapy	手鍼療法	one of the microsystem acupuncture therapies, in which specific points located on the hand are needed for therapeutic purpose
5.1.51	hand-finger acupuncture technique	手指鍼術； 高麗手鍼療法	a microsystem acupuncture characterized by needling at the specific points located on the hand and fingers, also called Koryo hand acupuncture therapy
5.1.52	foot acupuncture therapy	足鍼療法	a microsystem acupuncture characterized by needling at the specific points located on the feet
5.1.53	acupuncture point	穴；腧穴； 穴位	the point where a needle is inserted and manipulated in acupuncture therapy
5.1.54	meridian point	經穴	acupuncture points of a main meridian or the governor or conception vessel
5.1.55	extra point	經外奇穴； 奇穴	acupuncture points not located on the meridians, also known as non-meridian point
5.1.56	specific point	特定穴	points on the fourteen meridians with specific therapeutic effects

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.57	five transport points	五輸穴	five specific points of the twelve meridians located distal to the elbows and knees, namely the well point, brook point, stream point, river point and sea point
5.1.58	well point	井穴	one of the five transport points located at the distal end of the fingers or toes, where the meridian/channel qi starts to bubble
5.1.59	brook point	榮穴	one of the five transport points, mostly located distal to the metacarpophalangeal or metatarsophalangeal joints, where the meridian/channel qi starts to spout
5.1.60	stream point	輸穴	one of the five transport points, mostly located proximal to the metacarpophalangeal or metatarsophalangeal joints, where the meridian/channel qi starts to flourish
5.1.61	river point	經穴	one of the five transport points, located on the lower limbs and forearms
5.1.62	sea point	合穴	one of the five transport points, mostly located near the elbows or knees, where the meridian/channel qi goes deep into the body just as a river flows into the sea
5.1.63	source point	原穴	points where the original qi of the visceral organs pours, passes or stays
5.1.64	eight meeting points	八會穴	eight important points where the qi of viscus, bowel, qi, blood, tendon, vessel, bone and marrow gathers respectively
5.1.65	crossing point	交會穴	point where two or more meridians/channels intersect
5.1.66	confluence points of the eight vessels	八脈交會穴	points where the main meridians communicate with the eight extra meridians
5.1.67	lower sea points of the six bowels	六腑下合穴； 下合穴	specific points on the three yang meridians of the foot corresponding to the six bowels
5.1.68	ouch point	阿是穴；天 應穴	an acupuncture point with no specific name nor definite location, the site of which is determined by tenderness or other pathological responses, also known as the ashi point

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.69	cleft point	郄穴；郄穴	point where the meridian/channel qi accumulates deeply
5.1.70	connecting point	絡穴	point at the site where the meridian/channel sends out its collateral vessel
5.1.71	alarm point	募穴；腹募穴	specific points on the chest or abdomen where the qi of the respective viscus is concentrated
5.1.72	transport point	俞穴；背俞穴	specific points on the back where the qi of the visceral organs is infused
5.1.73	ear point	耳穴	points on the auricle of the ear
5.1.74	five phase points	五行穴	a series of five acupuncture points below the elbow or knee on each of twelve meridians, associated with the five phases theory
5.1.75	qi thoroughfare	氣街	a pathway along which qi gathers and flows
5.1.76	ryodo points	良導点	points or small areas of the skin where the electric resistance is remarkably lower than the surrounding skin when a low-voltage electric circuit is set up
5.1.77	special characteristics of acupuncture points	輸穴特異性	specific action and therapeutic effect of acupuncture points
5.1.78	acupuncture point location	經穴部位；輸穴定位(法)	(method of determining) the location of acupuncture points
5.1.79	location of points by anatomical landmarks	體表解剖標誌定位法；自然標誌定位法	location of points according to various anatomical landmarks of the body surface
5.1.80	location of points by bone standard	骨度折量定位法；骨度分寸定位法；骨度法	the length of equally divided portions of a certain long bone or the distance between two anatomical landmarks, taken as one cun, as a unit of measurement for locating points, the same as location of points by skeletal standard
5.1.81	bone proportional cun	骨度分寸	the length of equally divided portions of a certain long bone taken as one cun, a unit of measurement, the same as skeletal proportional cun
5.1.82	location of point by finger cun	指寸定位法	a method of locating points by using the width of the patient's finger as unit of measurement

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.83	body cun	同身寸	unit of length for measurement in locating points by dividing a certain part of the patient's body into certain divisions of equal length, B-cun in brief
5.1.84	finger cun	手指同身寸	the width of the patient's finger taken as a unit of measurement, F-cun in brief
5.1.85	middle finger cun	中指同身寸	the length between the ends of the twisted folds at the radial aspect of the second segment of the patient's middle finger when bent, taken as one cun, a unit of measurement
5.1.86	thumb cun	拇指同身寸	the width of the phalangeal joint of the patient's thumb, taken as one cun, a unit of measurement
5.1.87	finger-breadth cun	橫指同身寸； 一夫法	the width of the four fingers (namely, the index finger, middle finger, ring finger and little finger) held together at the level of the proximal interphalangeal fold of the middle finger, which is taken as a unit of measurement of 3 cun
5.1.88	selection of points according to pattern/syndrome	對證選穴	the general principle for point selection, that is, determination of the points used in acupuncture according to the pattern/syndrome
5.1.89	point combination	配穴；配穴法	combined use of points in acupuncture for achieving desired therapeutic effect
5.1.90	superior-inferior point combination	上下配穴法	a method of point combination in which points on the upper limb are paired with points on the lower limb
5.1.91	left-right point combination	左右配穴法	a method of point combination in which bilateral points of a given meridian/channel are selected
5.1.92	anterior-posterior point combination	前後配穴法； 腹背配穴法； 腹背陰陽配穴法	a method of point combination in which points on the anterior aspect of the trunk are paired with corresponding points on the posterior aspect
5.1.93	point combination of the same meridian	本經配穴法	a method of point combination in which only the points of an involved meridian/channel are selected
5.1.94	exterior-interior point combination	表裏配穴法； 表裏經配穴法	a method of point combination based on the exterior-interior relationship of the meridians/channels
5.1.95	source-connecting point combination	原絡配穴法	a method of point combination in which the source point of the corresponding meridian/channel is

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			paired with the connecting point of the interior-exteriorly related meridian/channel
5.1.96	selection of adjacent points	近部取穴	selecting points close to the disease site
5.1.97	selection of local points	局部取穴	selecting points at the disease site
5.1.98	selection of distant points	遠道取穴	selecting points far from the disease site
5.1.99	needle insertion	進鍼	penetration of the skin with the tip of the needle to a certain depth
5.1.100	needle insertion method	進鍼法	technique of inserting the needle through the skin
5.1.101	double-handed needle insertion	雙手進鍼法	a needle insertion technique using both the right and left hands in cooperation
5.1.102	fingernail-pressing needle insertion	指切進鍼法	a two-handed needle insertion technique involving the application of pressure with a single nail
5.1.103	hand-holding needle insertion	挾持進鍼法	a two-handed needle insertion technique whereby the thumb and index finger of the pressing hand holds a sterilized cotton ball with which the shaft of the needle is wrapped
5.1.104	pinching needle insertion	提捏進鍼法	a two-handed needle insertion technique whereby the needle is inserted while the other hand pinches and lifts the flesh
5.1.105	skin-spreading needle insertion	舒張進鍼法	a two-hand needle insertion technique whereby the skin is stretched to facilitate needle insertion
5.1.106	single-handed needle insertion	單手進鍼法	a needle insertion technique using one hand only
5.1.107	insertion of needle with tube	管鍼進鍼法	a needle insertion technique of using a fine tube as a guide for the needle
5.1.108	needling hand	刺手	the practitioner's hand that holds and inserts the needle

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.109	pressing hand	押手	the practitioner's hand that presses the puncturing area with one or two fingers to facilitate needle insertion
5.1.110	hand-pressing method	押手法	a needle insertion technique whereby finger pressing is applied close to the acupuncture site in concert with puncturing
5.1.111	angle of needle insertion	鍼刺角度	the angle formed between the shaft of needle and the skin punctured while the needle is being inserted
5.1.112	perpendicular insertion	直刺	needle insertion at a 90° angle to the skin
5.1.113	transverse insertion	橫刺；平刺； 沿皮刺	needle insertion at a 15° angle to the skin
5.1.114	oblique insertion	斜刺	needle insertion at a 45° angle to the skin
5.1.115	needle sensation	鍼感；鍼響	the patient's feeling of soreness, numbness, distension or heaviness around the point or feeling like an electric shock while needling
5.1.116	qi arrival	氣至	the qi arrival feeling sensed by practitioners during needling
5.1.117	obtaining qi	得氣	causing the acupuncture needle to elicit the patient's feeling of soreness, numbness, distension, heaviness, or even sensation like an electric shock around the point together with the practitioner's feeling of tenseness around the needle
5.1.118	awaiting qi	候氣	performing manipulation to elicit needle sensation after insertion
5.1.119	hastening qi	催氣	promoting the arrival of needle sensation during acupuncture
5.1.120	meridian phenomenon	經絡現象	physiological and pathological phenomena appearing along the course of meridians/channels
5.1.121	course of the meridian	經脈循行	the direction and route of the meridians/channels
5.1.122	transmission of sensation along meridian	循經感傳	transmission of the needle sensation, the feeling of soreness, numbness, distension and heaviness along the meridian/channel

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.123	latent meridian transmission	隱性感傳	the meridian/channel phenomenon that shows itself only after certain additional stimulation
5.1.124	meridian treatment	經絡治療	any treatment performed by applying stimulus to the related meridians/channels, also known as meridian therapy
5.1.125	needle manipulation	行鍼；運鍼	manipulating the needle after insertion to produce the desired effect
5.1.126	twirling method	捻轉法	a needle manipulation involving twirling the needle
5.1.127	lifting-thrusting method	提插法	a needle manipulation involving lifting and thrusting the needle
5.1.128	handle-scraping method	刮柄法	a needle manipulation involving scraping the handle of the needle with a finger nail as an auxiliary method of promoting the needle sensation
5.1.129	handle-twisting method	搓柄法	a needle manipulation involving twisting the handle of the needle as an auxiliary method of promoting the needle sensation
5.1.130	handle-wagging method	搖柄法	a needle manipulation involving shaking the handle of the needle as an auxiliary method of promoting the needle sensation
5.1.131	handle-flicking method	彈柄法	a needle manipulation involving flicking the handle of the needle as an auxiliary method of promoting the needle sensation
5.1.132	trembling method	震顫法	a manipulation for promoting the needle sensation in which the practitioner lifts, thrusts and twists the needle at a high frequency and small amplitude to make it tremble
5.1.133	massage along meridian	循法	a method of hastening qi, in which the practitioner gives massage with fingers along the meridian/channel after inserting the needle
5.1.134	supplementation and draining	補瀉	supplementation means to activate and restore a decreased function to normal, while draining means to expel pathogenic factors and thus to restore hyperactivity to normal, the same as reinforcement and reduction

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.135	twirling supplementation and draining	捻轉補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by rotating the needle after the qi is obtained, the same as twirling reinforcement and reduction
5.1.136	twirling supplementation and draining method	捻轉補瀉法	the manipulation of rotating the needle for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the twirling reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.137	lifting-thrusting supplementation and draining	提插補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by lifting and thrusting the needle after the qi is obtained, the same as lifting-thrusting reinforcement and reduction
5.1.138	lifting-thrusting supplementation and draining method	提插補瀉法	the manipulation of lifting and thrusting the needle for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the lifting-thrusting reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.139	directional supplementation and draining	迎隨補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by inserting the needle with the direction or against the direction of the meridian/channel course, the same as directional reinforcement and reduction
5.1.140	directional supplementation and draining method	迎隨補瀉法	the manipulation of directing the needle with or against the meridian/channel course for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the directional reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.141	quick-slow supplementation and draining	疾徐補瀉; 徐疾補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by varying the relative speed of insertion and extraction of the needle, the same as quick-slow reinforcement and reduction
5.1.142	quick-slow supplementation and draining method	疾徐補瀉法; 徐疾補瀉法	the manipulation of varying the relative speed of insertion and extraction of the needle for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the quick-slow reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.143	respiratory supplementation and draining	呼吸補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by inserting and extracting the needle in coordination with the patient's respiration, the same as respiratory reinforcement and reduction
5.1.144	respiratory supplementation and draining method	呼吸補瀉法	the manipulation of inserting and extracting the needle in coordination with the patient's respiration for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the respiratory reinforcement and reduction method

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.145	open-closed supplementation and draining	開闔補瀉	reinforcement or reduction achieved by opening or closing the insertion hole after withdrawal of the needle, the same as open-closed reinforcement and reduction
5.1.146	open-closed supplementation and draining method	開闔補瀉法	the manipulation of opening or closing the insertion hole after needle withdrawal for achieving reinforcement or reduction, the same as the open-closed reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.147	neutral supplementation and draining	平補平瀉	equal reinforcement and reduction by lifting and thrusting evenly with the same amplitude or rotation at a favorable angle, the same as neutral reinforcement and reduction
5.1.148	neutral supplementation and draining method	平補平瀉法	a form of needle manipulation with equal reinforcement and reduction indicated in a case with combined excess and deficiency or no distinct excess or deficiency, the same as the neutral reinforcement and reduction method
5.1.149	mountain-burning fire (method)	燒山火(法)	a complex needle manipulation to achieve reinforcement with a local or generalized feeling of intense heat
5.1.150	heaven-penetrating cooling (method)	透天涼(法)	a complex needle manipulation to achieve reduction with a local or generalized feeling of cooling
5.1.151	mother-supplementing child-draining method	補母瀉子法	a therapeutic procedure in which the mother-child relation is determined according to the five-phases attributions of the treated meridian/channel and the transport point, and then the points are selected according to the rule of reinforcing the mother in deficiency conditions and reducing the child in excess conditions, the same as the mother-reinforcing child-reducing method
5.1.152	midnight-midday ebb flow	子午流注	an ancient acupuncture theory which maintains the concept that the state of qi and blood in the various meridians/channels and the receptivity of different points varies in time and the most effective needling time can be calculated in terms of heavenly stems and earthly branches
5.1.153	midnight-midday ebb flow acupuncture	子午流注鍼法	acupuncture performed in accordance with the midnight-midday ebb flow calculation

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.154	day-prescription of points	納甲法; 納干法	determination of the points that are opening on a given day according to the heavenly stems in correspondence with the viscera and meridians/channels
5.1.155	hour-prescription of points	納子法; 納支法	determination of the points that are opening according to the two-hour periods in correspondence with viscera
5.1.156	eightfold method of the sacred tortoise	靈龜八法	a method of selecting confluence points of the eight vessels in accordance with the variations of the eight trigrams, nine squares, heavenly stems and earthly branches
5.1.157	needling method	刺法	a traditional therapy in which qi and blood of the meridians/channels are activated and the functions of the body are regulated by stimulating certain sites on the body with needles
5.1.158	five needling (methods)	五刺	a collective term for five ancient needling techniques used in accordance with the pathological changes of the five viscera, i.e., half needling, leopard-spot needling, joint needling, join valley needling and transport point needling
5.1.159	half needling	半刺	one of the five needling techniques characterized by shallow insertion and swift withdrawal of the needle, also called shallow needling
5.1.160	leopard-spot needling	豹文刺	one of the five needling techniques characterized by pricking with a three-edged needle around the point
5.1.161	joint needling	關刺	one of the five needling techniques by puncturing the tendon close to the joint
5.1.162	join valley needling	合谷刺	one of the five needling techniques for treating numbness and pains of muscles by puncturing the muscles of the affected region directly with the needle going obliquely right and left just like the claws of a chicken, also called multi-direction needling
5.1.163	transport point needling	輸刺	an ancient needling method characterized by deep perpendicular puncture to the bone
5.1.164	nine needling (methods)	九刺	a collective term for nine ancient techniques of needling used for treating nine types of syndrome, i.e., transport point needling, distant needling, meridian/

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			channel needling, collateral/network needling, intermuscular needling, great drainage needling, skin needling, red-hot needling and contralateral meridian/channel needling
5.1.165	distant needling	遠道刺	an ancient needling method in which the needling point is selected at the lower body along the meridian/channel distant from the disease site of the upper body
5.1.166	meridian needling	經刺	an ancient needling method by puncturing the site of meridian/channel where nodulation or blood stasis appears
5.1.167	collateral needling	絡刺	an ancient needling method for bloodletting by pricking the small vessels with a three-edged needle
5.1.168	intermuscular needling	分刺	an ancient needling method by puncturing directly into the muscle
5.1.169	great drainage needling	大瀉刺	an ancient needling method referring to incision and drainage of pus and blood
5.1.170	skin needling	毛刺	an ancient needling method characterized by shallow puncture of the skin
5.1.171	red-hot needling	焮刺	an ancient needling method involving the swift pricking with a red hot needle
5.1.172	contralateral meridian needling	巨刺	an ancient needling method by puncturing the point of the meridian/channel contralateral to the diseased side, also called opposing needling
5.1.173	contralateral collateral needling	繆刺	an ancient needling method characterized by needling collateral/network contralateral to the diseased side, also called contralateral insertion
5.1.174	paired needling	偶刺	an ancient needling method by puncturing with a pair of needles, one anterior to and the other posterior to the disease site
5.1.175	successive trigger needling	報刺	an ancient needling method: while needling directly at the tender point, searching for other tender points over the surrounding area and needling in succession

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.176	relaxing needling	恢刺	an ancient needling method: inserting the needle from the side and then puncturing the contracted muscle in different directions to induce relaxation
5.1.177	triple needling	齊刺	an ancient needling method involving one perpendicular needling with two more needling by its side
5.1.178	shallow surround needling	揚刺	an ancient needling method: needling the center of a point with additional needling anterior, posterior, right and left to the center of the point
5.1.179	perpendicular needling	直鍼刺	an ancient needling method by inserting the needle beneath the lifted skin
5.1.180	short thrust needling	短刺	an ancient needling method: inserting the needle deep to the bone while gently shaking the handle, followed by short and swift lift and thrust
5.1.181	superficial needling	浮刺	an ancient needling method characterized by shallow oblique puncturing
5.1.182	yin needling	陰刺	an ancient needling method in which bilateral points are selected for puncture
5.1.183	proximate needling	傍鍼刺	an ancient needling method involving a perpendicular needling followed by two oblique needling in the adjacent area
5.1.184	repeated shallow needling	贊刺	an ancient needling method characterized by multiple shallow needle insertions causing bleeding
5.1.185	needle retention	留鍼；置鍼	retaining the needle in the point for a period of time to maintain and prolong the effect
5.1.186	subcutaneous needle retention method	皮下留鍼法	a manipulation whereby the needle is retained under the skin for an extended period of time
5.1.187	needle-embedding method	埋鍼法	a treatment for relieving or curing illness by embedding in the skin a small needle or needles at certain points
5.1.188	scattered needling method	散刺法	a method of treatment by pricking with a three-edged needle around the disease site
5.1.189	piercing method	挑刺法	a method involving picking out a small piece of fibrous substance with a needle and squeezing out a small amount of fluid

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.190	pricking	點刺	a fast piercing method in acupuncture, usually with a three-edged needle
5.1.191	pricking therapy	點刺療法	a therapy by applying pricking method
5.1.192	pricking bloodletting method	刺絡法	a therapeutic method whereby a superficial vein is pierced with a three-edged needle to let out a small amount of blood
5.1.193	collateral vessel pricking therapy	刺絡療法； 刺絡法	a method of treatment performed by pricking the small vessels for bloodletting
5.1.194	needle withdrawal	出鍼	removal of an acupuncture needle from the body
5.1.195	needle withdrawal method	出鍼法	the method of removing the acupuncture needle from the body
5.1.196	faint during acupuncture treatment	暈鍼	an adverse reaction to acupuncture; a feeling of faintness, dizziness, nausea and cold sweating during and/or after needling, also called needle sickness
5.1.197	bending of the needle	彎鍼	an abnormal condition occurring during acupuncture, in which the needle becomes bent after insertion in the body
5.1.198	needle breakage	折鍼；斷鍼	breaking of an needle below the skin when applying acupuncture treatment
5.1.199	stuck needle	滯鍼	an accidental condition occurring during needling, in which the needle is impossible to rotate, lift or thrust
5.1.200	acupuncture indications	鍼適應症	the conditions in which acupuncture is advisable or necessary
5.1.201	acupuncture contraindications	鍼禁忌症	any condition which renders acupuncture inappropriate or undesirable
5.1.202	non-indication of acupuncture	鍼不適應症	the conditions in which acupuncture is not advisable
5.1.203	needling-prohibited point	禁鍼穴	points to which needling must not be applied
5.1.204	insertion resistance	刺鍼抵抗	resistance to needle insertion
5.1.205	needling-sensitive person	鍼敏感人	one who responds easily and quickly to acupuncture

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.206	magneto-therapeutic device	磁療儀	an instrument that applies a magnetic force to acupoints for curing disease
5.1.207	electro-acupuncture	電鍼	electric stimulation of the needle following insertion
5.1.208	electro-acupuncture device	電鍼儀	an instrument that applies pulses of electrical current to stimulate the acupuncture site
5.1.209	electro-acupuncture therapy	電鍼療法	treatment of disease with electro-acupuncture
5.1.210	laser acupuncture	激光鍼	a variant of acupuncture in which needling is replaced by laser irradiation on the points
5.1.211	laser acupuncture therapy	穴位激光照射法	a therapy performed by laser irradiation on the acupuncture points
5.1.212	thermesthesio-meter	知熱感度測定器； 溫度感覺測定器	an instrument for measuring heat sensation
5.1.213	herbal acupuncture	藥鍼	injection of medicinal solution into acupuncture points
5.1.214	herbal acupuncture therapy	藥鍼療法	combined therapy of acupuncture and medication by which medicinal solution is injected into the acupuncture point
5.1.215	electrothermic needle	電熱鍼	an acupuncture instrument that produces a thermal effect by means of electricity
5.1.216	microwave acumoxa	微波鍼灸	application of microwave radiation to the inserted needle to produce both acupuncture and moxibustion effects
5.1.217	microwave acupuncture therapy	微波鍼療法	treatment of disease with microwave acumoxa
5.1.218	bee venom acupuncture	蜂鍼	a special type of acupuncture performed by bee sting (or injection of episin) at a certain point or cutaneous region of the meridian/channel for therapeutic purposes, particularly for pain relief
5.1.219	acupuncture point injection	穴位注射	injection of liquid medicine into the acupuncture point

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.220	acupuncture point injection therapy	穴位注射療法	combined therapy of acupuncture and medication by which liquid medicine is injected into the acupuncture point
5.1.221	incision therapy	割治療法	a therapy involving incision at a certain point and removal of a small amount of subcutaneous tissue
5.1.222	acupuncture anaesthesia	鍼刺麻醉法	a method of inducing an anesthetic effect through needling for a surgical operation
5.1.223	segmental needling	脊髓分節刺鍼	needling to an area of a spinal segment that is associated with a disordered structure
5.1.224	non-segmental needling	脊髓分節外刺鍼	needling to an area of a spinal segment that is not associated with a disordered structure
5.1.225	trigger point	發痛点	a sensitive area of the body which produces a reaction elsewhere in the body when stimulated
5.1.226	trigger point needling	發痛点刺鍼	a type of acupuncture in which the trigger points are needed for therapeutic purposes
5.1.227	tender point needling	壓痛点刺鍼	a type of acupuncture in which the tender points are needed for therapeutic purposes
5.1.228	intramuscular stimulation needling	筋肉刺鍼	a needle stimulating treatment for muscle shortening in deep muscles, especially effective for chronic pain of neuropathic origin, also known as needling myofascial trigger points
5.1.229	paraneural needling	傍神經刺鍼	a stimulating method in which practitioners insert acupuncture needles into the paraneural tissue
5.1.230	muscle electro-needling	筋鍼通電療法； 筋pulse療法	a stimulating method in which practitioners insert acupuncture needles into muscle and apply electrodes on the needles, thereby allowing electrical current to pass through needles
5.1.231	nerve electro-needling	神經鍼通電療法； 神經pulse療法	a stimulating method in which practitioners insert acupuncture needles close to the nerve and apply electrodes on the needles, thereby allowing electrical current to pass through needles
5.1.232	subcutaneous electro-needling	皮下鍼通電療法； 皮下pulse療法	a stimulating method in which practitioners insert acupuncture needles into the subcutaneous tissue and apply electrodes on the needles, thereby allowing electrical current to pass through needles

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.1.233	facet joint electro-needling	椎間關節鍼通電療法； 椎間關節pulse療法	a stimulating method in which practitioners insert the acupuncture needles on the facet joint of the vertebrae, and apply electrodes on the needles, thereby allowing electrical current to pass through needles
5.1.234	sham acupuncture	偽鍼	(1) mimic needling used as a placebo control in clinical research on the effect of acupuncture; (2) devices to mimic needling
5.2.0	Moxibustion	灸(法)	
5.2.1	moxibustion	灸(法)	a therapeutic procedure involving ignited material (usually moxa) to apply heat to certain points or areas of the body surface for curing disease through regulation of the function of meridians/channels and visceral organs
5.2.2	moxa	艾	(1) mugwort; (2) a plant from which moxa floss is prepared
5.2.3	moxa floss	艾絨	a cotton-like material for moxibustion made from mugwort leaves
5.2.4	moxa cone	艾炷	cone-shaped mass made of moxa floss for moxibustion
5.2.5	moxa cone moxibustion	艾炷灸	moxibustion with ignited moxa cone either directly on the skin or indirectly using an insulating medium
5.2.6	direct moxibustion	直接灸	moxibustion in which ignited moxa cone is applied directly on the skin surface at the point
5.2.7	wheat-grain size cone moxibustion	麥粒灸	a type of moxa cone moxibustion which uses moxa cones the size of wheat grains
5.2.8	indirect moxibustion	間接灸； 間隔灸； 隔物灸	moxibustion performed by placing some insulating material between the moxa cone and the skin
5.2.9	moxibustion on ginger	隔薑灸	the application of moxibustion on a piece of fresh ginger as an insulating medium, also called ginger moxibustion
5.2.10	moxibustion on salt	隔鹽灸；鹽灸	the application of moxibustion on salt as an insulating medium, also called salt moxibustion

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.2.11	moxibustion on garlic	隔蒜灸； 大蒜灸； 隔蒜灸	the application of moxibustion on a slice of fresh garlic as an insulating medium, also called garlic moxibustion
5.2.12	moxa stick	艾條	a round long stick made of moxa floss, also called moxa roll
5.2.13	moxa stick moxibustion	艾條灸	moxibustion with ignited moxa stick
5.2.14	moxa stick moxibustion therapy	艾條灸療法	a therapy by applying moxibustion with ignited moxa stick
5.2.15	moxa roll	艾卷	a long cylindrical roll of moxa floss wrapped tightly in paper
5.2.16	moxa roll moxibustion	艾卷灸	moxibustion with ignited moxa roll, the same as moxa-stick moxibustion
5.2.17	gentle moxibustion	溫和灸	a type of moxa-stick moxibustion, performed by holding an ignited moxa stick at a certain distance above the patient's skin, keeping the spot warm and making it reddened but not burnt
5.2.18	circling moxibustion	廻旋灸	a type of moxa-stick moxibustion, performed by keeping an ignited moxa stick at a fixed distance from the patient's skin, but moving it in a circular direction
5.2.19	pecking sparrow moxibustion	雀啄灸； 雀啄法	a type of moxa-stick moxibustion, performed by putting an ignited moxa stick near the patient's skin, and moving it up and down like a bird's pecking so as to give strong heat to the applied spot
5.2.20	suspended moxibustion	懸灸	a type of moxa-stick moxibustion, in which the ignited moxa stick is held above the skin
5.2.21	moxibustion scar	灸痕	burn scar caused by direct moxibustion
5.2.22	non-scarring moxibustion	無瘢痕灸； 無痕灸； 非化膿灸	moxibustion in which ignited moxa cone is applied directly on the skin surface at the point, but a burn is prevented and no scar is left
5.2.23	scarring moxibustion	瘢痕灸； 有痕灸； 化膿灸； 打膿灸	a type of direct moxibustion in which ignited moxa is directly placed on the point until the local skin blisters, causing suppuration and leaving a scar

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.2.24	pressing moxibustion	實按灸	moxibustion performed by placing several layers of cloth or paper on the spot, and then pressing the ignited end of a moxa stick on the cloth or paper
5.2.25	juncibustion	燈火灸	moxibustion performed by applying a quick momentary touch to the point with a piece of ignited oiled rush
5.2.26	natural moxibustion	天灸；發泡灸	moxibustion in which irritants are applied at the points to produce blistering and local congestion, also known as vesiculation moxibustion
5.2.27	Taiyi moxa stick moxibustion	太乙神鍼	a special moxa roll made of sandalwood, notopterygium rhizome, cassia twig, dahurian angelica root and other medicinal herbs, used for the treatment of wind-cold-dampness arthralgia, abdominal pain of cold type and dysmenorrhea
5.2.28	thunder-fire wonder moxibustion	雷火神鍼	a type of medicinal moxa roll including Chinese eagle wood, common aucklandia root, frankincense, and other medicinal herbs, used for treating maladies such as cold and pain in the epigastrium and abdomen, rheumatism and dysmenorrhea
5.2.29	medicinal moxibustion	藥物灸；藥調灸	moxibustion with the moxa cigar made of moxa and various herbal medicines
5.2.30	warm needling therapy	溫鍼療法	a therapy involving warm needling moxibustion
5.2.31	moxa burner	溫灸器	a receptacle designed to hold burning moxa floss
5.2.32	moxa burner moxibustion	溫灸器灸	moxibustion with a moxa burner to hold the ignited moxa floss
5.2.33	moxibustion with moxa tube	筒灸	a practice performed by placing one end of a thin tube into the external opening of the ear and applying moxibustion to the other end of the tube
5.2.34	incense thread	線香	a slender stick of incense used for moxibustion
5.2.35	number of cones	壯數	that used as the unit of measuring the amount of moxibustion
5.2.36	electro-moxibustion	電氣灸	electrical dermal stimulation used in place of moxa
5.2.37	moxibustion indications	灸適應症	the conditions in which moxibustion is advisable or necessary

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
5.2.38	non-indication of moxibustion	灸不適應症	the conditions in which moxibustion is not advisable
5.2.39	moxibustion-prohibited point	禁灸穴	acupuncture points to which moxibustion must not be applied
5.3.0	Cupping	拔罐	
5.3.1	cupping	拔罐	suction by using a vacuumized cup or jar
5.3.2	cupping method	拔罐法	a therapeutic method involving the application of suction by placing a vacuumized, usually by fire, cup or jar onto the affected or any part of the body surface
5.3.3	suction cup	抽氣罐	a cup or jar with a rubber valve through which the air inside can be withdrawn by an aspirator
5.3.4	bamboo cup	竹罐	a cupping instrument made of bamboo
5.3.5	retained cupping	留罐	a common method of cupping in which the cup or jar is kept at the same site for a certain period of time
5.3.6	fire-insertion cupping method	投火法	a cupping procedure which involves inserting a piece of ignited alcohol-cotton or paper into a cup and pressing the cup transversely onto the treated area of the lateral side of the body
5.3.7	flash-fire cupping method	閃火法	a cupping procedure which involves flashing the fire of a piece of ignited alcohol-cotton once around the cup's interior and pressing the cup onto the treated area immediately after removing the ignited cotton
5.3.8	cotton-burning cupping method	貼棉法	a cupping procedure performed by placing a thin layer of alcohol-cotton on the lower one third of the cup wall, and pressing the cup onto the treated area after igniting the cotton
5.3.9	slide cupping	走罐	a cupping method in which the cup or jar is moved on the skin surface to extend the acting area
5.3.10	medicated cupping	藥罐	a form of cupping therapy in which the cup or jar is put into boiling medicinal solution before use
5.3.11	pricking-cupping bloodletting method	刺絡拔罐法； 刺血拔罐法	a combined method of pricking and cupping in which pricking with a three-edged needle is followed by cupping to increase bloodletting

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.0.0	MEDICINAL TREATMENT	藥物治療	
6.1.0	Medicinal	藥(物)	a medicinal substance having or designating healing or curative properties or attributes
6.1.1	Chinese medicinal	中藥	usually referring to those medicinal substances recorded in Chinese materia medica
6.1.2	herbs/herbal drugs	草藥	usually referring to those medicinal substances not recorded in Chinese materia medica or only used in folk medicine, also called medicinal herbs
6.1.3	materia medica	本草	that aspect of medical science concerned with the origin and preparation of medicinal agents, their doses and method of administration, also refers to Chinese medicinal herbs
6.1.4	medicinal material	藥材	crude natural medicinal for processing
6.1.5	authentic medicinal	道地藥材	genuine medicinal herbs produced at the original place
6.1.6	processing of medicinals	炮製；修治；修事	a general term for treating of medicinal substances by various means before their medical use
6.1.7	cut the medicinal	切(製)	cut the medicinal into pieces
6.1.8	water processing	水製	processing by utilizing water, including washing, bleaching, soaking, refining with water, etc.
6.1.9	water-grind	水飛	remove impurities from a powdered medicinal and at the same time obtaining finer powder by mixing it with water in a tank and allowing the supernatant turbid fluid to settle in another tank, and then collecting the deposit
6.1.10	fire processing	火製	processing by utilizing heat or fire, including stir-baking, baking, calcining, etc.
6.1.11	plain stir-bake	清炒	bake a medicinal in a pan, with constant stirring and without adding any adjuvant
6.1.12	stir-bake to yellow	炒黃	bake a medicinal in a pan, with constant stirring, till it turns yellow

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.13	stir-bake to brown	炒焦	bake a medicinal in a pan, with constant stirring, till it turns brown
6.1.14	stir-bake to scorch	炒炭	bake a medicinal in a pan, with constant stirring, till it partly turns to charcoal
6.1.15	stir-bake with adjuvant	炙	bake, with stirring, a medicinal together with adjuvant until the latter is infiltrated into the medicinal
6.1.16	calcine	煅	burn a medicinal on a fire to make it crispy, easy to crush
6.1.17	roast	煨	bake a medicinal wrapped in wet paper or coated with dough in hot ashes till the paper or coat turns black
6.1.18	bake	烘焙	dry a medicinal over a slow fire
6.1.19	long-rinse	漂	steep the materials in clean water that is continuously replaced to eliminate impurities
6.1.20	eliminate fire toxin	去火毒	remove irritants from newly prepared medicinal plasters
6.1.21	processing with wine	酒製	processing a medicinal with rice wine or liquor
6.1.22	processing with vinegar	醋製	processing, mostly stirring-baking, a medicinal together with vinegar
6.1.23	top grade drug	上品	medicinals that are non-toxic, possesses a rejuvenating effect and can be taken frequently and for a long period of time without harm
6.1.24	medium grade drug	中品	medicinals that have no or only slight toxic effect and are effective for treating diseases or deficiency conditions
6.1.25	low grade drug	下品	medicinals that are effective for expelling pathogens, but are toxic and should not be taken for a long period of time
6.1.26	flavor of medicinals	藥味	taste or flavor of a medicinal, representing the basic action of that medicinal
6.1.27	nature of medicinals	藥性	the basic properties of a medicinal

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.28	qi and flavor	氣味	the property and flavor of a medicinal that represent the main effects of that medicinal
6.1.29	four qi	四氣；四性	the four basic properties of medicinals, cold, hot, warmth, and coolness
6.1.30	five flavors	五味	the five tastes of medicinals, pungency, sweetness, sourness, bitterness, and saltiness, representing the basic actions of the medicinals
6.1.31	upbearing, downbearing, floating and sinking	升降浮沈	direction of medicinal action, upward, downward, outward, and inward
6.1.32	meridian entry	歸經	orientation of the medicinal action according to the meridian/channel on which the therapeutic action is manifested, also called meridian tropism
6.1.33	mutual reinforcement	相須	two medicinals with similar properties used in combination to reinforce each other's action
6.1.34	mutual assistance	相使	two or more medicinals used in combination, one being the principal substance while the others play a subsidiary role to reinforce the action of the former
6.1.35	mutual restraint	相畏	toxicity or side effects of a medicinal being counteracted by another
6.1.36	mutual suppression	相殺	property of a medicinal to neutralize the toxicity of another
6.1.37	mutual inhibition	相惡	property of a medicinal to weaken the action of another
6.1.38	antagonism	相反	antagonistic combination of two medicinals, if used together, one may prevent the therapeutic effect of the other and/or there may be adverse effects
6.1.39	prohibited combination	配伍禁忌	medicinals whose combined use is prohibited in a prescription
6.1.40	eighteen antagonisms	十八反	incompatible medicinals which, if given in combination, are believed to have serious side effects: Radix Glycyrrhizae being antagonistic to Radix Euphorbiae Pekinensis, Flos Genkwa, Radix Euphorbiae Kansui and Sargassum; Radix Aconiti being antagonistic to Bulbus Fritillariae, Fructus Trichosanthis, Rhizoma

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
			Pinelliae, Radix Ampelopsis and Rhizoma Bletillae; and Radix Veratri Nigri being antagonistic to Radix Ginseng, Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae, Radix Adenophorae, Radix Sophorae Flavescentis, Radix Scrophulariae, Herba Asari and Radix Paeoniae
6.1.41	nineteen incompatibilities	十九畏	medicinals of mutual restraint which, if used in combination, one may restrain or neutralize the other's action: sulfur being incompatible with crude sodium sulfate; mercury being incompatible arsenic trioxide; Radix Euphorbiae Ebracteolatae being incompatible with litharge; Semen Crotonis being incompatible with Semen Pharbitidis; Flos Caryophylli being incompatible with Radix Curcumae; crystalline sodium sulfate being incompatible with Rhizoma Sparganii; Radix Aconiti and Radix Aconiti Kuznezoffi being incompatible with Cornu Rhinoceri; Radix Ginseng being incompatible with Faeces Troglodytorum; and Cortex Cinnamomi being incompatible with Halloysitum Rubrum
6.1.42	contraindication	禁忌	any disease, symptom or circumstance which renders the use of a medicinal or therapeutic procedure inadvisable for an individual
6.1.43	contraindications during pregnancy	妊娠禁忌	medicinals whose administration is prohibited during pregnancy
6.1.44	dietary contraindication during medication	服藥食忌	types of food that should be avoided during the period of medication
6.1.45	dietary contraindications	食忌	abbreviation for dietary contraindications during medication
6.1.46	dosage	劑量	the measured quantity of a medicinal to be taken
6.1.47	square-inch-spoon	方寸匕	an ancient instrument for measuring the quantity of medicinals, one square-inch-spoon equal to 2.74 ml, about 2 g of powdered mineral ingredients and 1 g of powdered herbal ingredients
6.1.48	combination	配伍	use various medicinals jointly in a formula or prescription for producing the desired therapeutic effect and reducing toxic or side effects

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.49	exterior-releasing medicinal	解表藥	a category of medicinals that have the effect of dispelling external pathogen from the exterior aspect of the body, usually through sweating
6.1.50	wind-cold-dispersing medicinal	發散風寒藥	a medicinal that has the effect of dispersing wind and cold in the treatment of an exterior pattern/syndrome
6.1.51	pungent-warm exterior-releasing medicinal	辛溫解表藥	an exterior-releasing medicinal pungent in flavor and warm in property, used for treating a wind-cold exterior pattern/syndrome
6.1.52	wind-heat dispersing medicinal	發散風熱藥	a medicinal that has the effect of dispersing wind and heat in the treatment of an exterior pattern/syndrome
6.1.53	pungent-cool exterior-releasing medicinal	辛涼解表藥	an exterior-releasing medicinal pungent in flavor and cool in property, used for treating a wind-heat exterior pattern/syndrome
6.1.54	heat-clearing medicinal	清熱藥	a category of medicinals that have the effect of clearing up internal heat in cases of externally contracted febrile diseases or fever due to yin deficiency
6.1.55	heat-clearing and fire-purging medicinal	清熱瀉火藥	a medicinal that has the effect of clearing heat or purging fire from the interior
6.1.56	heat-clearing and dampness-drying medicinal	清熱燥濕藥	a medicinal that is effective for eliminating heat and dampness
6.1.57	heat-clearing and detoxicating medicinal	清熱解毒藥	a medicinal that counteracts heat toxins
6.1.58	heat-clearing and blood-cooling medicinal	清熱涼血藥	a medicinal that has the effect of eliminating pathogenic heat from the nutrient and blood aspects in cases of externally contracted febrile diseases
6.1.59	deficiency heat-clearing medicinal	清虛熱藥	a medicinal that clears heat from deficiency conditions
6.1.60	purgative medicinal	瀉下藥	a category of medicinals that promote defecation or even cause diarrhea, not only for relieving constipation, but also for driving stagnant matter, excessive heat and retained fluid out of the body

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.61	offensive purgative medicinal	攻下藥	a medicinal that has a potent purgative effect for moving the bowels and driving away excessive heat and stagnant matter
6.1.62	warm purgative medicinal	溫下藥	a medicinal warm in property, which relieves constipation caused by excessive cold stagnation
6.1.63	laxative (medicinal)	潤下藥	a medicinal that lubricates the intestinal tract to facilitate defecation
6.1.64	drastic (purgative) water-expelling medicinal	峻下逐水藥	a cathartic that causes copious water discharge for reducing accumulated fluid in anasarca, ascites and pleural effusion
6.1.65	wind-dampness-dispelling medicinal	祛風濕藥	a category of medicinals that dispel wind and dampness, mainly for relieving rheumatism and related conditions
6.1.66	wind-dampness-dispelling and cold-dispersing medicinal	祛風濕散寒藥	a medicinal that dispels wind-dampness and disperses cold, indicated in wind-dampness arthralgia of cold type
6.1.67	wind-dampness-dispelling and heat-clearing medicinal	祛風濕清熱藥	a medicinal that dispels wind-dampness and clears heat, suitable for treating wind-dampness arthralgia of heat type
6.1.68	dampness-resolving medicinal	化濕藥	a medicinal with fragrant odor, warming and drying, that resolves dampness
6.1.69	dampness-draining diuretic medicinal	利水滲濕藥； 利濕藥	a medicinal that increases urine excretion and water discharge for treating internal retention of dampness
6.1.70	water-draining and swelling-dispersing medicinal	利水消腫藥	a medicinal that increases urine excretion for treating edema
6.1.71	strangury-relieving diuretic medicinal	利尿通淋藥	a medicinal that increases urine excretion and relieves strangury, mainly indicated in the treatment of dampness-heat in the lower energizer with difficult and painful discharge of urine
6.1.72	strangury-relieving medicinal	通淋藥	a medicinal that relieves various kinds of strangury
6.1.73	dampness-draining anti-icteric medicinal	利濕退黃藥	a medicinal that drains dampness and relieves icterus, indicated in the treatment of dampness-heat jaundice

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.74	bile-draining anti-icteric medicinal	利膽退黃藥	a medicinal that promotes the discharge of bile to relieve jaundice
6.1.75	interior-warming medicinal	溫裏藥	a medicinal that warms the interior and expels internal cold
6.1.76	qi-regulating medicinal	理氣藥	a medicinal that regulates qi movement to treat qi stagnation or adverse qi flow
6.1.77	digestant medicinal	消食藥； 消導藥	a medicinal that aids digestion to eliminate accumulated undigested food
6.1.78	worm-expelling medicinal	驅蟲藥	a medicinal that expels or kills parasitic worms
6.1.79	hemostatic (medicinal)	止血藥	a category of medicinals that arrest bleeding, either internal or external
6.1.80	blood-cooling hemostatic medicinal	涼血止血藥	a medicinal that arrests bleeding by clearing the blood of heat, indicated in the treatment of blood-heat hemorrhage
6.1.81	stasis-resolving hemostatic medicinal	化瘀止血藥	a medicinal that arrests bleeding and at the same time removes stagnant blood which may cause further bleeding
6.1.82	astringent hemostatic medicinal	收斂止血藥	a medicinal that arrests bleeding by its astringent action
6.1.83	meridian-warming hemostatic medicinal	溫經止血藥	a medicinal that arrests bleeding by warming the meridians/channels
6.1.84	blood-activating and stasis-resolving medicinal	活血化瘀藥	a medicinal that promotes blood flow and resolves blood stasis
6.1.85	blood-activating and stasis-dispelling medicinal	活血祛瘀藥	a medicinal that promotes blood flow and dispels blood stasis
6.1.86	blood-activating medicinal	活血藥	a category of medicinals used in the treatment of retarded or static blood flow
6.1.87	stasis-resolving medicinal	化瘀藥	a category of medicinals used in the treatment of blood stasis

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.88	blood-activating analgesic medicinal	活血止痛藥	a medicinal that activates blood, moves qi and alleviates pain, indicated in the treatment of painful conditions caused by stagnation of qi and blood
6.1.89	blood-activating and qi-moving medicinal	活血行氣藥	a medicinal that activates blood and promotes the flow of qi, used primarily in treating stagnation of qi and blood
6.1.90	blood-activating menstruation-regulating medicinal	活血調經藥	a medicinal that activates blood and regulates menstruation for treating menstrual disorders, dysmenorrhea, amenorrhea and postpartum blood stagnation
6.1.91	blood-activating trauma-curing medicinal	活血療傷藥	a medicinal that activates blood, reduces swelling, arrests bleeding and promotes the healing of wounds and fractures
6.1.92	blood-breaking mass-eliminating medicinal	破血消癥藥	a medicinal that, acting drastically, breaks up the static blood and eliminates masses
6.1.93	cough-suppressing and panting-calming medicinal	止咳平喘藥	a medicinal that relieves cough and dyspnea
6.1.94	tranquillizing medicinal	安神藥	a medicinal that calms the mind and relieves mental tension
6.1.95	settling tranquillizing medicinal	重鎮安神藥	a medicinal, mostly a mineral, fossil bone or shell, that induces tranquilization with its settling action
6.1.96	heart-nourishing tranquillizing medicinal	養心安神藥	a medicinal that nourishes yin-blood of the heart to calm the mind
6.1.97	liver-pacifying and wind-extinguishing medicinal	平肝熄風藥	a medicinal that pacifies the liver, suppresses exuberant yang, extinguishes internal wind and controls spasms or tremors
6.1.98	orifice-opening medicinal	開竅藥	a medicinal, fragrant in flavor, with a resuscitating effect, used for emergency treatment of loss of consciousness in block pattern/syndrome
6.1.99	tonifying and replenishing medicinal	補益藥	a category of medicinals that replenish the healthy qi and strengthen the body resistance, used for treating deficiency conditions

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.1.100	qi-tonifying medicinal	補氣藥	a medicinal that tonifies the healthy qi, used in treating qi deficiency
6.1.101	yang-tonifying medicinal	補陽藥	a medicinal that tonifies yang qi, used for treating yang deficiency
6.1.102	kidney yang-tonifying medicinal	補腎陽藥	a medicinal that tonifies the kidney yang, used for treating kidney yang deficiency
6.1.103	blood-tonifying medicinal	補血藥; 養血藥	a medicinal that tonifies the blood in treating blood deficiency, the same as the blood-nourishing medicinal
6.1.104	liver-emolliating medicinal	柔肝藥	a medicinal that replenishes yin-blood of the liver in treating deficiency of liver yin or blood
6.1.105	yin-tonifying medicinal	補陰藥; 養陰藥; 滋陰藥	a medicinal that tonifies and nourishes yin fluid, the same as the yin-nourishing or yin-replenishing medicinal
6.1.106	astringent medicinal	收澀藥; 固澀藥	a variety of medicinals that arrest discharges due to insecure health qi and declined visceral function such as excessive sweating, chronic diarrhea, enuresis, bleeding, leukorrhea and spermatorrhea of deficiency type
6.1.107	exterior-securing anhidrotic medicinal	固表止汗藥	a medicinal that arrests excessive sweating by strengthening the superficies
6.1.108	sweat-constraining exterior-securing medicinal	斂汗固表藥	a medicinal that strengthens the superficies by arresting excessive sweating
6.1.109	heat-clearing astringent medicinal	清熱收澀藥	a medicinal that clears heat and checks discharge, used in the treatment of bleeding or exudation due to pathogenic heat
6.1.110	lung-intestine astringent medicinal	斂肺澀腸藥	a sour and astringent medicinal that relieves cough and dyspnea, and arrests chronic diarrhea
6.1.111	emetic medicinal	湧吐藥; 催吐藥	a medicinal that induces vomiting
6.1.112	resolving medicinal	消散藥	a medicinal that promotes subsidence or diminution of sores and ulcers

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.0	Formula	方劑	
6.2.1	formula	方劑	prescription, recipe
6.2.2	classical formula	經方	formulary recorded in the Han dynasty and earlier, especially referring to the formulas recorded in Zhang Zhongjing's works
6.2.3	Kampo formula	漢方藥	medicinal formula used in Kampo medicine
6.2.4	principles, methods, formulas and medicinals	理法方藥	the four basic steps of diagnosis and treatment: determining the cause, mechanism and location of the disease according to the medical theories and principles, then deciding the treatment principle and method, and finally selecting a formula as well as proper medicinals
6.2.5	couplet medicinals	藥對	two medicinals used in pair to increase the therapeutic effect or reduce the toxic effect
6.2.6	sovereign, minister, assistant and courier	君臣佐使	the ingredients in a formula or prescription that have different roles
6.2.7	sovereign medicinal	君藥	the ingredient that provides the principal curative action on the main pattern/syndrome or primary symptom
6.2.8	minister medicinal	臣藥	the ingredient that helps strengthen the principal curative action
6.2.9	assistant medicinal	佐藥	the ingredient that treats the combined pattern/syndrome, relieves secondary symptoms or tempers the action of the sovereign ingredient when the latter is too potent
6.2.10	courier medicinal	使藥	the ingredient that directs action to the affected meridian/channel or site
6.2.11	counteracting assistant	反佐	an assistant ingredient with a property opposite to and a therapeutic effect complementary to the sovereign ingredient
6.2.12	major formula	大方	a formula or prescription which consists of many ingredients or large dosage of medicinals, used for treating a serious disease with exuberant pathogens or a disease of the lower energizer

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.13	minor formula	小方	a formula or prescription which contains only a few ingredients of small dosage, used for treating a mild illness
6.2.14	slow-acting formula	緩方；緩劑	a formula or prescription which is composed of ingredients that act slowly and is indicated in the long-term treatment of chronic cases
6.2.15	quick-acting formula	急方；峻劑	a formula or prescription which is employed for immediate effect in the treatment of emergency or critical cases
6.2.16	odd-numbered formula	奇方	a formula or prescription with ingredients odd in number
6.2.17	even-numbered formula	偶方	a formula or prescription with ingredients even in number
6.2.18	compound formula	複方	a formula or prescription that is formed by multiple ingredients or by two or more set formulas
6.2.19	eight tactical arrays	八陣	a collective term for eight categories of formulas: supplementing array, harmonizing array, attacking array, dissipating array, cold array, heat array, securing array, and causal array
6.2.20	indication	主治	major symptom or particular condition that indicate the advisability or necessity of a specific medical treatment or procedure, also called major indication
6.2.21	preparation form	劑型	form of a prepared medicine designed according to the medicinal property, therapeutic purpose and route of administration
6.2.22	decoction (preparation)	湯劑	a liquid medicine prepared by boiling the ingredients in water, and taken after the dregs are removed
6.2.23	pill preparation	丸劑	a solid globular mass, coated or uncoated, made of finely powdered medicinals with a suitable excipient or binder
6.2.24	powder preparation	散劑	a medicated preparation in the form of discrete fine particles, for internal administration or topical application.
6.2.25	honeyed pill	蜜丸	a globular medicated mass, in which processed honey is used as a binder

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.26	pasted pill	糊丸	a small globular medicated mass, in which rice-paste or flour-paste is used as a binder
6.2.27	waxed pill	蠟丸	a globular medicated mass, in which beeswax is used as a binder
6.2.28	paste preparation	膏劑	a general term for soft extract, ointment and adhesive plaster
6.2.29	extract	浸膏	a concentrated medicated preparation obtained by extracting the active constituents
6.2.30	fluid paste	流膏	a semiliquid medicated preparation containing the active constituents
6.2.31	ointment	軟膏	an unguent (ointment) for topical application to the skin
6.2.32	plaster	膏藥	a medicated dressing that consists of a film (as of cloth or paper) spread with a medicated substance
6.2.33	medicated wine	藥酒；酒劑	a preparation made by steeping medicinals in wine or liquor
6.2.34	pellet	丹劑	a medicated preparation in the form of small particles, usually made from minerals by sublimation for topical application, but some also for internal administration
6.2.35	medicated tea	茶劑	a medicated preparation made into coarse powder or small cakes, taken as tea after being infused with boiling water or boiled in water
6.2.36	medicinal strip	條劑	a medicated preparation for external use, made by a twisted gauze coated with or enveloping medicinal powder to be introduced into a wound or fistula
6.2.37	soluble granules	沖劑；顆粒劑	granules made of medicinal extract, usually with sugar, to be dissolved in boiling water before being taken
6.2.38	tablet (preparation)	片劑	small flattened pill of compressed powdered medicine or extract of medicine with starch as a formative agent
6.2.39	decocting pieces	飲片	medicinal substances in small pieces or slices for decocting, mostly after appropriate processing, also called medicinal slices

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.40	injection	鍼劑	a preparation of medicine intended for injection
6.2.41	suppository	坐藥；栓劑	a solid but readily meltable cone or cylinder of medicated material for insertion into rectum or vagina
6.2.42	medicated thread	藥線	a twisted paper like a thread, coated with or enveloping medicated powder
6.2.43	decoction method	煎藥法	the process of making decoction: to mix the ingredients with an adequate amount of water, boil them for a certain period of time and remove the dregs from the liquid before taking
6.2.44	decoct with water	水煎	boil the medicinals in water to make decoction
6.2.45	decoct first	先煎	boil certain medicinals before other medicinals are added while making a decoction
6.2.46	decoct later	後下	add certain medicinals for boiling when the decoction is nearly done
6.2.47	wrap-decoct	包煎	boil the medicinal wrapped with a piece of cloth or gauze when making the decoction
6.2.48	decoct separately	另煎；單煎	boil the medicinal separately in order to avoid absorption of the extract by the dregs of other medicinals
6.2.49	strong fire	武火	strong fire used for making decoctions which only allows a short period of boiling, such as pungent diaphoretics
6.2.50	slow fire	文火	slow fire used for making decoctions which need a longer period of boiling, such as tonics
6.2.51	dissolve	溶化	dissolve a medicinal in water or a decoction before taking
6.2.52	take drenched	沖服	take medicine after pouring hot water or hot decoction of other medicinals over it, with stirring
6.2.53	take before meal	飯前服	to be taken about one hour before meal
6.2.54	take after meal	飯後服	to be taken about one hour after meal
6.2.55	take between meals	食遠服	to be taken at a longer interval from meal

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.56	take before breakfast	平旦服	to be taken in the morning on an empty stomach
6.2.57	take before sleeping	臨睡服	to be taken before bedtime
6.2.58	take as tea	代茶服	to be taken in frequent small amounts as drinking tea
6.2.59	take in frequent small amounts	頻服	(decoction) to be taken in small portions at frequent intervals
6.2.60	take in one single dose	頓服	(decoction) to be taken all in one single dose
6.2.61	take cold	冷服	(decoction) to be taken cold
6.2.62	exterior-effusing formula	發表劑	any formula that is composed of exterior-releasing medicinals, has diaphoretic, muscle-releasing and eruption-promoting effects, and is used to treat exterior patterns/syndromes
6.2.63	emetic formula	湧吐劑；吐劑	any formula that induces vomiting, used for treating phlegm syncope, food accumulation, and ingestion of poisons
6.2.64	interior-attacking formula	攻裏劑	any formula mainly composed of purgatives with bowel-moving, heat-purging, accumulation-attacking and water-discharging effects, used for treating interior excess patterns/syndromes
6.2.65	exterior-interior-releasing formula	表裏雙解劑	any formula that eliminates pathogens from both the exterior and the interior parts of the body, indicated in the treatment of dual disease of the exterior and interior
6.2.66	harmonizing and releasing formula	和解劑	any formula that adjusts functions of the body, indicated in the treatment of lesser yang disease, liver-spleen disharmony, and cold-heat complex patterns/syndromes
6.2.67	qi-regulating formula	理氣劑	any formula that regulates and normalizes the flow of qi
6.2.68	blood-regulating formula	理血劑	any formula that corrects blood pathologies, including blood-tonifying formula, blood-activating and stasis-resolving formula, and haemostatic formula

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.69	wind-dispelling formula	祛風劑； 治風劑	any formula that dispels or extinguishes pathogenic wind, either external or internal
6.2.70	cold-dispelling formula	祛寒劑； 溫裏劑	any formula that warms the interior, used for the treatment of interior cold
6.2.71	warm-tonifying formula	溫補劑	any formula with warm-tonifying effect used for treating cold-deficiency conditions
6.2.72	purgative formula	瀉下劑； 攻下劑	any formula composed of purgatives used for relieving constipation, purging heat, removing accumulation and expelling retained water in the treatment of interior excess patterns/syndromes
6.2.73	cold purgative formula	寒下劑	a purgative formula cold in nature, indicated in the treatment of interior accumulation and stagnation of heat
6.2.74	warm purgative formula	溫下劑	a formula containing yang-warming and cold-dissipating medicinals in combination with purgatives, used for treating interior excess cold patterns/syndromes
6.2.75	lubricant laxative formula	潤下劑	formula containing moistening medicinals and purgatives, indicated for relieving constipation caused by insufficiency of intestinal fluid
6.2.76	exterior-releasing formula	解表劑	formula to dispel pathogenic factors from the superficies of the body for the treatment of exterior patterns/syndromes
6.2.77	summerheat-clearing formula	清暑劑； 祛暑劑	formula that cleans summerheat for treating heat patterns/syndromes occurring in summer
6.2.78	dampness-draining formula	利濕劑	formula composed of dampness-draining diuretics, used to treat exuberant dampness
6.2.79	dampness-dispelling formula	祛濕劑	any formula that has the effect of resolving dampness, removing water, relieving strangury and draining turbidity, for the treatment of water-dampness ailments
6.2.80	dryness-moistening formula	潤燥劑	any formula composed of moistening ingredients, used for treating fluid deficiency and dryness conditions
6.2.81	dryness-treating formula	治燥劑	any formula that relieves dryness patterns/syndromes, either exogenous or endogenous

Code	Term	Chinese	Definition/Description
6.2.82	heat-clearing formula	清熱劑	any formula that is mainly composed of heat-clearing ingredients and used for clearing heat, purging fire, cooling blood, or counteracting toxins in the treatment of interior heat patterns/syndromes
6.2.83	fire-draining/reducing formula	瀉火劑	a drastic heat-clearing formula or a heat-clearing formula with concurrent purgative effect, used to treat fire patterns/syndromes
6.2.84	phlegm-dispelling formula	祛痰劑；除痰劑	any formula used for expelling or dissipating phlegm
6.2.85	digestant formula	消食劑；消導劑	formula to promote digestion and disperse stagnant food
6.2.86	orifice-opening formula	開竅劑	any formula chiefly composed of aromatic ingredients with a resuscitating effect, used for emergency treatment of loss of consciousness in block pattern/syndrome
6.2.87	tranquillizing formula	安神劑	formula that calms or tranquilizes excitement, used for treating disquieted spirit
6.2.88	securing and astringent formula	固澀劑	any formula chiefly composed of astringents that arrest exhaustive discharges of qi, blood, essence and fluids
6.2.89	tonifying and replenishing formula	補益劑	any formula that reinforces yang, replenishes qi, nourishes blood or supplements yin in deficiency conditions
6.2.90	worm-expelling formula	驅蟲劑	any formula that expels parasitic worms
6.2.91	worm-killing formula	殺蟲劑	any formula that kills parasitic worms
6.2.92	vision-improving formula	明目劑	a general term for formulas used in the treatment of eye diseases, also called eye-brightening formula
6.2.93	formula for treating abscess and ulcer	癰瘍劑	a general term for formulas used to treat sores, abscesses and ulcers in external medicine
6.2.94	formula for menstruation and childbirth	經產劑	a general term for formulas used to treat menstrual disorders, leukorrheal ailments and obstetric diseases
6.2.95	emergency formula	救急劑	any formula used in emergency cases

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.0.0	傳統醫學 典籍					CLASSICS OF TRADITIONAL MEDICINE
7.1.0	內經類					Books Related to the Internal Classic
7.1.1	(黃帝)內經	(Huangdi) Neijing	anonymous	before Han	CHN	(Huangdi's) Internal Classic
7.1.2	素問	Suwen	anonymous	before Han	CHN	Plain Questions
7.1.3	靈樞	Lingshu	anonymous	before Han	CHN	Miraculous Pivot
7.1.4	難經	Nanjing	alleged Qin Yueren 秦越人	Han	CHN	Classic of Difficult Issues
7.1.5	黃帝內經太素	Huangdineijingtaisu	Yang Shangshan 楊上善	7-8 c	CHN	Great Simplicity of Huangdi's Internal Classic
7.1.6	黃帝素問宣明論方	Huangdisuwenxuan-minglunfang	Liu Wansu 劉完素	1172	CHN	Prescriptions and Expositions of Huangdi's Plain Questions
7.1.7	素問玄機原病式	Suwenxuanjiyuanbingshi	Liu Wansu 劉完素	1182	CHN	Exploration to Mysterious Pathogenesis and Etiology Based on the Plain Questions
7.1.8	類經	Leijing	Zhang Jiebin 張介賓	1624	CHN	Classified Classic
7.1.9	內經知要	Neijingzhiyao	Li Zhongzi 李中梓	1642	CHN	Essentials of the Internal Classic
7.1.10	素問大要	Somoondaeyo	Lee Gyoo-joon 李圭峻	1904	KOR	Major Essentials of the Plain Questions
7.2.0	傷寒與金匱					Cold Damage and Golden Chamber
7.2.1	傷寒雜病論	Shanghanzabinglun	Zhang Zhongjing 張仲景	3 c	CHN	Treatise on Cold Damage and Miscellaneous Diseases

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.2.2	傷寒論	Shanghanlun	Zhang Zhongjing 張仲景	3 c	CHN	Treatise on Cold Damage Diseases
7.2.3	金匱玉函經	Jinguiyuhanjing	Zhang Zhongjing 張仲景	3 c	CHN	Classic of the Golden Chamber and Jade Sheath
7.2.4	金匱要略	Jinguiyaolue	Zhang Zhongjing 張仲景	3 c	CHN	Synopsis of Prescriptions of the Golden Chamber
7.2.5	註解傷寒論	Zhujieshanghanlun	Cheng Wuji 成無己	1144	CHN	Annotated Treatise on Cold Damage
7.3.0	診斷學					Diagnostics
7.3.1	脈經	Maijing	Wang Shuhe 王叔和	3 c	CHN	Pulse Classic
7.3.2	察病指南	Chabingzhinan	Shi Fa 施發	1241	CHN	Guide to Disease Diagnosis
7.3.3	診家樞要	Zhenjiashuyao	Hua Shou 滑壽	1359	CHN	Pivotal Essentials for Diagnosticians
7.3.4	瀕湖脈學	Binhumaixue	Li Shizhen 李時珍	1564	CHN	Binhu's Sphygmology
7.3.5	百腹圖說	Hyakufukuzusetsu	Manase, Dosan 曲直瀨道三	16 c	JPN	Illustrated medical book of abdomen diagnosis
7.3.6	病名彙解	Byomeikai	Ashikawa, Keishu 蘆川桂洲	1686	JPN	Collected Explanations of Disease Names
7.3.7	四診抉微	Sizhenjuewei	Lin Zhihan 林之翰	1723	CHN	Compilation about the Four Examination Methods
7.3.8	腹證奇覽	Fukushokiran	Inaba, Bunrei 稻葉文礼	1799	JPN	Medical book focusing on abdominal diagnosis
7.3.9	診病奇侅	Shinbyokigai	Taki, Motokata 多紀元堅	1843	JPN	Medical book of diagnosing diseases
7.4.0	溫病類					Warm (Pathogen) Disease

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.4.1	簡易辟瘟方	Ganyibyeokonbang	Kim Soon-mong 金順夢 et al	1524	KOR	Simplified Prescriptions for Dispelling Pestilence
7.4.2	新纂辟瘟方	Shinchanbyeokonbang	Heo Joon 許浚	1613	KOR	Newly Compiled Prescriptions for Dispelling Pestilence
7.4.3	溫疫論	Wenyilun	Wu Youxing 吳有性	1642	CHN	Treatise on Pestilence
7.4.4	溫熱論	Wenrelun	Ye Tianshi 葉天士	1746	CHN	Treatise on Warm Heat Disease
7.4.5	溫病條辨	Wenbingtiaobian	Wu Tang 吳瑭	1798	CHN	Systematized Identification of Warm (Pathogen) Diseases
7.4.6	溫熱經緯	Wenreijingwei	Wang Mengying 王孟英	1852	CHN	Warp and Weft of Warm Heat Disease
7.4.7	時病論	Shibinglun	Lei Feng 雷豐	1882	CHN	Treatise on Seasonal Epidemic Diseases
7.5.0	本草					Materia Medica
7.5.1	神農本草經	Shennongbencaojing	anonymous	Han	CHN	Shennong's Classic of Materia Medica
7.5.2	本草經集注	Bencaojingjizhu	Tao Hongjing 陶弘景	5 c	CHN	Variorum of the Classic of Materia Medica
7.5.3	雷公炮炙論	Leigongpaozhilun	Lei Xiao 雷斅	5 c	CHN	Lei's Treatise on Processing of Drugs
7.5.4	新修本草	Xinxiubencao	Su Jing 蘇敬	659	CHN	Newly Revised Materia Medica (Tang Materia Medica)
7.5.5	食療本草	Shiliaobencao	Meng Shen 孟詵	8 c	CHN	Dietetic Materia Medica
7.5.6	經史證類備急本草	Jingshizhengleibeiji-bencao	Tang Shenwei 唐慎微	1082	CHN	Classified Emergency Materia Medica
7.5.7	本草衍義	Bencaoyanyi	Kou Zongshi 寇宗奭	1116	CHN	Elucidation of Materia Medica

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.5.8	飲膳正要	Yinshanzhengyao	Hu Sihui 忽思慧	1330	CHN	Principles of Correct Diet
7.5.9	救荒本草	Jiuhuangbencao	Zhu Su 朱肱	1406	CHN	Materia Medica for Relief of Famines
7.5.10	本草綱目	Bencaogangmu	Li Shizhen 李時珍	1596	CHN	Compendium of Materia Medica
7.5.11	炮炙大全	Paozhidaquan	Miao Xiyong 繆希雍	1622	CHN	Comprehensive Handbook on the Processing of Drugs
7.5.12	本草綱目拾遺	Bencaogangmushi	Zhao Xuemin 趙學敏	1765	CHN	Supplement to the Compendium of Materia Medica
7.6.0	方劑 醫方集					Prescriptions/Formularies
7.6.1	肘後備急方	Zhouhoubeijifang	Ge Hong 葛洪	4 c	CHN	Handbook of Prescriptions for Emergencies
7.6.2	小品方	Xiaopinfang	Chen Yanzhi 陳延之	454-473	CHN	Formulary of Trifles
7.6.3	備急千金要方	Beijiqianjinyao	Sun Simiao 孫思邈	7 c	CHN	Essential Prescriptions Worth a Thousand Gold for Emergencies
7.6.4	千金翼方	Qianjinyifang	Sun Simiao 孫思邈	682	CHN	Supplement to the Essential Prescriptions Worth a Thousand Gold
7.6.5	外臺秘要(方)	Waitaimiyao(fang)	Wang Tao 王燾	752	CHN	Medical Secrets of an Official
7.6.6	醫心方	Ishimpo	Tanba, Yasuyori 丹波康賴	984	JPN	Formulary from the Heart of Medicine
7.6.7	太平聖惠方	Taipingshenghuifang	Wang Huaiyin 王懷隱 et al	992	CHN	Peaceful Holy Benevolent Prescriptions
7.6.8	太平惠民和劑局方	Taipinghuiminhejiufang	revised by Chen Shiwen 陳師文	1107	CHN	Prescriptions from the Great Peace Imperial Grace Pharmacy
7.6.9	聖濟總錄	Shengjizonglu	Zhao Ji 趙佶 et al	1111 - 1117	CHN	Complete Record of Sacred Benevolence

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.6.10	鄉藥救急方	Hyangyakgoogeupbang	anonymous	1236	KOR	Emergency Prescriptions from the Countryside
7.6.11	巖氏濟生方	Yanshijishengfang	Yan Yonghe 嚴用和	1253	CHN	Yan's Prescriptions for Rescuing Lives
7.6.12	萬安方	Man'ampo	Kajiwara, Shozen 梶原性全	1327	JPN	Formulary for Absolute Safety
7.6.13	世醫得効方	Shiyidexiaofang	Wei Yi-lin 危亦林	1345	CHN	Effective Formulas Handed Down for Generations
7.6.14	局方發揮	Jufangfahui	Zhu Zhenheng 朱震亨	14 c	CHN	Elucidation of Dispensary Formulas
7.6.15	福田方	Fukudempo	Yurin 有林	14~15 c	JPN	Fukuden Formulary
7.6.16	鄉藥集成方	Hyangyakjipseongbang	Yoo Hyo-tong 俞孝通, Roh Joong-rye 盧重禮 et al	1433	KOR	Compendium of Prescriptions from the Countryside
7.6.17	醫方類聚	Euibangyoochui	Kim Ye-mong 金禮蒙, Yoo Seong-won 柳誠源 et al	1445	KOR	Classified Assemblage of Medical Prescriptions
7.6.18	保嬰良方	Bao Anh luong phuong	Nguyen Truc 阮直	15c	VTN	Effective Formulae of Master Bao Anh
7.6.19	話人撮要	Hoat Nhan toat yeu	Hoang Don Hoa 黃敦和	1547	VTN	Principal Formulae to Keep Healthy
7.6.20	萬病回春	Wanbinghuichun	Gong Tingxian 龔廷賢	1587	CHN	Recovery from All Ailments
7.6.21	衆方規矩	Shuhokiku	Manase, Gensaku 曲直瀬玄朔	16~17 c	JPN	Standards for a Multitude of Prescriptions
7.6.22	壽世保元	Shoushibaoyuan	Gong Tingxian 龔廷賢	1615	CHN	Longevity and Life Preservation

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.6.23	湯頭歌訣	Tangtougejue	Wang Ang 汪昂	1694	CHN	Prescriptions in Rhymes
7.6.24	醫方歌括	Y Phuong ca quat	Tran Ngo Thiem 陳吾添	1747	VTN	Medicinal Formulae in Poetic Version
7.6.25	類聚方	Ruijuho	Yoshimasu, Todo 吉益東洞	1764	JPN	Classified Assemblage of Prescriptions
7.6.26	古今方彙	Kokonhoi	Koga, Tsugen 甲賀通元	18 c	JPN	Collection of Ancient and Modern Prescriptions
7.6.27	導水瑣言	Dosuisagen	Wada, Tokaku 和田東郭	1805	JPN	How to treat edema
7.6.28	勿誤藥室方函	Futsugoyakushitsuhan	Asada, Sohaku 浅田宗伯	1876	JPN	Faultless Prescriptions from Pharmacy
7.6.29	方藥合編	Bangyakhappyeon	Hwang Do-yeon 黃度淵	1884	KOR	Compilation of Formulas and Medicinals
7.6.30	醫方新鑑	Euibangshingam	Han Byeong-ryeon 韓秉璉	1913	KOR	New Mirror of Medical Formulas
7.7.0	鍼灸類					Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.1	鍼灸甲乙經	Zhenjiujiayijing	Huangfu Mi 皇甫謐	259	CHN	A-B Classic of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.2	銅人腧穴鍼灸圖經	Tongrenshuxue-zhenjiutujing	Wang Weiyi 王惟一	1027	CHN	Illustrated Manual of Acupuncture Points of the Bronze Figure
7.7.3	扁鵲心書	Bianquexinshu	Dou Cai 竇材	1146	CHN	Precious Writings of Bianque
7.7.4	普濟本事方	Pujibenshifang	Xu Shuwei 許叔微	12 c	CHN	Moxibustion in Prescriptions for Universal Relief
7.7.5	鍼灸資生經	Zhenjiuzishengjing	Wang Zhizhong 王執中	1220	CHN	Classic of Nourishing Life with Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.6	鍼經指南	Zhenjingzhinan	Dou Jie 竇杰	1295	CHN	Guide to the Acupuncture Classics

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.7.7	頓醫抄	Ton'isho	Kajiwara, Shozen 梶原性全	1302	JPN	Essentials of Medicine
7.7.8	十四經發揮	Shisijingfahui	Hua Shou 滑壽	1341	CHN	Elucidation of the Fourteen Meridians/Channels
7.7.9	鍼灸聚英	Zhenjiujuying	Gao Wu 高武	1529	CHN	Collection of Gems of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.10	鍼灸要訣	Chimgooyogyeo	Yoo Seong-ryong 柳成龍	1600	KOR	Essential Rhymes of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.11	鍼灸大成	Zhenjiudacheng	Yang Jizhou 楊繼洲	1601	CHN	Complete Compendium of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.12	舍巖道人鍼灸要訣	Saamdoinchimgooyogyeo	Saamdoin 舍巖道人	16-17 c	KOR	Essential Rhymes on Acupuncture and Moxibustion by Master Sa-am
7.7.13	鍼灸經驗方	Chimgoogyeong-heombang	Heo Im 許任	1644	KOR	Experiential Prescriptions of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.14	杉山眞傳流	Sugiyamashindenryu	Sugiyama, Waichi 杉山和一	17c	JPN	Genuine Transmissions from Sugiyama
7.7.15	鍼灸重寶記	Shinkyuchohoki	Hongo, Masatoyo 本郷正豊	1718	JPN	Treasured Text of Acupuncture and Moxibustion
7.7.16	鍼灸則	Shinkyusoku	Suganuma, Shukei 菅沼周桂	1766	JPN	Textbook for clinical acupuncture therapy
7.7.17	經穴彙解	Keiketsuikai	Hara, Nan'yo 原南陽	1803	JPN	Terminology and annotation of acupuncture points and meridians
7.7.18	鍼灸說約	Shinkyusetsuyaku	Ishizaka, Sotetsu 石坂宗哲	1812	JPN	Text book of acupuncture and moxibustion
7.8.0	其他					Miscellaneous
7.8.1	劉涓子鬼遺方	Liujuanziguiyifang	Gong Qingxuan 龔慶宣	496-499	CHN	Liu Juanzi's Ghost-Bequeathed Prescriptions
7.8.2	諸病源候論	Zhubingyuanhoulu	Chao Yuanfang 巢元方	610	CHN	Treatise on the Pathogenesis and Manifestations of All Diseases

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.8.3	仙授理傷續斷秘方	Xianshoulishang-xuduanmifang	Ling Daoren 蔭道人	841-846	CHN	Secret Formulary Bestowed by Immortals for Treating Injuries and Mending Fractures
7.8.4	經效產寶	JingxiaoChanbao	Zan Yin 咎段	847-852	CHN	Tested Treasures in Obstetrics
7.8.5	素問入式運氣論奧	Suwenrushiyunqilun'ao	Liu Wenshu 劉溫舒	1099	CHN	Discussion of the Mysteries of Circuits-Qi Modeled after the Plain Questions
7.8.6	小兒藥證直訣	Xiao'eryaozhengzhijue	Qian Yi 錢乙	1119	CHN	Key to Therapeutics of Children's Diseases
7.8.7	幼幼新書	Youyouxinshu	Liu Fang 劉昉	1132	CHN	New Book of Pediatrics
7.8.8	三因極一病證方論	Sanyinjibingzheng-fanglun	Chen Yan 陳言	1174	CHN	Treatise on the Three Categories of Pathogenic Factors and Prescriptions
7.8.9	衛生家寶產科備要	Weishengjiabao-chankebeiyao	Zhu Duanzhang 朱端章	1184	CHN	Essentials on Obstetrics from the Treasury of the House Hygiene
7.8.10	儒門事親	Rumenshiqin	Zhang Zihe 張子和	1228	CHN	Confucian's Duties to Their Parents
7.8.11	婦人大全良方	Furendaquanliangfang	Chen Ziming 陳自明	1237	CHN	Compendium of Effective Prescriptions for Women
7.8.12	內外傷辨惑論	Neiwaishangbianhuolun	Li Gao 李杲	1247	CHN	Treatise on Clarification of Perplexities About Internal and External Damage
7.8.13	脾胃論	Piweilun	Li Gao 李杲	1249	CHN	Treatise on the Spleen and Stomach
7.8.14	外科精要	Waikejingyao	Chen Ziming 陳自明	1263	CHN	Essentials of External Medicine
7.8.15	蘭室秘藏	Lanshimicang	Li Gao 李杲	1276	CHN	Secret Records of the Orchid Chamber
7.8.16	銀海精微	Yinhaijingwei	anonymous	13 c	CHN	Essence on the Silvery Sea
7.8.17	秘傳眼科龍木論	Michuanyanlongmulun	anonymous	13 c	CHN	Nagajuna's Secret Treatise on Ophthalmology

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.8.18	格致餘論	Gezhiyulun	Zhu Zhenheng 朱震亨	1347	CHN	Treatise on Inquiring the Properties of Things
7.8.19	醫學要輯註遺編	Y hoc yeu giai tap chu di bien	Chu Van An 朱文安	1292-1370	VTN	Note of Medical Essential Knowledge
7.8.20	原機啓微	Yuanjiqiwei	Ni Weide 倪維德	1370	CHN	Revealing the Mystery of the Origin of Eye Diseases
7.8.21	玉機微義	Yujiweiyi	Xu Yanchun 徐彥純	1396	CHN	Subtle Meaning of the Jade Swivel
7.8.22	新註無冤錄	Shinjoomoowonrok	Choi Chi-woon 崔致雲, Lee Se-hyeong 李世衡 et al	1438	KOR	Newly Annotated Records of No Fault
7.8.23	醫書大全	Yishudaquan	Xiong Zongli 熊宗立	1446	CHN	Complete Compendium of Medical Books
7.8.24	丹溪心法	Danxixinfo	Zhu Zhenheng 朱震亨	1481	CHN	Danxi's Experiential Therapy
7.8.25	醫學正傳	Yixuezhengzhuan	Yu Tuan 虞搏	1515	CHN	Orthodox Transmission of Medicine
7.8.26	古今醫統大全	Gujinyitongdaquan	Xu Chunfu 徐春甫	1556	CHN	Complete Compendium of Medical Works, Ancient and Modern
7.8.27	啓迪集	Keitekishu	Manase, Dosan 曲直瀨道三	1574	JPN	Textbook of medical philosophy and experiences on Medicine
7.8.28	醫學入門	Yixuerumen	Li Chan 李梴	1575	CHN	Introduction to Medicine
7.8.29	醫林撮要	Euirimchoalyo	Yang Ye-soo 楊禮壽	16 c	KOR	Synopsis of the Medical World
7.8.30	證治準繩	Zhengzhizhunsheng	Wang Kentang 王肯堂	1602	CHN	Standards of Pattern/Syndrome Identification and Treatment
7.8.31	東醫寶鑑	Dongeuibogam	Heo Joon 許浚	1613	KOR	Treasured Mirror of Eastern Medicine

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.8.32	頤養編	lyangpyeon	Jo Tak 曹倬	1617	KOR	Compiled Texts on Keeping Fit
7.8.33	外科正宗	Waikezhengzong	Chen Shigong 陳實功	1617	CHN	Orthodox Manual of External Medicine
7.8.34	濟陰綱目	Jiyingangmu	Wu Zhiwang 武之望	1620	CHN	Synopsis of Treating Women's Diseases
7.8.35	醫宗必讀	Yizongbidu	Li Zhongzi 李中梓	1637	CHN	Required Readings for Medical Professionals
7.8.36	景岳全書	Jingyuequanshu	Zhang Jiebin 張介賓	1640	CHN	Complete Works of Jingyue
7.8.37	審視瑤函	Shenshiyaohan	Fu Renyu 傅仁宇	1644	CHN	Compendium of Ophthalmology
7.8.38	醫門法律	Yimenfalü	Yu Chang 喻昌	1658	CHN	Principles for Medical Profession
7.8.39	醫貫	Yiguan	Zhao Xianke 趙獻可	1687	CHN	Thorough Knowledge of Medicine
7.8.40	證治彙補	Zhengzhihuibu	Li Yongcui 李用粹	1687	CHN	Collected Supplement to Pattern/ Syndrome Identifications and Treatments
7.8.41	洪義覺斯醫書	Hong Nghia giac tu y thu	Tue tinh 慧靜	1717	VTN	Medical Book of Master Hong Nghia
7.8.42	南藥神效	Nam duoc than hieu	Tue tinh 慧靜	1717	VTN	Miraculous Medicine of the Southern Country
7.8.43	草窓訣	Chochanggyeol	Yoon Dong-li 尹東里	1725	KOR	Rhymes from the Grass Window
7.8.44	醫學心悟	Yixuexinwu	Cheng Guopeng 程國彭	1732	CHN	Medical Insights
7.8.45	醫宗金鑑	Yizongjinjian	Wu Qian 吳謙	1742	CHN	Golden Mirror of Medicine
7.8.46	幼幼集成	Youyoujicheng	Chen Fuzheng 陳復正	1750	CHN	Compendium of Pediatrics

Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.8.47	產論	Sanron	Kagawa, Gen'etsu 賀川玄悦	1765	JPN	Treatise on Childbirth
7.8.48	藥徵	Yakucho	Yoshimasu, Todo 吉益東洞	1771	JPN	Description work of herbal pharmacology comprised of excerpts from Shanhanlun and medical experiences
7.8.49	廣濟秘笈	Gwngjebigeup	Lee Gyeong-hwa 李景華	1790	KOR	Secret Works of Universal Benefit
7.8.50	海上醫宗心領	Hai Thuong Y tong tam linh	Hai Thuong Lan Ong 海上懶翁	1724-1791	VTN	Treatise of Medical Knowledge of Hai Thuong
7.8.51	濟衆新編	Jejoongshinpyeon	Gang Myeong-gil 康命吉	1799	KOR	New Edition on Universal Relief
7.8.52	壽民妙詮	Soominmyojeon	King, Jeongjo 正祖	18 c	KOR	Explanation of Subtleties for the People's Longevity
7.8.53	胎教新記	Taegyoshingi	Sajoodang 師朱堂	1821	KOR	New Notes on Fetal Education
7.8.54	傅青主女科	Fuqingzhunüke	Fu Qingzhu 傅青主	1827	CHN	Fu Qingzhu's Obstetrics and Gynecology
7.8.55	醫林改錯	Yilingaicuo	Wang Qingren 王清任	1830	CHN	Correction of Errors in Medical Classics
7.8.56	類證治裁	Leizhengzhicai	Lin Peiqin 林珮琴	1839	CHN	Classified Patterns/Syndromes with Clear-Cut Treatments
7.8.57	醫宗損益	Euijongsonik	Hwang Do-yeon 黃度淵	1868	KOR	Gains and Losses of Medical Orthodoxy
7.8.58	格致藁	Gyeokchigo	Lee Je-ma 李濟馬	1880	KOR	Draft on an Inquiry into the Properties of Things
7.8.59	血證論	Xuezhenglun	Tang Rongchuan 唐容川	1884	CHN	Treatise on Blood Patterns/Syndromes
7.8.60	魚樵問荅醫術	Ngu Tieu van dap y thuat	Nguyen Dinh Chieu 阮停沼	1822-1888	VTN	Dialogue of Fisherman and Woodman about Medicinal Art

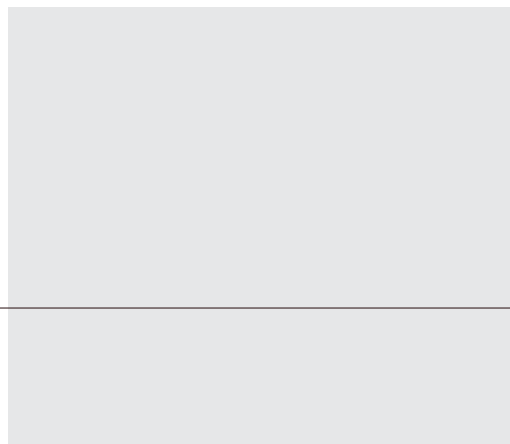
Code	Chinese (Han)	Pronunciation	Author/Editor	Issued year	Country	Preferred English Title/Annotation
7.8.61	東醫壽世保元	Dongeuisoosebowon	Lee Je-ma 李濟馬	1893	KOR	Longevity and Life Preservation in Eastern Medicine
7.8.62	春鑑錄	Choongamrok	Lee Yeong-choon 李永春	1927	KOR	Spring Mirror Records

REFERENCES

1. World Health Organization Regional Office for the Western Pacific (WPRO). *Standard Acupuncture Nomenclature*. WPRO, Manila, Philippines, 1991.
2. China Committee for Approval of Terminology in Science and Technology. *Chinese Terms in Traditional Chinese Medicine and Pharmacy*, Press of Science, China, 2004.
全國科學技術名詞審定委員會2004公布, 中醫藥學名詞, 科學出版社, 2004
3. Choi SH, tr. *Longevity and Life Preservation in Oriental Medicine* [Donggeui Soose Bowon 東醫壽世保元]. Kyung Hee University Press, Seoul, Rep. of Korea, 1996.
4. Compilation Committee for Chinese-English Chinese-French Chinese-German Chinese-Japanese Chinese-Russian Medical Dictionaries. *The Chinese-English Medical Dictionary*. People's Medical Publishing House, China, 1987.
漢英 漢法 漢德 漢日漢俄醫學大詞典編纂委員會, 漢英醫學大詞典, 人民衛生出版社
5. Flaws B. *The Secret of Chinese Pulse Diagnosis*. Blue Poppy Press, Colorado, USA, 1995.
6. Japan Society for Oriental Medicine. *Introduction to KAMPO - Japanese Traditional Medicine*. Elsevier Japan K.K. 2005.
7. Kaptchuk TJ. *The Web That Has No Weaver: Understanding Chinese Medicine*, 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill, New York, 2000.
8. Li ZG, ed. *Chinese-English Dictionary of Traditional Chinese Medicine*. Shanghai Press of Science and Technology, Shanghai, China, 2002.
李照國, 簡明漢英中醫詞典, 上海科技出版社, 2002
9. Luo XW, cp and tr. *Treatise on Febrile Diseases Caused by Cold [Shanghanlun] with 500 Cases*. New World Press, Beijing, 1993.
10. Maciocia G. *The Foundations of Chinese Medicine – A Comprehensive Text for Acupuncturists and Herbalists*. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, London, Melbourne and New York, 1989.
11. Pockert M. *Chinese Medicine*, William Morrow & Co., Inc. New York and Seattle, 1988.
12. Unschuld PU, tr. *The Classic of Difficult Issues [Nanjing]*. University of California Press, Berkeley, Los Angeles, London, 1986.

13. Veith I, tr. *The Yellow Emperor's Classic of Internal Medicine* [Huangdi Neijing – Suwen]. University of California Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1966.
14. Wiseman N, ed. *English-Chinese Chinese-English Dictionary of Chinese Medicine*. Hunan Press of Science and Technology, China, 1995.
魏迺杰, 英漢漢英中醫詞典, 湖南科學技術出版社, 1995
15. Wiseman, N. *Fundamentals of Chinese Medicine*. Paradigm Publications, Brookline, Massachusetts, 1995
16. Wiseman N, Feng Y, eds. *Practical Dictionary of Chinese Medicine*, Paradigm Pub., 1998.
17. Wu NL, Wu AQ, tr. *Yellow Emperor's Canon of Internal Medicine*. China Science & Technology Press, 1999.
18. Xie ZF. *Classified Dictionary of Traditional Chinese Medicine* (New Edition)
Foreign Languages Press, Beijing, 2002.
謝竹藩, 新編漢英中醫藥分類詞典, 外文出版社
19. Xie ZF, *English translation of common term in traditional Chinese medicine*. China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Beijing, 2004.
謝竹藩, 中醫藥常用名詞術語英譯, 中國中醫藥出版社, 2004

INDEX



Term	Code	Page
A		
abdominal examination	2.4.74	105
abdominal fullness	2.3.159	98
<i>abdominal mass</i>	3.1.165	174
abdominal pain	2.3.67	92
abdominal urgency	2.3.175	99
abnormal debilitation of yin or yang	1.7.16	47
abnormal exuberance of yin or yang	1.7.15	47
abnormal sweating	3.1.157	174
abscess	3.2.15	178
abscess of the testicle	3.2.93	184
absence of sweating	2.3.44	91
aching pain	2.3.84	93
acid regurgitation	2.3.140	97
acid vomiting	3.1.87	168
acne	3.2.82	183
acquired essence	1.2.3	17
acquired qi	1.2.19	18
<i>acrocontracture</i>	2.3.94	94
activate blood	4.2.182	219
activate blood and move qi	4.2.185	219
activate blood and resolve stasis	4.2.184	219
activate blood to regulate menstruation	4.2.186	219
activate blood to relieve pain	4.2.183	219
activity-mind-body-matter	1.8.39	78
acupuncture	5.1.0	233
acupuncture anaesthesia	5.1.222	250
acupuncture and moxibustion	5.1.1	233
acupuncture contraindications	5.1.201	248

Term	Code	Page
acupuncture indications	5.1.200	248
acupuncture point	5.1.53	236
acupuncture point injection	5.1.219	249
acupuncture point injection therapy	5.1.220	250
acupuncture point location	5.1.78	238
acupuncture point palpation	2.4.78	106
acupuncture points	0.0.17	10
acupuncture points study	0.0.17	10
acute conjunctivitis with nebula	3.5.24	196
acute infantile convulsion	3.4.36	192
acute jaundice	3.1.101	169
acute mastitis	3.2.35	180
acute scleritis	3.5.26	196
advanced menstruation	3.3.14	185
afternoon tidal fever	2.3.16	89
agalactia	3.3.56	188
aggregation-accumulation	3.1.165	174
<i>agitated fetus</i>	3.3.8	185
agitated pulse	2.4.26	102
agitation	2.1.10	81
alcoholic jaundice	3.1.105	170
allergic rhinitis	3.6.18	199
alopecia	3.2.83	183
alternating chills and fever	2.3.28	90
amenorrhea	3.3.24	186
<i>amnesia</i>	3.1.75	167
anal fistula	3.2.90	183
ancestral qi	1.2.23	19
ancestral sinew	1.5.8	35
anger	1.6.67	44
angle of needle insertion	5.1.111	241
anguish in the heart	2.3.146	97

Footnote:

The italicized Terms and Codes in the Index are synonyms of selected Terms.

Term	Code	Page
<i>anhidrosis</i>	2.3.44	91
ankyloglossia	3.6.35	200
annual congruence	1.8.13	76
annual menstruation	3.3.3	185
anomalous pulse	2.4.72	105
anorexia	3.4.27	191
antagonism	6.1.38	257
anterior tibial pulse	2.4.13	101
anterior yin	1.5.69	39
anterior-posterior point combination	5.1.92	239
<i>antiquity school</i>	0.0.28	11
anxiety	1.6.68	44
<i>apex nasi</i>	1.5.56	38
aphtha	3.4.29	191
apical impulse examination	2.4.76	105
apoplectic wind stroke	3.1.65	167
appearance and style of talking	1.8.37	78
aqueous humor	1.5.49	38
arrest of bleeding, clarification of cause and recovery of health	4.2.277	226
ascaris infantile malnutrition	3.4.24	191
ascaris malnutrition	3.4.24	191
ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang	1.7.179	60
ascending-descending-congested-uncongested	1.8.32	78
<i>ashi point</i>	5.1.68	237
assessment of the normal and abnormal	2.0.10	79
assistant medicinal	6.2.9	264
assisting bone	1.5.24	36
astringe the intestines and check diarrhea	4.2.252	224
astringent hemostatic medicinal	6.1.82	261
astringent medicinal	6.1.106	263
astringent taste in the mouth	2.3.124	96
atrophic rhinitis	3.6.17	199

Term	Code	Page
<i>atrophy-flaccidity</i>	3.1.195	176
<i>auriculo-acupuncture</i>	5.1.45	236
authentic medicinal	6.1.5	255
aversion to cold	2.3.4	89
aversion to cold with fever	2.3.9	89
aversion to heat	2.3.7	89
aversion to wind	2.3.6	89
awaiting qi	5.1.118	241
axillary abscess	3.2.17	178

B

back of the head	1.5.28	36
back pain	2.3.69	93
back-packing manipulation	4.2.344	231
bake	6.1.18	256
bamboo cup	5.3.4	254
basic theories	1.0.0	13
basic theory of traditional Chinese medicine	0.0.11	9
bedsore	3.2.8	178
bee venom acupuncture	5.1.218	249
belching	2.3.139	96
belt vessel	1.4.28	33
bending of the needle	5.1.197	248
benign complexion	2.1.25	82
big needle	5.1.14	234
bile-draining anti-icteric medicinal	6.1.74	261
bimonthly menstruation	3.3.1	184
binding in yang	1.7.47	49
binding in yin	1.7.46	49
bitter taste in the mouth	2.3.121	95
BL	1.4.16	31
black fur	2.1.85	86
blacken the beard and hair	4.2.311	228
bladder	1.3.20	23

Term	Code	Page
bladder dampness-heat	1.7.294	70
bladder dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.110	144
bladder deficiency cold	1.7.295	70
bladder deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	2.9.109	144
bladder meridian	1.4.16	31
bladder qi block	1.7.293	70
bladder qi transformation	1.3.76	27
bladder retention failure	1.7.296	70
bland taste in the mouth	2.3.120	95
blazing of both qi and blood	1.7.331	73
blazing of both qi and nutrient	1.7.332	73
blepharoptosis	3.5.14	195
blindness	3.5.5	194
block and repulsion	3.1.92	169
block and repulsion disease	3.1.92	169
blockage when swallowing	2.3.131	96
blood	1.2.44	20
blood amassment	2.3.105 3.1.149	95 173
blood amassment disease	3.1.149	173
blood amassment pattern/syndrome	2.7.24	127
blood aspect	1.5.74	39
blood aspect heat toxin	1.7.330	73
blood aspect pattern/syndrome	2.12.5	157
blood chamber	1.3.34	24
blood cold	1.7.118	55
blood cold pattern/syndrome	2.6.39	121
blood collapse	1.7.120	55
blood collapse pattern/syndrome	2.7.22	127
blood counterflow	1.7.116	55
blood deficiency	1.7.114	55
blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.7.21	127
<i>blood desertion</i>	1.7.120	55

Term	Code	Page
blood disease	3.1.142	173
blood failing to stay in the meridians	1.7.124	56
blood flowing counterflow with qi	1.7.119	55
blood heat	1.7.117	55
blood heat pattern/syndrome	2.7.25	127
blood impediment	3.1.188	176
blood infantile malnutrition	3.4.17	190
blood malnutrition	3.4.17	190
<i>blood orbiculus</i>	1.5.40	37
blood stasis	1.6.84 1.7.115	45 55
blood stasis due to qi stagnation	1.7.122	56
blood stasis pattern/syndrome	2.7.23	127
blood stasis-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.27	120
blood strangury	3.1.124	171
blood syncope	3.1.174	175
blood tumor	3.2.51	181
blood vessel	1.3.52	26
blood wheel	1.5.40	37
blood-activating analgesic medicinal	6.1.88	262
blood-activating and qi-moving medicinal	6.1.89	262
blood-activating and stasis-dispelling medicinal	6.1.85	261
blood-activating and stasis-resolving medicinal	6.1.84	261
blood-activating medicinal	6.1.86	261
blood-activating menstruation-regulating medicinal	6.1.90	262
blood-activating trauma-curing medicinal	6.1.91	262
blood-breaking mass-eliminating medicinal	6.1.92	262
blood-cooling hemostatic medicinal	6.1.80	261

Term	Code	Page
<i>blood-nourishing medicinal</i>	6.1.103	263
blood-regulating formula	6.2.68	268
blood-tonifying medicinal	6.1.103	263
bloody stool	2.1.31	82
blue tongue	2.1.53	84
bluish blindness	3.5.42	197
bluish complexion	2.1.18	81
bluish discoloration of sclera	3.5.28	196
bluish purple tongue	2.1.55	84
blurred vision	2.3.109	95
body constituent	1.5.1	35
body constituents and orifices of sense organ	1.5.0	35
body cun	5.1.83	239
<i>body fluids</i>	1.2.48	21
body palpation	2.4.73	105
<i>boil</i>	3.2.9	178
bone	1.3.30	24
bone impediment	3.1.186	176
<i>bone malnutrition</i>	3.4.22	191
bone proportional cun	5.1.81	238
bone stuck in the throat	3.6.28	200
bone tumor	3.2.54	181
bone wilting	3.1.197	177
bone-steaming fever	2.3.20	90
bone-steaming tidal fever	2.3.21	90
borborigmus	2.2.22	88
border between the red and white flesh	1.5.6	35
bound pulse	2.4.55	104
bowel	1.3.4	22
bowel qi	1.2.28	19
bowel stroke	3.1.70	167
<i>bradycardia</i>	2.4.31	103
brain	1.3.26, 1.3.27, 1.3.28	24
break blood and expel stasis	4.2.190	219

Term	Code	Page
break qi	4.2.178	219
breast cancer	3.2.58	181
breast pain	2.3.64	92
breathing	1.3.65	27
bridge of the nose	1.5.58	38
bright hall	1.5.55	38
bright pale complexion	2.1.15	81
bright spirit	1.3.51	25
broken metal failing to sound	1.7.265	68
brook point	5.1.59	237
<i>bubble-rising pulse</i>	2.4.63	104
bulging fontanel	3.4.4	189
<i>burning pain</i>	2.3.76	93
<i>b-cun</i>	5.1.83	239
C		
calcine	6.1.16	256
calculus obstruction pattern/syndrome	2.6.49	123
calm the liver to extinguish wind	4.2.201	220
cancer	3.2.55	181
carbuncle	3.2.25	179
cardiaphragmatic interspace	1.5.14	35
carotid pulsation	2.4.12	101
case record	2.0.9	79
cataract	3.5.37	197
categorization according to the five phases	1.1.28	15
cause neither internal nor external	1.6.89	46
cause of disease	1.6.1	39
cauterization	4.2.316	229
ceasing to transmit	1.7.355	75
center of the tongue	2.1.44	83
cervical abscess	3.2.16	178

Term	Code	Page
cervical malignancy with cachexia	3.2.57	181
cervical vertebrae	1.5.21	36
<i>channel and networks study</i>	0.0.16	10
<i>channel vessel</i>	1.4.3	28
<i>channel-induced disease</i>	3.8.2	202
<i>channels</i>	1.4.1	28
<i>channels and networks</i>	1.4.1	28
<i>channels and networks theory</i>	1.4.2	28
chest and hypochondrium	1.5.12	35
chest bind	3.1.59	166
chest center	1.5.10	35
<i>chest constriction</i>	3.1.59	166
chest impediment	3.1.58	166
chest pain	2.3.63	92
chickenpox	3.4.55	193
child qi	1.1.47	17
<i>chills</i>	2.3.4	89
chills without fever	2.3.11	89
<i>Chinese herbal formula study</i>	0.0.14	10
Chinese medicinal	6.1.1	255
<i>Chinese medicinal herbs</i>	6.1.3	255
<i>chisel needle</i>	5.1.7	233
choke	2.3.129	96
cholera	3.1.14	163
chronic diarrhea	3.1.95	169
chronic infantile convulsion	3.4.37	192
chronic spleen wind	3.4.38	192
chronic tonsillitis	3.6.22	199
cinnabar field	1.5.18	36
circling moxibustion	5.2.18	252
circuit of year	1.8.4	76
classical formula	6.2.2	264
classical school	0.0.26	11
clear and disperse with lightness	4.2.58	209
clear and resolve heat-phlegm	4.2.125	214

Term	Code	Page
clear dryness to moisten the lung	4.2.137	215
clear heart fire	4.2.44	208
clear heat	4.2.28	207
clear heat and drain dampness	4.2.47	209
clear heat and dry dampness	4.2.114	214
clear heat and eliminate dampness	4.2.100	213
clear heat and engender fluid	4.2.43	208
clear heat and harmonize the stomach	4.2.50	209
clear heat and resolve dampness	4.2.104	213
clear heat to cool the blood	4.2.40	208
clear heat to extinguish wind	4.2.200	220
clear heat to open the orifices	4.2.265	225
clear heat with bitter-cold	4.2.60	210
clear liver fire	4.2.45	208
clear lung fire	4.2.52	209
clear ministerial fire	4.2.53	209
clear qi with the bitter-cold	4.2.61	210
clear qi with the pungent-cold	4.2.62	210
clear stomach fire	4.2.48	209
clear summerheat and boost qi	4.2.56	209
clear summerheat-heat	4.2.54	209
clear the heart	4.2.31	207
clear the heart and open the orifices	4.2.264	225
clear the liver	4.2.46	208
clear the nutrient aspect	4.2.33	207
clear the nutrient aspect and cool the blood aspect	4.2.38	208
clear the nutrient aspect and eliminate stasis	4.2.42	208
clear the nutrient aspect and promote eruption	4.2.39	208
clear the pericardium	4.2.32	207
clear the qi aspect	4.2.30	207

Term	Code	Page
clear the qi aspect and cool the nutrient aspect	4.2.37	208
clear the stomach	4.2.49	209
clear-food diarrhea	2.3.174	99
clearing method	4.2.27	207
cleft point	5.1.69	238
cocoon lip	3.2.56	181
coincidence of heavenly qi	1.8.14	77
cold	1.6.12	40
cold abdominal colic	3.1.206	177
<i>cold above and heat below</i>	1.7.81	52
cold and heat	1.7.72	51
cold and heat repulsion	1.7.82	52
cold damage	3.1.3	162
cold diarrhea	2.3.182	99
cold entering the blood chamber	1.7.297	70
cold enveloping fire	1.7.78	52
<i>cold extremities</i>	2.3.26	90
cold formation	1.7.346	74
<i>cold impediment</i>	3.1.182	175
cold in both exterior and interior	1.7.62	51
cold in the middle	1.7.310	71
<i>cold induced colic</i>	3.1.206	177
cold malaria	3.1.19	163
cold pain	2.3.75	93
cold pattern/syndrome	2.5.57	114
cold purgation	4.2.67	210
cold purgative formula	6.2.73	269
cold stagnating in the liver vessel	1.7.187, 1.7.188	61
cold stroke	1.7.311	71
cold sweating	2.3.35	91
cold syncope	3.1.171	174
cold tearing	3.5.19	195
cold toxin	1.6.53	43

Term	Code	Page
cold wheezing	3.1.45	165
cold-dampness	1.6.31	41
<i>cold-dampness accumulating in the spleen</i>	1.7.214	63
cold-dampness encumbering the spleen	1.7.214	63
cold-dampness pattern/syndrome	2.6.57	124
cold-dispelling formula	6.2.70	269
cold-heat complex	1.7.79	52
cold-heat complex pattern/syndrome	2.5.59	114
cold-heat pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.5.56	114
cold-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.24	119
<i>collapse</i>	3.1.166	174
collapse of essence	1.7.287	69
collapse of yang and exhaustion of yin	1.7.43	49
collateral needling	5.1.167	246
<i>collateral qi</i>	1.2.38	20
collateral stroke	3.1.68	167
collateral vessel	1.4.39	34
collateral vessel pricking therapy	5.1.193	248
collision eye injury	3.5.46	197
combination	6.1.48	258
combination of diseases	1.7.361	75
combined formula	4.1.21	205
combined pathogen	1.6.8	40
combined visceral pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.112	144
common cold	3.1.7	162
complexion	2.1.12	81
compound formula	6.2.18	265
conception vessel	1.4.26	33
conduct blood downward	4.2.289	227
conduct fire back to its origin	4.2.249	224

Term	Code	Page
<i>conduct fire downward</i>	4.2.249	224
conduction exercise	0.0.25	11
confluence points of the eight vessels	5.1.66	237
confused skipping pulse	2.4.71	105
congenital cataract	3.5.39	197
conjunctival folliculitis	3.5.9	195
connecting point	5.1.70	238
constipation	3.1.93	169
constitution	0.0.31	11
constitutional insufficiency	1.6.85	45
constitutional medicine	0.0.32	11
constitutionally influenced transformation	1.7.336	73
constrain spittle	4.2.296	227
constrain the lung to suppress cough	4.2.139	215
constrained liver qi	1.7.169	60
constrained spleen qi	1.7.225	64
consumptive disease	3.1.163	174
contracted sinew	3.7.4	202
contracted tongue	2.1.72	85
contracture	2.3.92	94
contracture below the umbilicus	2.3.167	98
contracture of the limbs	2.3.94	94
contracture of the nape and neck	2.3.93	94
contraindication	6.1.42	258
contraindication during pregnancy	6.1.43	258
contralateral collateral needling	5.1.173	246
<i>contralateral insertion</i>	5.1.173	246
contralateral meridian needling	5.1.172	246
controlling heaven	1.8.5	76
<i>controlling vessel</i>	1.4.26	33
conversion of deficiency into excess	1.7.97	53

Term	Code	Page
conversion of excess into deficiency	1.7.96	53
convulsion with abdominal pain	3.4.35	192
convulsion with uplifted eyes	3.4.34	191
convulsions	2.1.30	82
convulsive disease	3.1.192	176
cool dryness	1.6.43	42
cool dryness pattern/syndrome	2.6.13	118
cool the blood and dissipate stasis	4.2.180	219
cool the blood to stop bleeding	4.2.179	219
cool the liver to extinguish wind	4.2.198	220
coordinate the heart and kidney	4.2.96	212
corn	3.2.71	182
corneal opacity	3.5.3	194
corneal ulcer	3.5.31	196
corporeal soul	1.2.10	18
correlation of all four examinations	2.0.12	80
correspondence between nature and human	1.1.1	13
cotton-burning cupping method	5.3.8	254
cough	3.1.39	165
cough during pregnancy	3.3.46	188
cough with dyspnea	2.2.21	88
<i>cough with qi reflux</i>	2.2.21	88
cough-suppressing and panting-calming medicinal	6.1.93	262
counteracting assistant	6.2.11	264
couplet medicinals	6.2.5	264
courier medicinal	6.2.10	264
course of the meridian	5.1.121	241
cracked nipple	3.2.44	180
crapulent syncope	3.1.169	174
crimson tongue	2.1.56	84

Term	Code	Page
crossing point	5.1.65	237
cubit skin examination	2.4.75	105
<i>cultivation</i>	0.0.23	11
cun, guan and chi	2.4.9	101
cupping	5.3.1	254
cupping method	5.3.2	254
curdy fur	2.1.97	86
curled tongue	2.1.101	87
curled tongue and retracted testicles	2.1.102	87
cut the medicinal	6.1.7	255
cutaneous anthrax	3.2.14	178
cutaneous distention	3.1.109	170
cutaneous region	1.4.38	34
CV	1.4.26	33

D

dacryopyorrhea	3.5.20	196
damage to fluid	1.7.129	56
damage to the lung vessels	1.7.245	66
damage to the thoroughfare and conception vessels	1.7.302	70
damage to yang	1.7.18	47
damage to yin	1.7.19	47
dampness	1.6.14 1.6.35	40 41
<i>dampness attack</i>	1.7.312	71
dampness damage	3.1.9	162
dampness damaging spleen yang	1.7.212	63
dampness damaging spleen yin	1.7.213	63
dampness formation	1.7.348	74
<i>dampness impediment</i>	3.1.183	175
dampness malaria	3.1.17	163
dampness pattern/syndrome	2.6.10	118
dampness stroke	1.7.312	71
dampness toxin	1.6.52	43

Term	Code	Page
dampness toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.56	123
dampness turbidity	1.6.35	41
dampness warmth	3.1.36	164
dampness-dispelling formula	6.2.79	269
dampness-draining anti-icteric medicinal	6.1.73	260
dampness-draining diuretic medicinal	6.1.69	260
dampness-draining formula	6.2.78	269
dampness-fire	1.6.34	41
dampness-heat	1.6.33	41
dampness-heat in the liver meridian	1.7.191	61
<i>dampness-heat in the middle energizer</i>	1.7.217	64
dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.6.58	124
<i>dampness-phlegm</i>	1.6.83	45
dampness-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.29	120
dampness-resolving medicinal	6.1.68	260
dark of the eye	1.5.47	37
darkish complexion	2.1.16	81
darting shrimp pulse	2.4.65	105
day-prescription of points	5.1.154	245
dead fetus in the uterus	3.3.51	188
deafness	2.3.112	95
debilitation of the life gate fire	1.7.285	69
decoct first	6.2.45	267
decoct later	6.2.46	267
decoct separately	6.2.48	267
decoct with water	6.2.44	267
decocting pieces	6.2.39	266
decoction	6.2.22	265
decoction method	6.2.43	267
decoction preparation	6.2.22	265
deep multiple abscess	3.2.29	179

Term	Code	Page
<i>deep pulse</i>	2.4.30	103
deep turbid voice	2.2.3	87
deep-rooted boil	3.2.12	178
defense aspect	1.5.71	39
defense aspect pattern/ syndrome	2.12.2	156
defense qi	1.2.24	19
defense, qi, nutrient and blood pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.12.1	156
defense-exterior insecurity pattern/syndrome	2.5.42	112
<i>defensive qi</i>	1.2.24	19
deficiency	1.7.86	53
<i>deficiency above and excess below</i>	1.7.91	53
deficiency and excess	1.7.85	53
deficiency cold	1.7.74	52
deficiency cold pattern/ syndrome	2.5.69	116
deficiency fire	1.7.26	48
deficiency fire flaming upward	1.7.27	48
deficiency heat pattern/ syndrome	2.5.70	116
deficiency heat-clearing medicinal	6.1.59	259
deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.5.67	115
deficiency with excess complication	1.7.90	53
deficiency yang floating upward	1.7.40	49
deficiency-excess complex	1.7.88	53
deficiency-excess complex pattern/syndrome	2.5.71	116
deficiency-excess pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.5.66	115
delayed menstruation	3.3.15	185
delicate viscus	1.3.62	26
delirious speech	2.2.10	87

Term	Code	Page
delirium	2.1.9	81
dementia	3.1.76	167
dental caries	3.6.42	201
depressed fontanel	3.4.3	189
depressed nutrient-yin	1.7.333	73
depression	3.1.141	173
depressive psychosis	3.1.79	168
derangement of meridian qi	1.7.304	71
dermal needle	5.1.31	235
dermal needle therapy	5.1.32	235
detoxify	4.2.64	210
detoxify and kill worms	4.2.298	227
detriment to yang affects yin	1.7.20	47
detriment to yin affects yang	1.7.21	47
deviated eye and mouth	3.5.54	198
deviated mouth	3.6.50	201
deviated tongue	2.1.71	85
devitalized middle yang	1.7.229	65
diagnosis	2.0.1	79
diagnostic method	2.0.2	79
diagnostics	2.0.0	79
<i>diaphoresis</i>	4.2.5	205
diarrhea	2.3.169 3.1.94	98 169
<i>diet</i>	1.2.58	21
dietary contraindications	6.1.45	258
dietary contraindications during medication	6.1.44	258
dietary irregularities	1.6.76	44
dietary jaundice	3.1.104	170
dietary predilection	2.3.137	96
different treatments for the same disease	4.1.17	205
difficult delivery	3.3.49	188
difficult painful urination	2.3.196	100
difficult urination	2.3.192	100

Term	Code	Page
diffuse impediment and free yang	4.2.164	217
diffuse the lung	4.2.20	207
diffuse the lung to calm panting	4.2.23	207
diffuse the lung to resolve phlegm	4.2.24	207
diffuse the lung to suppress cough	4.2.22	207
diffuse the lung to suppress cough and to calm panting	4.2.21	207
diffusion	1.3.68	27
digestant formula	6.2.85	270
digestant medicinal	6.1.77	261
digital gangrene	3.2.28	179
dim vision	3.5.2	194
diphtheria	3.4.57	193
<i>direct attack</i>	1.7.359	75
direct moxibustion	5.2.6	251
direct qi downward	4.2.176	218
direct qi downward to relieve hiccup	4.2.177	218
direct qi downward to resolve phlegm	4.2.132	215
direct repulsion with bitter-cold	4.2.110	213
direct strike	1.7.359	75
direct stroke	1.7.359	75
<i>directional reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.139	243
<i>directional reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.140	243
directional supplementation and draining	5.1.139	243
directional supplementation and draining method	5.1.140	243
discharge fire with bitter-cold	4.2.59	209
discharge heat to preserve fluid	4.2.57	209
discomfort in the throat	2.3.128	96
disease	2.0.5 3.0.0	79 162

Term	Code	Page
disease cause pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.6.1	117
disease correspondences of the pulse	2.4.5	101
disease identification and treatment	2.0.6	79
disease of both defense and nutrient aspects	1.7.328	73
disease of both defense and qi aspects	1.7.327	72
disease pattern	1.7.5	46
disease produced by viscus	3.8.1	202
disease transmitted by meridian	3.8.2	202
disharmony of liver qi	1.7.170	60
disharmony of qi and blood	1.7.121	55
disharmony of the thoroughfare and conception vessels	1.7.300	70
disordered qi movement pattern/syndrome	2.7.8	125
disordered speech	2.2.12	87
dispel dampness	4.2.99	212
dispel filth with aroma	4.2.109	213
dispel phlegm	4.2.122	214
dispel stasis to promote regeneration	4.2.287	227
dispel summerheat and resolve dampness	4.2.105	213
dispel wind	4.2.13	206
dispel wind to free the collateral vessels	4.2.193	220
dispel wind-phlegm	4.2.130	215
disperse abscesses and boils	4.2.271	226
disperse abscesses and nodules	4.2.270	226
disperse from the exterior and moisten dryness	4.2.17	206
disperse swelling	4.2.301	228
disperse wind	4.2.14	206
disperse wind and discharge heat	4.2.16	206

Term	Code	Page
disperse wind-heat	4.2.18	206
<i>dispersion</i>	1.3.68	27
<i>dispersion of heart qi</i>	1.7.142	57
disposable needle	5.1.36	235
disquieted heart qi	1.7.141	57
dissipate blood stasis	4.2.189	219
dissipate cold	4.2.15	206
dissipate cold and dispel dampness	4.2.102	213
dissipate stasis	4.2.189	219
dissipated pulse	2.4.48	104
dissociation of yin and yang	1.7.13	46
dissolve	6.2.51	267
dissolve fish bones	4.2.272	226
distal bleeding	2.1.32	82
distant needling	5.1.165	246
distending pain	2.3.73	93
distending pain in the breasts during menstruation	3.3.27	186
distention and fullness	3.1.110	170
distention of eyeball	3.5.52	198
distress below the heart	2.3.147	97
dizziness	3.1.63	166
dizziness in pregnancy	3.3.43	188
dizzy vision	2.3.108	95
dominant qi	1.8.10	76
<i>dorsum nasi</i>	1.5.58	38
dosage	6.1.46	258
double tongue	3.6.34	200
double vision	2.3.110	95
double-handed needle insertion	5.1.101	240
douche	4.2.322	229
downbear counterflow to suppress cough and to calm panting	4.2.133	215
downbear fire	4.2.63	210

Term	Code	Page
downbearing the turbid	1.3.59	26
<i>downward flow of dampness-heat</i>	1.7.76	52
drain dampness	4.2.116	214
drain dampness with bland	4.2.118	214
drastic purgation	4.2.69	210
drastic purgative water-expelling medicinal	6.1.64	260
drastic water-expelling medicinal	6.1.64	260
draw out pus and dispel putridity	4.2.304	228
draw out pus and toxin	4.2.303	228
draw out toxin	4.2.302	228
dream emission	3.1.132	172
dream emission disease	3.1.132	172
dreaming of intercourse	2.3.203	100
dribbling	3.4.6	189
dribbling urinary block	3.1.130	172
dribbling urinary block disease	3.1.130	172
dribbling urination	2.3.198	100
drool	1.2.53	21
drooping eyelid	3.5.15	195
drooping pannus	3.5.33	197
drumskin pulse	2.4.50	104
dry and cracked fur	2.1.93	86
dry cholera	3.1.15	163
dry cough	3.1.40	165
dry dampness	4.2.112	213
dry dampness to fortify the spleen	4.2.115	214
dry dampness to relieve itching	4.2.300	228
dry dampness to resolve phlegm	4.2.124	214
dry dampness with bitter-warm	4.2.113	214
dry fur	2.1.92	86
dry mouth	2.3.115	95
dry nose	3.6.15	199

Term	Code	Page
dry retching	2.3.135	96
dry ringworm	3.2.78	182
dry stool	2.3.189	100
dry tongue	2.1.75	85
dryness	1.6.15	40
dryness accumulation	1.7.314	71
dryness affecting the clear orifices	1.7.313	71
dryness bind pattern/syndrome	2.6.16	118
dryness formation	1.7.344	74
dryness infantile malnutrition	3.4.16	190
dryness malnutrition	3.4.16	190
dryness qi	1.6.41	42
dryness qi damaging the lung	1.7.263	67
dryness-heat	1.6.42	42
dryness-moistening formula	6.2.80	269
dryness-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.26	120
dryness-treating formula	6.2.81	269
dual deficiency of qi and blood	1.7.127	56
dual deficiency of qi and yin	1.7.128	56
dual deficiency of the exterior and interior	1.7.65	51
dual deficiency of the heart-spleen	1.7.161	59
dual deficiency of the lung-spleen	1.7.244	66
dual deficiency of the spleen-stomach	1.7.219	64
dual deficiency of yin and yang	1.7.39	49
dual disease of the exterior and interior	1.7.66	51
dual excess of the exterior and interior	1.7.64	51
dual excess of the liver-gallbladder	1.7.194	62
dual excess of the spleen-stomach	1.7.221	64
dull pain	2.3.80	93

Term	Code	Page
dysentery	3.1.10	162
dysfunction of meridians	1.7.303	70
dysmenorrhea	3.3.25	186
dysphagia-occlusion	3.1.90	168
dyspnea	3.1.47	165
dyspnea of deficiency type	3.1.49	165
dyspnea of excess type	3.1.48	165
dysuria	2.3.193	100

E

ear acupuncture	5.1.45	236
ear acupuncture therapy	5.1.46	236
ear boil	3.6.1	198
ear distension	3.6.5	198
ear fistula	3.6.12	199
ear pain	2.3.62	92
ear pile	3.6.9	199
ear point	5.1.73	238
ear polyp	3.6.10	199
ear protuberance	3.6.11	199
ear sore	3.6.2	198
early abortion	3.3.37	187
early leakage of amniotic fluid	3.3.9	185
<i>early morning diarrhea</i>	2.3.177	99
earth	1.1.25	15
<i>earth controlling water</i>	1.1.38	16
earth engenders metal	1.1.32	16
<i>earth generating metal</i>	1.1.32	16
earth restrains water	1.1.38	16
eclampsia of pregnancy	3.3.45	188
<i>eclectic school</i>	0.0.29	11
eczema of external ear	3.6.3	198
edema	3.1.112	170
efflux diarrhea	2.3.178	99
effulgent heart-liver fire	1.7.158	59
effusion	3.2.22	179

Term	Code	Page
effusion of the back of the hand	3.2.23	179
effusion of the dorsum of the foot	3.2.24	179
eight belts	1.5.37	37
eight constitutions acupuncture	5.1.40	235
eight extra meridians	1.4.24	33
eight meeting points	5.1.64	237
eight methods	4.2.2	205
eight principles	2.0.15	80
eight tactical arrays	6.2.19	265
eighteen antagonisms	6.1.40	257
eightfold method of the sacred tortoise	5.1.156	245
eight principle pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.5.0	106
electro-acupuncture	5.1.207	249
electro-acupuncture device	5.1.208	249
electro-acupuncture therapy	5.1.209	249
electro-moxibustion	5.2.36	253
electrothermic needle	5.1.215	249
eliminate fire toxin	6.1.20	256
eliminate phlegm and soften hardness	4.2.135	215
eliminate the pathogenic factors	4.2.4	205
emergency formula	6.2.95	270
emetic formula	6.2.63	268
emetic medicinal	6.1.111	263
<i>emmeniopathy</i>	3.3.12	185
emolliate the liver	4.2.226	222
empty pain	2.3.81	93
encrusted skin	2.1.29	82
engender fluid	4.2.236	223
engendering	1.1.29	16
engendering transformation	1.3.61	26
enlarged tongue	2.1.57	84

Term	Code	Page
enliven the spleen and resolve dampness	4.2.106	213
enrich the kidney and nourish the liver	4.2.242	223
enrich the kidney and replenish yin	4.2.241	223
enrich water to moisten wood	4.2.246	224
enrich yin	4.2.227	222
enrich yin and subdue yang	4.2.229	222
enrich yin and tonify yang	4.2.228	222
enrich yin to repress yang	4.2.230	222
entwining throat wind	3.6.32	200
enuresis	2.3.200	100
epidemic conjunctivitis	3.5.23	196
epidemic pathogen	1.6.48	42
epidemic toxin dysentery	3.1.11	162
<i>epigastric distress</i>	2.3.147	97
<i>epigastric fullness</i>	2.3.151	97
<i>epigastric pain</i>	2.3.66 3.1.82	92 168
<i>epigastric rigidity</i>	2.3.148	97
<i>epigastric stuffiness and rigidity</i>	2.3.150	97
<i>epigastric tightness</i>	2.3.149	97
epilepsy	3.4.39	192
epistaxis	2.3.103 3.1.143	94 173
erroneous treatment	4.1.15	205
eruption	3.2.59	181
erysipelas	3.2.31	179
erysipelas facialis	3.1.24	163
erythema multiforme	3.2.84	183
erythema nodosum	3.2.85	183
<i>erythroderma neonatorum</i>	3.4.63	194
essence	1.2.1	17
essence chamber	1.5.66	39
essence orifice	1.5.67	39
essence, spirit, qi, blood, fluid and humor	1.2.0	17

Term	Code	Page
essence-spirit	1.2.8	18
essential qi deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.5.75	116
essential qi theory	1.1.4	13
essential qi theory, yin-yang theory, and five-phase theory	1.1.0	13
ethereal soul	1.2.9	18
etiology	1.6.2	39
even-numbered formula	6.2.17	265
evil qi	1.6.60	43
exanthem	3.4.52	193
excess	1.7.87	53
<i>excess above and deficiency below</i>	1.7.92	53
<i>excess above and deficiency below pattern/syndrome</i>	2.5.72	116
excess among the five minds	1.6.63	43
excess cold	1.7.73	52
excess cold pattern/syndrome	2.6.7	117
excess fire pattern/syndrome	2.6.17	118
excess heat in the liver meridian	1.7.193	62
excess heat in the lung	1.7.262	67
excess heat pattern/syndrome	2.6.6	117
excess metal failing to sound	1.7.266	68
excess of liver qi	1.7.167	59
excess pattern/syndrome	2.5.68	116
excess with deficiency complication	1.7.89	53
<i>excessive heat damaging fluid</i>	1.7.77	52
<i>excessive yang repelling yin</i>	1.7.37	49
<i>excessive yin repelling yang</i>	1.7.36	48
excessiveness in the stomach- intestines	1.7.230	65
exfoliated fur	2.1.99	86
exfoliative cheilitis	3.6.47	201
exhale-dispersing qi	1.8.28	78

Term	Code	Page
exhaustion of yin and collapse of yang	1.7.44	49
<i>exopathic disease</i>	1.6.9	40
expel from the nutrient aspect through the qi aspect	4.2.41	208
expel from within	4.2.295	227
expel pus	4.2.286	227
expel pus of sores	4.2.294	227
expel retained fluid by purgation	4.2.80	211
expel toxin	4.2.293	227
expel water by purgation	4.2.79	211
expel worms	4.2.282	226
expiry sweating	2.3.36	91
exterior and interior	1.7.48	49
exterior cold	1.7.50	50
exterior cold and interior heat	1.7.58	50
exterior cold disease induced from the spleen affected by cold	3.8.4	202
exterior cold disease induced from the stomach duct affected by cold	3.8.9	203
exterior cold pattern/syndrome	2.5.36	111
exterior deficiency	1.7.52	50
exterior deficiency and interior excess	1.7.60	51
exterior deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.5.38	111
exterior excess	1.7.53	50
exterior excess and interior deficiency	1.7.61	51
exterior excess pattern/ syndrome	2.5.39	111
exterior febrile disease induced from the kidney affected by heat	3.8.6	203
exterior heat	1.7.51	50
exterior heat and interior cold	1.7.59	51
exterior heat pattern/syndrome	2.5.37	111

Term	Code	Page
exterior pathogen entering the interior	1.7.70	51
exterior pattern/syndrome	2.5.33	110
exterior-effusing formula	6.2.62	268
<i>exterior-interior cold pattern/syndrome</i>	2.5.47	112
<i>exterior-interior heat pattern/syndrome</i>	2.5.48	113
exterior-interior pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.5.32	110
exterior-interior point combination	5.1.94	239
exterior-interior-releasing formula	6.2.65	268
exterior-releasing formula	6.2.76	269
exterior-releasing medicinal	6.1.49	259
exterior-securing anhidrotic medicinal	6.1.107	263
external cause	1.6.88	45
external cold	1.6.19	41
external cold and interior heat	2.3.29	90
external contraction	1.6.9	40
external dampness	1.6.20	41
external dryness	1.6.21	41
external dryness pattern/syndrome	2.6.11	118
external hemorrhoid	3.2.89	183
external medicine	3.2.0	177
external pathogen	1.6.4	39
external wind	1.6.18	40
external wind pattern/syndrome	2.6.2	117
extinguish wind	4.2.196	220
extinguish wind and resolve phlegm	4.2.129	215
extinguish wind to arrest convulsions	4.2.197	220
extra meridian	1.4.23	32
extra point	5.1.55	236

Term	Code	Page
extract	6.2.29	266
extraordinary organs	1.3.25	23
extreme heat engendering wind	1.7.186	61
extreme yang	1.1.20	15
extreme yin	1.1.19	14
exuberance and debilitation of the healthy qi or pathogenic qi	1.7.7	46
<i>exuberance of liver qi</i>	1.7.167	59
exuberant heart qi	1.7.139	57
exuberant heat damaging fluid	1.7.77	52
exuberant yang repelling yin	1.7.37	49
exuberant yin repelling yang	1.7.36	48
eye connector	1.5.51	38
eye discharge	3.5.53	198
eye infantile malnutrition	3.4.23	191
eye malnutrition	3.4.23	191
eye pain	2.3.107	95
eye socket	1.5.52	38
<i>eye-brightening formula</i>	6.2.92	270
eyebrow bone	1.5.20	36

F

facet joint electro-needling	5.1.233	251
facial acupuncture	5.1.44	236
facial complexion	2.1.12	81
failure to acclimatize to a new environment	1.6.78	45
faint during acupuncture treatment	5.1.196	248
faint low voice	2.2.4	87
faint pulse	2.4.46	104
fainting	2.1.8	81
false labor	3.3.8	185
false vitality	2.1.6	80
fat sore	3.2.72	182
fatigue due to overexertion	3.1.164	174
fatigue strangury	3.1.126	171

Term	Code	Page
favorable pattern/syndrome	1.7.362	75
fear	1.6.71	44
fear of cold	2.3.5	89
fearful throbbing	3.1.57	166
febrile convulsion with chills	3.1.194	176
febrile convulsion without chills	3.1.193	176
fecal incontinence	2.3.190	100
fecal qi	2.2.24	88
<i>female sex-stimulating essence</i>	1.3.71	27
fetal heat	3.4.2	189
fetal redness	3.4.63	194
<i>fetal toxicosis</i>	1.6.57	43
fetal toxin	1.6.57	43
fetal weakness	3.4.1	189
fetid mouth odor	2.2.27	88
fever	2.3.3	89
fever without chills	2.3.10	89
fever worsening at night	2.3.18	89
fifteen collateral vessels	1.4.40	34
fifth-watch cough	3.1.41	165
fifth-watch diarrhea	2.3.177	99
filiform needle	5.1.6	233
filiform needle therapy	5.1.18	234
fine pulse	2.4.34	103
finger cun	5.1.84	239
finger positioning	2.4.19	102
finger pressure	4.2.347	232
finger technique	2.4.17	102
finger-breadth cun	5.1.87	239
fingernail-pressing needle insertion	5.1.102	240
fire	1.1.24 1.6.16	15 40
<i>fire controlling metal</i>	1.1.37	16
fire engenders earth	1.1.31	16
fire formation	1.7.340	74
<i>fire generating earth</i>	1.1.31	16

Term	Code	Page
fire heat distressing the lung	1.7.264	68
fire needling	5.1.3	233
fire processing	6.1.10	255
fire restrains metal	1.1.37	16
fire toxin	1.6.51	42
fire toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.45	122
fire-draining formula	6.2.83	270
fire-heat pattern/syndrome	2.6.18	118
fire-insertion cupping method	5.3.6	254
fire-reducing formula	6.2.83	270
firm pulse	2.4.51	104
fissured tongue	2.1.63	84
fistula	3.2.66	182
five benign signs	2.4.80	106
<i>five center heat</i>	2.3.22	90
five circuits	1.8.2	76
five constants	1.1.43	17
<i>five elements</i>	1.1.22	15
<i>five elements theory</i>	1.1.21	15
<i>five emotions</i>	1.6.62	43
<i>five excessive emotions</i>	1.6.63	43
five flaccidity	3.4.47	192
five flavors	6.1.30	257
five limpnesses	3.4.47	192
five minds	1.6.62	43
five needling	5.1.158	245
five needling methods	5.1.158	245
<i>five orbiculi</i>	1.5.36	37
five phase points	5.1.74	238
five phase theory	1.1.21	15
five phases	1.1.22	15
five retardations	3.4.46	192
five sense organs	1.5.31	36
five stiffnesses	3.4.48	193
five transport points	5.1.57	237
five unwomanlinesses	3.3.4	185

Term	Code	Page
five viscera	1.3.6	22
five wheels	1.5.36	37
fixed impediment	3.1.183	175
fixed pain	2.3.87	94
fixed protruding eye	3.5.50	198
flash-fire cupping method	5.3.7	254
<i>flatus</i>	2.2.24	88
<i>flavor craving</i>	1.6.75	44
flavor of medicinals	6.1.26	256
flavor predilection	1.6.75	44
flesh impediment	3.1.187	176
<i>flesh orbiculus</i>	1.5.42	37
flesh wheel	1.5.42	37
fleshy goiter	3.2.47	180
fleshy tumor	3.2.53	181
fleshy wilting	3.1.199	177
flicking manipulation	4.2.336	231
flicking stone pulse	2.4.68	105
floating pulse	2.4.29	102
flooding	3.3.20	186
flooding and spotting	3.3.19	186
<i>flooding pulse</i>	2.4.33	103
flopping syncope	3.1.167	174
flowing phlegm	3.2.33	180
fluid	1.2.26 1.2.46	19 21
fluid and humor	1.2.48	21
fluid collapse	1.7.130	56
fluid consumption and blood dryness	1.7.132	56
fluid depletion and blood stasis	1.7.133	56
fluid paste	6.2.30	266
fluid qi	1.2.26	19
<i>fluid retention</i>	1.6.81	45
fluid retention pattern/ syndrome	2.8.3	129

Term	Code	Page
fluid-humor deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.8.6	129
fluid-humor depletion	1.7.131	56
fluid-humor pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.8.1	129
fluid-qi deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.8.7	130
flusteredness	2.3.143	97
<i>follicular conjunctivitis</i>	3.5.25	196
food accumulation	3.4.11	190
food accumulation pattern/ syndrome	2.6.21	119
<i>food and drink</i>	1.2.58	21
food damage	3.1.98	169
<i>food malnutrition</i>	3.4.18	190
<i>food stagnation pattern/ syndrome</i>	2.6.21	119
food-denying dysentery	3.1.13	163
foot acupuncture therapy	5.1.52	236
<i>forceful pulse</i>	2.4.36	103
foreign body in the eye	3.5.45	197
forgetfulness	3.1.75	167
form of the tongue	2.1.78	85
form yang with the pungent and sweet	4.2.248	224
form yin with the sour and sweet	4.2.247	224
formula	6.2.1	264
formula for menstruation and childbirth	6.2.94	270
formula for treating abscess and ulcer	6.2.93	270
formula study	0.0.14	10
fortify the spleen	4.2.216	221
fortify the spleen and drain dampness	4.2.220	222
fortify the spleen and nourish blood	4.2.218	221

Term	Code	Page
fortify the spleen and replenish qi	4.2.217	221
fortify the spleen and support yang	4.2.219	222
fortify the spleen to sweep phlegm	4.2.221	222
foul turbidity	1.6.37	42
four constitution types	0.0.34	12
four examinations	2.0.14	80
four qi	6.1.29	257
Four-Constitution Medicine	0.0.33	11
fourteen meridians	1.4.8	29
fox-creeper disease	3.2.100	184
free coursing	1.3.56	26
free the collateral vessels	4.2.192	219
frenetic movement of blood due to heat	1.7.125	56
frenetic stirring of the ministerial fire	1.7.28	48
frequent urination	2.3.195	100
fright	1.6.72	44
fright epilepsy	3.4.40	192
<i>fright malnutrition</i>	3.4.19	190
fright palpitations	3.1.56	166
fright seizure	3.4.61	194
frostbite	3.2.96	184
fullness below the heart	2.3.151	97
fullness in the chest and hypochondrium	2.3.157	98
fulminant diarrhea	2.3.180	99
fulminant throat wind	3.6.31	200
fulminating pulse	2.4.27	102
fumigation	4.2.314	229
fuming-washing therapy	4.2.321	229
fur color	2.1.80	85
furuncle	3.2.9	178
furunculosis	3.2.11	178
<i>f-cun</i>	5.1.84	239

Term	Code	Page
G		
galactorrhea	3.3.57	188
gallbladder	1.3.16	23
gallbladder distention	3.1.107	170
gallbladder excess heat	1.7.201	62
gallbladder heat	1.7.200	62
gallbladder heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.94	142
gallbladder meridian	1.4.20	32
gallbladder qi	1.2.35	20
gallbladder qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.96	142
<i>garlic moxibustion</i>	5.2.11	252
gastric stuffiness	3.1.83	168
gastric upset	3.1.88	168
<i>gastroesophageal reflux</i>	3.1.91	168
gastrointestinal pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.57	137
gastrointestinal qi stagnation pattern/syndrome	2.9.71	139
GB	1.4.20	32
general	0.0.0	9
<i>general body ache</i>	2.3.56	92
generalized itching	2.3.97	94
generalized pain	2.3.56	92
<i>generating</i>	1.1.29	16
<i>generation and transformation</i>	1.3.61	26
genital disease	3.1.204	177
genital pain	2.3.71	93
genital sweating	2.3.43	91
gentle moxibustion	5.2.17	252
genuine qi	1.2.20, 1.2.21	19
geographical tongue	2.1.66	84
<i>ginger moxibustion</i>	5.2.9	251
gingival eruption	3.4.30	191

Term	Code	Page
<i>globus hystericus</i>	3.1.55	166
gluteal abscess	3.2.20	179
goiter	3.2.45	180
Gosei school	0.0.27	11
governing complexion	2.1.22	82
<i>governing vessel</i>	1.4.25	33
governor vessel	1.4.25	33
gradual onset	1.7.9	46
<i>grandchild collateral vessel</i>	1.4.42	34
grasping manipulation	4.2.339	231
<i>gravid cough</i>	3.3.46	188
<i>gravid oppression</i>	3.3.44	188
<i>gravid vertigo</i>	3.3.43	188
gray fur	2.1.86	86
<i>greasy fur</i>	2.1.95	86
great collateral vessel of the spleen	1.4.41	34
great drainage needling	5.1.169	246
great dripping sweat	2.3.49	91
great needle	5.1.15	234
<i>greater canthus</i>	1.5.43	37
greater yang	1.8.19	77
<i>greater yang blood amassment</i>	2.11.22	156
greater yang blood amassment pattern/syndrome	2.11.22	156
greater yang bowel pattern/syndrome	2.11.4	153
<i>greater yang cold damage</i>	2.11.5	153
greater yang cold damage pattern/syndrome	2.11.5	153
<i>greater yang disease</i>	2.11.2	153
greater yang disease pattern/syndrome	2.11.2	153
greater yang meridian pattern/syndrome	2.11.3	153
greater yang person	0.0.35	12
<i>greater yang water-retention</i>	2.11.6	154

Term	Code	Page
greater yang water-retention pattern/syndrome	2.11.6	154
greater yin	1.8.22	77
<i>greater yin disease</i>	2.11.13	155
greater yin disease pattern/syndrome	2.11.13	155
greater yin person	0.0.37	12
greater yin wind stroke pattern/syndrome	2.11.14	155
greatly tonify the original qi	4.2.204	220
green-blue snake toxin sore	3.2.98	184
greenish fur	2.1.87	86
greenish glaucoma	3.5.36	197
gripping pain	2.3.77	93
growth fever	3.4.5	189
guest qi	1.8.11	76
<i>guiding and conducting exercise</i>	0.0.25	11
gum atrophy	3.6.43	201
gum bleeding	3.1.144	173
GV	1.4.25	33
gynecology and obstetrics	3.3.0	184
gynecomastia	3.2.40	180

H

habitual abortion	3.3.36	187
hairline sore	3.2.5	178
half needling	5.1.159	245
half-body absence of sweating	2.3.47	91
half-body sweating	2.3.46	91
half-exterior half-interior	1.7.49	50
half-exterior half-interior pattern/syndrome	2.5.35	111
<i>halitosis</i>	2.2.27	88
hand acupuncture	5.1.49	236
hand acupuncture therapy	5.1.50	236
hand-finger acupuncture technique	5.1.51	236

Term	Code	Page
hand-holding needle insertion	5.1.103	240
handle of the needle	5.1.20	234
handle-flicking method	5.1.131	242
handle-scraping method	5.1.128	242
handle-twisting method	5.1.129	242
handle-wagging method	5.1.130	242
hand-pressing method	5.1.110	241
hard bound stool	2.3.188	100
hardness and fullness	2.3.154	97
hardness of hearing	3.6.13	199
harmful hyperactivity and responding inhibition	1.1.45	17
harmonize and release the exterior and interior	4.2.94	212
harmonize and release the lesser yang	4.2.95	212
harmonize qi and blood	4.2.85	211
harmonize the blood	4.2.83	211
harmonize the liver and spleen	4.2.93	212
harmonize the liver and stomach	4.2.92	212
harmonize the nutrient	4.2.84	211
harmonize the nutrient and defense	4.2.86	211
harmonize the spleen and stomach	4.2.91	212
harmonize the stomach	4.2.90	212
harmonizing and releasing formula	6.2.66	268
harmonizing method	4.2.82	211
hastening qi	5.1.119	241
head wind	3.1.177	175
headache	2.3.57	92
headache and painful stiff nape	2.3.59	92
heal wounds and eliminate putridity	4.2.306	228
<i>health preservation</i>	0.0.23	11
<i>healthy complexion</i>	2.1.25	82

Term	Code	Page
healthy qi	1.2.20	18
healthy state	1.8.33	78
heart	1.3.10	22
<i>heart atrophy</i>	3.1.198	177
heart blood	1.3.36	24
heart blood deficiency	1.7.143	57
heart blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.4	131
heart blood stasis	1.7.144	57
heart blood stasis obstruction	1.7.144	57
heart blood stasis obstruction pattern/syndrome	2.9.14	132
heart blood stasis pattern/syndrome	2.9.14	132
heart deficiency with timidity	1.7.164	59
heart diseases pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.2	130
<i>heart fire</i>	1.2.15	18
heart fire flaming upward	1.7.147	58
heart impediment	3.1.190	176
heart infantile malnutrition	3.4.19	190
heart malnutrition	3.4.19	190
heart meridian	1.4.14	30
heart opens at the tongue	1.3.78	27
heart pain	3.1.60	166
heart qi	1.2.29	19
heart qi deficiency	1.7.140	57
heart qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.3	130
heart vessel obstruction pattern/syndrome	2.9.15	132
heart yang	1.3.38	24
heart yang collapse pattern/syndrome	2.9.9	131
heart yang deficiency	1.7.146	57
heart yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.8	131
heart yin	1.3.37	24

Term	Code	Page
heart yin deficiency	1.7.145	57
heart yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.7	131
heart-kidney interaction	1.3.77	27
heart-kidney non-interaction pattern/syndrome	2.9.113	144
heart-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.114	144
heart-liver blood deficiency	1.7.159	59
heart-liver blood deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.117	145
heart-lung qi deficiency	1.7.163	59
heart-lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.115	144
heart-nourishing tranquillizing medicinal	6.1.96	262
heart-stomach fire ablaze	1.7.160	59
heat	1.6.17	40
<i>heat above and cold below</i>	1.7.80	52
heat accumulation	1.7.318	72
heat binding in the lower energizer	1.7.75	52
heat block	1.7.316	72
heat block pattern/syndrome	2.5.64	115
heat damaging bright spirit	1.7.152	58
<i>heat damaging kidney yin</i>	1.7.291	70
heat damaging the sinews	1.7.315	71
heat depression	1.7.319	72
heat distressing the large intestine	1.7.272	68
heat entering the blood aspect	1.7.329	73
heat entering the blood chamber	1.7.298	70
heat entering the pericardium	1.7.153	58
heat formation	1.7.338	73
heat impediment	3.1.184	176
heat in both exterior and interior	1.7.63	51
heat in the palms and soles	2.3.25	90

Term	Code	Page
<i>heat intolerance</i>	2.3.7	89
heat pattern/syndrome	2.5.58	114
heat scorching kidney yin	1.7.291	70
<i>heat stagnation</i>	1.7.319	72
heat strangury	3.1.121	171
heat syncope	3.1.170	174
heat tearing	3.5.18	195
heat toxin	1.6.50	42
heat toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.55	123
heat vexation	2.3.23	90
heat wheezing	3.1.46	165
heat-clearing and blood- cooling medicinal	6.1.58	259
heat-clearing and dampness- drying medicinal	6.1.56	259
heat-clearing and detoxicating medicinal	6.1.57	259
heat-clearing and fire-purging medicinal	6.1.55	259
heat-clearing astringent medicinal	6.1.109	263
heat-clearing formula	6.2.82	270
heat-clearing medicinal	6.1.54	259
heat-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.25	119
<i>heatstroke</i>	3.1.29	164
heavenly tenth	1.3.71	27
heaven-penetrating cooling	5.1.150	244
heaven-penetrating cooling method	5.1.150	244
heavy body	2.3.96	94
heavy head and light feet	2.3.95	94
heavy pain	2.3.78	93
heavy-headedness	2.3.60	92
heel pain	2.3.72	93
hematemesis	3.1.145	173
hematochezia	3.1.146	173
hematuria	3.1.147	173
hemilateral head wind	3.1.178	175

Term	Code	Page
hemiplegia	3.1.72	167
hemoptysis	2.3.102	94
<i>hemorrhage</i>	2.3.101	94
hemorrhoid	3.2.87	183
hemostatic	6.1.79	261
hemostatic medicinal	6.1.79	261
herbal acupuncture	5.1.213	249
herbal acupuncture therapy	5.1.214	249
herbal drugs	6.1.2	255
herbs	6.1.2	255
hernia	3.1.205	177
herpes simplex	3.2.67	182
herpes zoster	3.2.68	182
hiccup	3.1.89	168
hidden heat in the thoroughfare and conception vessels	1.7.299	70
hidden pulse	2.4.52	104
high bone	1.5.25	36
high fever	2.3.12	89
hoarseness	2.2.8	87
holism	1.1.2	13
hollow pulse	2.4.49	104
homogeny of essence and blood	1.2.50	21
homogeny of fluid and blood	1.2.49	21
homogeny of liver and kidney	1.3.83	28
honeyed pill	6.2.25	265
horse-spleen wind	3.4.10	190
hot medicinal compress	4.2.315	229
hour-prescription of points	5.1.155	245
house of bright essence	1.5.27	36
house of the original spirit	1.3.27	24
HT	1.4.14	30
humor	1.2.47	21
humor collapse pattern/syndrome	2.8.5	129

Term	Code	Page
hyalosis	3.5.40	197
hydramnios	3.3.40	187
hydrocele	3.2.95	184
<i>hydrocephalus</i>	3.4.45	192
hyperactive heart fire	1.7.148	58
<i>hyperactive heart-liver fire</i>	1.7.158	59
hyperactive kidney fire	1.7.280	69
hypertonicity of the sinews	3.7.6	202
hypochondriac pain	2.3.65	92
<i>hypogalactia</i>	3.3.55	188
hysteria	3.3.69	189
I		
ideation	1.2.11	18
impacted cerumen	3.6.4	198
impaired lung depuration	1.7.249	66
impediment disease	3.1.180	175
impediment of the sinew	3.7.7	202
impotence	2.3.201 3.1.135	100 172
improve vision	4.2.274	226
inability to sleep	2.3.53	92
<i>inborn</i>	1.3.74	27
incense thread	5.2.34	253
inch, bar and cubit	2.4.9	101
incision therapy	5.1.221	250
increase humor to relax bowels	4.2.81	211
increase the appetite	4.2.223	222
<i>incubative pathogen</i>	1.6.47	42
indication	6.2.20	265
indirect moxibustion	5.2.8	251
induce diuresis to alleviate edema	4.2.119	214
induce diuresis to drain dampness	4.2.117	214
infant acupuncture therapy	5.1.38	235
infant needle	5.1.37	235

Term	Code	Page
infantile asthma	3.4.9	190
infantile convulsion	3.4.33	191
infantile malnutrition	3.4.12	190
infantile nutritional edema	3.4.26	191
infertility	3.3.59	189
inflammatory swelling of the eyelid	3.5.12	195
influenza	3.1.8	162
infra-umbilical region	1.5.17	36
inhale-gathering qi	1.8.26	78
inhibit acidity to relieve pain	4.2.51	209
inhibited bladder	1.7.292	70
inhibited lung qi	1.7.253	67
inhibited qi movement	1.7.105	54
inhibited qi movement pattern/ syndrome	2.7.9	125
inhibited qi transformation	1.7.106	54
inhibited urination	2.3.193	100
inhibition and generation	1.1.44	17
injection	6.2.40	267
injured labor	3.3.10	185
innate	1.3.74	27
innate essence	1.2.2	17
innate qi	1.2.18	18
inner canthus	1.5.43	37
inquiry	2.3.1	88
inquiry about cold and heat	2.3.2	88
inquiry about sweating	2.3.31	90
<i>insecurity of defense qi</i>	<i>1.7.67</i>	51
insecurity of exterior qi	1.7.67	51
<i>insecurity of heart qi</i>	<i>1.7.142</i>	57
insecurity of kidney qi	1.7.281	69
insecurity of the thoroughfare and conception vessels	1.7.301	70
insensitivity	2.3.99	94
insertion of needle with tube	5.1.107	240
insertion resistance	5.1.204	248

Term	Code	Page
insomnia	2.3.53 3.1.74	92 167
inspection	2.1.1	80
inspection of finger venules	2.1.34	82
inspection of the complexion	2.1.11	81
inspection of the tongue	2.1.40	83
inspection of the vitality	2.1.2	80
insufficiency of gallbladder qi	1.7.202	62
insufficiency of kidney essence	1.7.278	69
insufficiency of middle qi	1.7.228	64
insufficiency of the large intestinal humor	1.7.269	68
insufflations	4.2.323	230
<i>insulting</i>	<i>1.1.42</i>	16
integration of traditional Chinese and Western medicine	0.0.10	9
intense heart fire pattern/ syndrome	2.9.11	131
intense liver fire pattern/ syndrome	2.9.89	141
intense lung heat pattern/ syndrome	2.9.32	134
intense stomach fire	1.7.240	66
<i>intense stomach fire pattern/ syndrome</i>	<i>2.9.64</i>	138
<i>inter-consuming-supporting relationship of yin and yang</i>	<i>1.1.15</i>	14
<i>interdependence between yin and yang</i>	<i>1.1.14</i>	14
interior cold	1.7.54	50
interior cold disease induced from the stomach affected by cold	3.8.7	203
interior cold pattern/syndrome	2.5.43	112
interior deficiency	1.7.56	50
interior deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.5.45	112
interior disease moving out to the exterior	1.7.71	51
interior excess	1.7.57	50

Term	Code	Page
interior excess pattern/ syndrome	2.5.46	112
interior febrile disease induced from the liver affected by heat	3.8.8	203
interior febrile disease induced from the stomach affected by heat	3.8.5	203
interior heat	1.7.55	50
interior heat pattern/syndrome	2.5.44	112
interior pattern/syndrome	2.5.34	110
interior-attacking formula	6.2.64	268
interior-warming medicinal	6.1.75	261
intermediate qi	1.8.12	76
intermenstrual bleeding	3.3.23	186
intermittent dysentery	3.1.12	163
intermittent pulse	2.4.54	104
intermuscular needling	5.1.168	246
internal blazing of heart fire	1.7.149	58
internal block and external collapse	1.7.45	49
internal cause	1.6.87	45
internal cold	1.6.23	41
internal cold and external heat	2.3.30	90
internal damage	1.6.61	43
internal dampness	1.6.24	41
internal dryness	1.6.25	41
internal dryness pattern/ syndrome	2.6.12	118
internal hemorrhoid	3.2.88	183
internal medicine	3.1.0	162
<i>internal stirring of liver wind</i>	<i>1.7.185</i>	61
internal toxin	1.6.56	43
internal wind	1.6.22	41
internal wind pattern/syndrome	2.6.3	117
interrupt malaria	4.2.297	227
interstices	1.5.3	35
<i>inter-transformation of yin and yang</i>	<i>1.1.18</i>	14

Term	Code	Page
intestinal abscess	3.2.21	179
intestinal dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.69	139
intestinal impediment	3.1.191	176
<i>intolerance of cold</i>	2.3.5	89
intradermal needle	5.1.29	235
intradermal needle therapy	5.1.30	235
intramuscular stimulation needling	5.1.228	250
invasion of white membrane into the cornea	3.5.27	196
inverted menstruation	3.3.26	186
invigorate the stomach	4.2.222	222
invigorate yang	4.2.210	221
inward invasion of exterior pathogen	1.7.68	51
<i>irritable heat sensation</i>	2.3.23	90
itchy eyes	2.3.106	95

J

jaundice	3.1.100	169
join valley needling	5.1.162	245
joint needling	5.1.161	245
joint-running wind	3.1.185	176
joy	1.6.66	44
judging the inside from observation of the outside	2.0.11	79
juncibustion	5.2.25	253

K

Kampo formula	6.2.3	264
Kampo medicine	0.0.4	9
keratic pannus	3.5.34	197
keratomalacia	3.5.48	198
KI	1.4.17	31
kidney	1.3.14	23
<i>kidney atrophy</i>	<i>3.1.197</i>	177

Term	Code	Page
kidney deficiency	1.7.277	69
kidney deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.99	142
kidney deficiency with water flood	1.7.279	69
kidney essence	1.2.4	17
kidney essence insufficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.100	142
kidney excess	1.7.290	69
kidney failing to receive qi	1.7.282	69
kidney heat	1.7.288	69
kidney infantile malnutrition	3.4.22	191
kidney malnutrition	3.4.22	191
kidney meridian	1.4.17	31
kidney meridian cold- dampness pattern/syndrome	2.9.108	143
kidney opens at the ears	1.3.82	28
kidney qi	1.2.33	20
kidney qi deficiency	1.7.286	69
kidney qi deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.101	142
kidney qi excess	1.7.289	69
kidney qi insecurity pattern/ syndrome	2.9.102	143
kidney yang	1.3.47	25
kidney yang deficiency	1.7.284	69
kidney yang deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.105	143
kidney yang-tonifying medicinal	6.1.102	263
kidney yin	1.3.46	25
kidney yin deficiency	1.7.283	69
kidney yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.103	143
kidney-bladder diseases pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.98	142
kill worms	4.2.283	226
kneading manipulation	4.2.330	230
Koho school	0.0.28	11

Term	Code	Page
<i>Koryo hand acupuncture therapy</i>	5.1.51	236
L		
labor	3.3.6	185
lack of strength	2.3.51	92
lack of vitality	2.1.5	80
lacrimal orifice	1.5.45	37
lactational malnutrition	3.4.25	191
lance needle	5.1.10	233
<i>lancing needle</i>	5.1.10	233
<i>large intestinal cold accumulation</i>	1.7.267	68
large intestinal cold bind	1.7.267	68
large intestinal dampness-heat	1.7.268	68
large intestinal dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.77	140
large intestinal deficiency	1.7.274	68
large intestinal deficiency cold	1.7.270	68
large intestinal excess	1.7.275	68
large intestinal excess heat	1.7.271	68
large intestinal fluid deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.75	139
large intestinal heat	1.7.276	68
<i>large intestinal heat accumulation</i>	1.7.273	68
large intestinal heat bind	1.7.273	68
large intestinal heat bind pattern/syndrome	2.9.76	140
large intestine	1.3.19	23
large intestine meridian	1.4.11	29
<i>large needle</i>	5.1.14	234
large pulse	2.4.57	104
laser acupuncture	5.1.210	249
laser acupuncture therapy	5.1.211	249
lassitude of spirit	2.3.50	92
late abortion	3.3.38	187
late afternoon tidal fever	2.3.15	89

Term	Code	Page
latent meridian transmission	5.1.123	242
latent qi	1.6.47	42
latent summerheat	3.1.32	164
<i>latter-day school</i>	0.0.27	11
laxation	4.2.71	210
laxative	6.1.63	260
laxative medicinal	6.1.63	260
leaking roof pulse	2.4.66	105
leaking sweat	2.3.45	91
left-right point combination	5.1.91	239
leg flaccidity	3.1.201	177
leopard-spot needling	5.1.160	245
<i>lesser canthus</i>	1.5.44	37
lesser yang	1.8.21	77
lesser yang bowel pattern/ syndrome	2.11.12	154
<i>lesser yang disease</i>	2.11.10	154
lesser yang disease pattern/ syndrome	2.11.10	154
lesser yang meridian pattern/ syndrome	2.11.11	154
lesser yang person	0.0.36	12
lesser yin	1.8.23	77
lesser yin cold transformation	1.7.349	74
lesser yin cold transformation pattern/syndrome	2.11.17	155
<i>lesser yin disease</i>	2.11.15	155
lesser yin disease pattern/ syndrome	2.11.15	155
lesser yin exterior cold pattern/ syndrome	2.11.16	155
lesser yin heat transformation	1.7.350	74
lesser yin heat transformation pattern/syndrome	2.11.18	155
lesser yin person	0.0.38	12
<i>leukorrhea</i>	3.3.29	187
LI	1.4.11	29
lichenoid erosion of the throat	3.6.26	200

Term	Code	Page
life bar	2.1.38	83
life gate	1.2.13 2.1.38	18 83
life gate fire	1.2.14	18
life nurturing	0.0.23	11
lifting, pressing and searching	2.4.20	102
lifting-thrusting method	5.1.127	242
<i>lifting-thrusting reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.137	243
<i>lifting-thrusting reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.138	243
lifting-thrusting supplementation and draining	5.1.137	243
lifting-thrusting supplementation and draining method	5.1.138	243
ligation therapy	4.2.320	229
lily disease	3.1.81	168
limp wilting tongue	2.1.69	85
lip cancer	3.6.49	201
lip pustule	3.6.48	201
liquor addiction	1.6.77	45
listening and smelling examination	2.2.1	87
listening to sounds	2.2.2	87
liver	1.3.11 1.3.57	22 26
<i>liver atrophy</i>	3.1.200	177
liver blood	1.3.39	25
liver blood deficiency	1.7.176	60
liver blood deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.80	140
liver cold	1.7.187	61
liver deficiency	1.7.174	60
<i>liver deficiency cold</i>	1.7.178	60
<i>liver depression</i>	1.7.196	62
liver depression and spleen deficiency	1.7.197	62
liver excess heat	1.7.190	61

Term	Code	Page
liver fire	1.7.182	61
liver fire flaming upward	1.7.183	61
liver fire invading the lung	1.7.184	61
liver fixity	3.1.106	170
liver heat	1.7.189	61
liver infantile malnutrition	3.4.20	191
liver malnutrition	3.4.20	191
liver meridian	1.4.21	32
liver opens at the eyes	1.3.81	28
liver qi	1.2.30	19
liver qi ascending counterflow	1.7.168	59
liver qi deficiency	1.7.175	60
liver qi depression	1.7.196	62
liver qi depression pattern/ syndrome	2.9.79	140
liver qi invading the spleen	1.7.173	60
liver qi invading the stomach	1.7.172	60
<i>liver qi stagnation/constraint pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.79	140
<i>liver stagnation and spleen deficiency</i>	1.7.197	62
liver wind	1.6.22 1.7.185	41 61
<i>liver wind pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.83	140
liver yang	1.3.41	25
liver yang deficiency	1.7.178	60
liver yang deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.82	140
liver yang transforming into fire	1.7.180	61
liver yang transforming into wind	1.7.181	61
liver yin	1.3.40	25
liver yin deficiency	1.7.177	60
liver yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.81	140
liver-emolliating medicinal	6.1.104	263
liver-gallbladder dampness- heat	1.7.192	62

Term	Code	Page
liver-gallbladder dampness- heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.91	141
liver-gallbladder diseases pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.78	140
liver-gallbladder qi depression	1.7.195	62
<i>liver-gallbladder qi stagnation</i>	1.7.195	62
liver-kidney depletion	1.7.198	62
liver-kidney yin deficiency	1.7.199	62
liver-kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.125	146
liver-pacifying and wind- extinguishing medicinal	6.1.97	262
<i>liver-spleen disharmony pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.124	146
<i>liver-stomach disharmony pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.123	145
Li-Zhu medicine	0.0.30	11
location of disease	1.7.3	46
location of point by finger cun	5.1.82	238
location of points by anatomical landmarks	5.1.79	238
location of points by bone standard	5.1.80	238
<i>location of points by skeletal standard</i>	5.1.80	238
lochia	3.3.52	188
<i>lochiorrhea</i>	3.3.54	188
long needle	5.1.13	234
long pulse	2.4.37	103
long-rinse	6.1.19	256
<i>loose stool</i>	2.3.185	99
loss of blood	2.3.101	94
loss of consciousness	3.1.64	167
loss of smell	2.3.114	95
loss of vitality	2.1.4	80
loss of voice	2.2.7	87
low grade drug	6.1.25	256
<i>low libido</i>	2.3.202	100

Term	Code	Page
lower abdomen	1.5.15	35
lower abdominal colic	2.3.68	93
lower abdominal contracture	2.3.161	98
lower abdominal cramp	2.3.160	98
lower abdominal fullness	2.3.162	98
lower abdominal mass	3.3.60	189
lower abdominal mass in woman	3.3.60	189
lower abdominal numbness	2.3.163	98
lower body reversal with upper body veiling	1.7.138	57
<i>lower burner</i>	1.3.24	23
lower energizer	1.3.24	23
lower energizer dampness-heat	1.7.76	52
lower energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.13.7	161
lower energizer disease pattern/syndrome	2.13.4	161
lower orifices	1.5.34	37
lower sea points of the six bowels	5.1.67	237
lower wasting-thirst	3.1.162	174
LR	1.4.21	32
LU	1.4.10	29
lubricant laxation	4.2.72	210
lubricant laxative formula	6.2.75	269
lumbago	2.3.70 3.1.203	93 177
lumbar vertebrae	1.5.23	36
lumbar vertebrae disease induced by exopathogen	3.8.10	203
lung	1.3.13	22
lung abscess	3.1.53	166
lung atrophy	3.1.196	176
lung cold	1.7.258	67
lung consumption	3.1.54	166
lung cough	3.1.42	165
lung deficiency	1.7.255	67

Term	Code	Page
lung diseases pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.23	133
lung distention	3.1.52	165
lung excess	1.7.259	67
lung failing to distribute fluid	1.7.248	66
lung fire	1.7.260	67
lung heat	1.7.261	67
lung heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.31	134
lung infantile malnutrition	3.4.21	191
lung malnutrition	3.4.21	191
lung meridian	1.4.10	29
lung opens at the nose	1.3.79	28
lung qi	1.2.32	19
lung qi ascending counterflow	1.7.254	67
lung qi deficiency	1.7.257	67
lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.24	133
lung qi failing to diffuse	1.7.252	67
<i>lung qi failing to disperse</i>	1.7.252	67
lung yang	1.3.45	25
lung yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.26	133
lung yin	1.3.44	25
lung yin deficiency	1.7.256	67
lung yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.25	133
lung-intestine astringent medicinal	6.1.110	263
lung-kidney qi deficiency	1.7.247	66
lung-kidney qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.118	145
lung-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.120	145
lung-kidney yin deficiency	1.7.246	66
lung-kidney yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.119	145
<i>lung-spleen qi deficiency</i>	1.7.244	66

Term	Code	Page
luxuriant, withered, tough and tender-soft	2.1.49	83
M		
macula	3.2.60	181
magnetotherapeutic device	5.1.206	249
main meridian	1.4.22	32
major formula	6.2.12	264
<i>major indication</i>	6.2.20	265
malaria	3.1.16	163
<i>malaria-like disease</i>	3.1.16	163
malign complexion	2.1.26	82
malign qi	1.6.60	43
malnutrition	3.4.12	190
mammary fistula	3.2.41	180
mammary hyperplasia	3.2.43	180
mammary phthisis	3.2.39	180
management and regulation	1.3.66	27
manic psychosis	3.1.80	168
manic raving	2.2.14	88
marginal blepharitis	3.5.10	195
margins of the tongue	2.1.43	83
marrow	1.3.29	24
massage	4.2.326	230
massage along meridian	5.1.133	242
massage technique before/after acupuncture	4.2.345	232
mastitis during pregnancy	3.2.36	180
materia medica	6.1.3	255
maxillary osteomyelitis	3.6.46	201
measles	3.4.51	193
measles toxin	1.6.55	43
mechanism of disease	1.7.1	46
medicated cupping	5.3.10	254
medicated tea	6.2.35	266
medicated thread	6.2.42	267

Term	Code	Page
medicated thread therapy	4.2.318	229
medicated wine	6.2.33	266
medicated wine therapy	4.2.313	229
medicinal	6.1.0	255
<i>medicinal herbs</i>	6.1.2	255
medicinal material	6.1.4	255
medicinal moxibustion	5.2.29	253
<i>medicinal slices</i>	6.2.39	266
medicinal strip	6.2.36	266
medicinal treatment	6.0.0	255
medium grade drug	6.1.24	256
membrane source	1.5.13	35
<i>menorrhagia</i>	3.3.18	186
<i>menostaxis</i>	3.3.22	186
menstrual disease	3.3.12	185
menstrual irregularities	3.3.13	185
<i>menstruation</i>	1.3.71	27
menstruation at irregular intervals	3.3.16	186
menstruation during pregnancy	3.3.5	185
mental confusion	2.1.7	81
meridian and collateral	0.0.16 1.4.1	10 28
meridian and collateral study	0.0.16	10
meridian and collateral theory	1.4.2	28
meridian divergence	1.4.34	34
meridian entry	6.1.32	257
meridian needling	5.1.166	246
meridian phenomenon	5.1.120	241
meridian point	5.1.54	236
meridian qi	1.2.38	20
meridian sinew	1.4.36	34
meridian stroke	3.1.69	167
<i>meridian therapy</i>	5.1.124	242
meridian treatment	5.1.124	242
<i>meridian tropism</i>	6.1.32	257
meridian vessel	1.4.3	28

Term	Code	Page
<i>meridian-induced disease</i>	3.8.2	202
<i>meridians</i>	1.4.1	28
meridian-warming hemostatic medicinal	6.1.83	261
metal	1.1.26	15
<i>metal controlling wood</i>	1.1.40	16
metal engenders water	1.1.33	16
<i>metal generating water</i>	1.1.33	16
metal restrains wood	1.1.40	16
<i>metastatic abscess</i>	3.2.29	179
method of treatment	4.2.1	205
<i>metrorrhagia</i>	3.3.19, 3.3.20	186
<i>metrostaxis</i>	3.3.21	186
miasma	1.6.59 3.1.22	43 163
miasmatic malaria	3.1.21	163
miasmatic toxin	1.6.59	43
microsystem acupuncture	5.1.41	235
microwave acumoxa	5.1.216	249
microwave acupuncture therapy	5.1.217	249
<i>middle burner</i>	1.3.23	23
middle energizer	1.3.23	23
middle energizer disease pattern/syndrome	2.13.3	161
middle finger cun	5.1.85	239
middle qi	1.2.37	20
middle wasting-thirst	3.1.161	174
midnight	1.8.7	76
midnight-midday ebb flow	5.1.152	244
midnight-midday ebb flow acupuncture	5.1.153	244
mild fever	2.3.14	89
mild fluid retention	3.1.155	173
mild infantile malnutrition	3.4.13	190
mild infantile malnutrition with accumulation	3.4.14	190

Term	Code	Page
mild malnutrition	3.4.13	190
mild malnutrition with accumulation	3.4.14	190
mild purgation	4.2.70	210
milk regurgitation	3.4.7	190
mind	1.2.5 1.2.8	17 18
minister medicinal	6.2.8	264
ministerial fire	1.2.16	18
minor formula	6.2.13	265
mirror tongue	2.1.65	84
miscellaneous disease	3.1.4	162
moderate pulse	2.4.44	103
modified formula	4.1.20	205
moist fur	2.1.91	86
moisten dryness to resolve phlegm	4.2.131	215
moisten the intestines	4.2.73	210
moisten the lung	4.2.235	223
moisten the lung to suppress cough	4.2.138	215
mole cricket boil disease	3.2.10	178
Mongolian traditional medicine	0.0.8	9
moodiness during menstruation	3.3.28	186
morbid complexion	2.1.24	82
morbid pulse	2.4.15	102
morning sickness	3.3.32	187
mother and child affecting each other	1.1.48	17
mother qi	1.1.46	17
<i>mother-reinforcing child-reducing method</i>	5.1.151	244
mother-supplementing child-draining method	5.1.151	244
motility of the tongue	2.1.77	85
<i>motive force of the kidney region</i>	1.2.34	20
mountain-burning fire	5.1.149	244

Term	Code	Page
mountain-burning fire method	5.1.149	244
mouth odor	2.2.26	88
move qi	4.2.88	212
move qi to relieve pain	4.2.166	218
move qi to soothe the chest	4.2.167	218
move qi to soothe the middle	4.2.165	217
moving impediment	3.1.181	175
moxa	5.2.2	251
moxa burner	5.2.31	253
moxa burner moxibustion	5.2.32	253
moxa cone	5.2.4	251
moxa cone moxibustion	5.2.5	251
moxa floss	5.2.3	251
moxa roll	5.2.12, 5.2.15	252
moxa roll moxibustion	5.2.16	252
moxa stick	5.2.12	252
moxa stick moxibustion	5.2.13	252
moxa stick moxibustion therapy	5.2.14	252
<i>moxa-stick moxibustion</i>	5.2.16	252
moxibustion	5.2.1	251
moxibustion indications	5.2.37	253
moxibustion on garlic	5.2.11	252
moxibustion on ginger	5.2.9	254
moxibustion on salt	5.2.10	251
moxibustion scar	5.2.21	252
moxibustion with moxa tube	5.2.33	253
moxibustion-prohibited point	5.2.39	254
<i>multi-direction needling</i>	5.1.162	245
mumps	3.4.56	193
muscle electro-needling	5.1.230	250
muscle interspace	1.5.9	35
muscular twitching and cramp	2.3.100	94
muttering	2.2.9	87
mutual assistance	6.1.34	257
mutual contention of wind and dampness	1.7.308	71

Term	Code	Page
mutual inhibition	6.1.37	257
mutual reinforcement	6.1.33	257
mutual restraint	6.1.35	257
mutual rooting of yin and yang	1.1.14	14
mutual suppression	6.1.36	257
mysterious mansion	1.5.4	35
N		
nasal boil	3.6.14	199
nasal congestion	2.3.113	95
nasal polyp	3.6.19	199
nasal sore	3.6.16	199
<i>nasal vestibulitis</i>	3.6.16	199
nasopharynx	1.5.65	39
<i>natural flux of yin and yang</i>	1.1.15	14
natural life span	1.8.16	77
natural moxibustion	5.2.26	253
nature of disease	1.7.4	46
nature of medicinals	6.1.27	256
nausea	2.3.130	96
needle breakage	5.1.198	248
needle insertion	5.1.99	240
needle insertion method	5.1.100	240
needle manipulation	5.1.125	242
needle retention	5.1.185	247
needle sensation	5.1.115	241
<i>needle sickness</i>	5.1.196	248
needle withdrawal	5.1.194	248
needle withdrawal method	5.1.195	248
needle-embedding method	5.1.187	247
needling and moxibustion method	5.1.2	233
needling hand	5.1.108	240
needling method	5.1.157	245
<i>needling myofascial trigger points</i>	5.1.228	250

Term	Code	Page
needling-prohibited point	5.1.203	248
needling-sensitive person	5.1.205	248
neonatal cough	3.4.8	190
neonatal jaundice	3.4.62	194
nerve electro-needling	5.1.231	250
<i>neutral reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.147	244
<i>neutral reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.148	244
neutral supplementation and draining	5.1.147	244
neutral supplementation and draining method	5.1.148	244
new contraction	3.1.5	162
night blindness	3.5.43	197
night crying	3.4.59	194
night crying due to fright	3.4.60	194
night sweating	2.3.34	91
nine classical needles	5.1.5	233
nine needling	5.1.164	245
nine needling methods	5.1.164	245
nineteen incompatibilities	6.1.41	258
<i>non-acclimatization</i>	1.6.78	45
non-contraction of heart qi	1.7.142	57
non-indication of acupuncture	5.1.202	248
non-indication of moxibustion	5.2.38	254
non-inflammatory edema of the eyelid	3.5.13	195
non-interaction between the heart and kidney	1.7.162	59
<i>non-meridian point</i>	5.1.55	236
non-scarring moxibustion	5.2.22	252
non-segmental needling	5.1.224	250
<i>non-sequential transmission</i>	1.7.353	75
non-transmission	1.7.354	75
<i>normal circuit qi</i>	1.8.15	77
normal pulse	2.4.14	102
<i>normal qi</i>	1.2.20	18

Term	Code	Page
normal transmission	1.7.352	75
nose acupuncture	5.1.47	236
nose acupuncture therapy	5.1.48	236
nosebleed	3.1.143	173
<i>nourish blood</i>	4.2.213	221
<i>nourish heart</i>	4.2.214	221
nourish the blood and emolliate the liver	4.2.245	224
nourish the heart to tranquilize	4.2.260	225
<i>nourish the heart yin</i>	4.2.231	223
<i>nourish the liver yin</i>	4.2.232	223
<i>nourish the lung yin</i>	4.2.234	223
<i>nourish the stomach</i>	4.2.239	223
nourish the stomach yin	4.2.239	223
nourish yin to extinguish wind	4.2.199	220
number of cones	5.2.35	253
numbness	2.3.99 3.1.73	94 167
numbness below the umbilicus	2.3.168	98
numbness in the mouth	2.3.126	96
numbness of the skin	2.3.98	94
nutrient and blood	1.2.45	21
nutrient and defense	1.2.56	21
nutrient aspect	1.5.73	39
nutrient aspect pattern/ syndrome	2.12.4	157
nutrient qi	1.2.25	19
nutrient-defense disharmony	1.7.322	72
nutritional edema	3.4.26	191
nutritional keratomalacia	3.5.48	198
<i>nutritive qi</i>	1.2.25	19
O		
oblique insertion	5.1.114	241
oblique-running pulse	2.4.11	101
obstruction of defense yang	1.7.321	72
obstructive throat wind	3.6.33	200

Term	Code	Page
obtaining qi	5.1.117	241
odd-numbered formula	6.2.16	265
offensive purgative medicinal	6.1.61	260
oily sweat	2.3.48	91
ointment	6.2.31	266
oligogalactia	3.3.55	188
ominous abscess of the throat	3.6.25	200
open onto the pleurodiaphragmatic interspace	4.2.97	212
open the orifices	4.2.263	225
open the orifices with aroma	4.2.267	225
<i>open-closed reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.145	244
<i>open-closed reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.146	244
open-closed supplementation and draining	5.1.145	244
open-closed supplementation and draining method	5.1.146	244
opening, closing and pivot	1.8.18	77
ophthalmology	3.5.0	194
<i>opposing needling</i>	5.1.172	246
opposition of yin and yang	1.1.13	14
oppression in the chest	2.3.156	98
oppressive pain	2.3.83	93
oral erosion	3.6.45	201
ordinary symptom	1.8.34	78
Oriental medicine	0.0.3	9
orifice of sense organ	1.5.30	36
orifice-opening formula	6.2.86	270
orifice-opening medicinal	6.1.98	262
<i>original qi</i>	1.2.22	19
orthopedics and traumatology	3.7.0	202
<i>osteoarticular tuberculosis</i>	3.2.33	180
otorhinolaryngostomatology	3.6.0	198
ouch point	5.1.68	237
outer canthus	1.5.44	37

Term	Code	Page
<i>outpour diarrhea</i>	2.3.171	99
outthrust rashes	4.2.12	206
outthrust the pathogen	4.2.309	228
outthrust through the exterior	4.2.11	206
<i>over-acting</i>	1.1.41	16
overconsumption of heart nutrient	1.7.150	58
overexertion and fatigue	1.6.73	44
overlap of diseases	1.7.360	75
<i>overstrain</i>	1.6.73	44
overwhelming	1.1.41	16
oxhide lichen	3.2.79	183

P

pacify the liver to subdue yang	4.2.195	220
pain of unfixed location	2.3.86	93
painful impediment	3.1.182	175
paired needling	5.1.174	246
pale complexion	2.1.14	81
pale red tongue	2.1.51	83
pale tongue	2.1.50	83
pale white complexion	2.1.13	81
palpation	2.4.1	101
palpitations	2.3.141	97
palpitations above the umbilicus	2.3.164	98
palpitations below the heart	2.3.142	97
palpitations below the umbilicus	2.3.166	98
palpitations beside the umbilicus	2.3.165	98
panting	2.2.18	88
papule	3.2.61	181
paradoxical treatment	4.1.8	204
paralytic strabismus	3.5.49	198
paralyzed tongue	2.1.76	85
paraneural needling	5.1.229	250

Term	Code	Page
parasitic toxin	1.6.58	43
paraumbilical and hypochondriac aggregation	2.3.158	98
<i>para-umbilical aortic pulsation</i>	2.3.165	98
para-umbilical region	1.5.16	36
paroxysmal pain	2.3.89	94
paste preparation	6.2.28	266
pasted pill	6.2.26	266
pathogen	1.6.3	39
<i>pathogenesis</i>	1.7.1	46
<i>pathogenic cold</i>	1.6.12	40
<i>pathogenic dampness</i>	1.6.14	40
<i>pathogenic dryness</i>	1.6.15	40
<i>pathogenic factor</i>	1.6.3	39
<i>pathogenic fire</i>	1.6.16	40
<i>pathogenic heat</i>	1.6.17	40
pathogenic heat passing into the interior	1.7.69	51
<i>pathogenic qi</i>	1.6.3	39
<i>pathogenic summerheat</i>	1.6.13	40
<i>pathogenic wind</i>	1.6.11	40
<i>pattern differentiation</i>	2.0.13	80
pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.0.13	80
pattern identification/syndrome differentiation and treatment	1.1.3	13
pattern/syndrome	2.0.7	79
pattern/syndrome of accumulated heat in the uterus	2.10.7	147
pattern/syndrome of ascendant hyperactivity of liver yang	2.9.90	141
pattern/syndrome of binding of phlegm and qi	2.6.30	120
pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and congealing cold	2.7.33	128
pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and intestinal dryness	2.9.67	138

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency and wind-dryness	2.7.34	129
pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency complicated by stasis	2.7.32	128
pattern/syndrome of blood deficiency engendering wind	2.7.35	129
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis in the stomach collateral	2.9.65	138
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis obstructing the brain collateral	2.9.19	132
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis obstructing the essence chamber	2.10.10	147
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis obstructing the uterus	2.10.4	147
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis with water retention	2.6.36	121
pattern/syndrome of blood stasis with wind-dryness	2.6.35	121
pattern/syndrome of both defense-nutrient aspects disease	2.12.7	157
pattern/syndrome of both defense-qi aspects disease	2.12.6	157
pattern/syndrome of clear yang failing to ascend	2.5.28	110
pattern/syndrome of cold congealing in the uterus	2.10.3	146
pattern/syndrome of cold in the middle	2.6.8	117
pattern/syndrome of cold stagnating in stomach and intestines	2.9.68	138
pattern/syndrome of cold stagnating in the liver meridian	2.9.92	141
pattern/syndrome of cold-dampness encumbering the spleen	2.9.50	136
pattern/syndrome of cold-phlegm obstructing the lung	2.9.35	134
pattern/syndrome of cold-prevailing agonizing arthralgia	2.10.15	148

Term	Code	Page
<i>pattern/syndrome of cold-prevailing painful arthralgia</i>	2.10.15	148
pattern/syndrome of congealing cold with blood stasis	2.6.38	121
pattern/syndrome of congealing cold with qi stagnation	2.7.13	126
pattern/syndrome of damage to sinew and bone	2.10.19	149
pattern/syndrome of dampness obstructing defense yang	2.12.18	158
pattern/syndrome of dampness predominating over heat	2.12.22	159
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the liver meridian	2.9.93	142
<i>pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the middle energizer</i>	2.9.52	136
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the spleen	2.9.51	136
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat in the spleen and stomach	2.9.52	136
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat invading the ear	2.10.32	150
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat obstructing qi movement	2.12.21	159
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat obstructing the essence chamber	2.10.8	147
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat pouring downward	2.6.41	122
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the mouth	2.10.48	152
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the teeth	2.10.44	152

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of dampness-heat steaming the tongue	2.10.49	152
pattern/syndrome of dampness-prevailing fixed arthralgia	2.10.16	148
pattern/syndrome of deficiency fire flaming upward	2.6.19	119
pattern/syndrome of deficiency fire scorching the gums	2.10.45	152
pattern/syndrome of depressed gallbladder with harassing phlegm	2.9.95	142
pattern/syndrome of depressed liver qi transforming into fire	2.9.87	141
pattern/syndrome of depressed qi transforming into fire	2.7.12	126
pattern/syndrome of detriment to yang affecting yin	2.5.26	110
pattern/syndrome of detriment to yin affecting yang	2.5.25	109
pattern/syndrome of disharmony of thoroughfare and conception vessels	2.10.2	146
pattern/syndrome of dryness affecting the clear orifices	2.6.15	118
pattern/syndrome of dryness invading the lung	2.9.30	134
pattern/syndrome of dual blaze of qi-blood aspects	2.12.9	157
pattern/syndrome of dual blaze of qi-nutrient aspects	2.12.8	157
pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of heart qi and blood	2.9.5	131
pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of qi and blood	2.7.26	128
pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of qi and yin	2.7.20	127
pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of the heart and spleen	2.9.116	144

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of dual deficiency of yin and yang	2.5.9	107
pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior cold	2.5.47	112
pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior deficiency	2.5.50	113
pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior excess	2.5.49	113
pattern/syndrome of dual exterior and interior heat	2.5.48	113
pattern/syndrome of exterior cold and interior heat	2.5.51	113
pattern/syndrome of exterior deficiency and interior excess	2.5.53	113
pattern/syndrome of exterior excess and interior deficiency	2.5.54	114
pattern/syndrome of exterior heat and interior cold	2.5.52	113
pattern/syndrome of extreme heat engendering wind	2.5.65	115
pattern/syndrome of exuberant heat stirring wind	2.12.12	158
pattern/syndrome of exuberant heat with bleeding	2.12.13	158
pattern/syndrome of exuberant yin repelling yang	2.5.24	109
pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the chest and hypochondrium	2.8.9	130
pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the pericardium	2.9.21	133
pattern/syndrome of fluid retention in the stomach and intestines	2.9.73	139
<i>pattern/syndrome of hearing loss due to qi deficiency</i>	2.10.34	150
pattern/syndrome of heart deficiency with timidity	2.9.6	131
pattern/syndrome of heart fire flaming upward	2.9.10	131
pattern/syndrome of heat accumulating in the bladder	2.9.111	144

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of heat entering blood chamber	2.11.23	156
pattern/syndrome of heat entering nutrient-blood aspects	2.12.11	157
pattern/syndrome of heat entering the blood aspect	2.12.10	157
pattern/syndrome of heat entering the pericardium	2.12.14	158
pattern/syndrome of heat harassing the heart spirit	2.9.12	132
pattern/syndrome of heat predominating over dampness	2.12.23	159
pattern/syndrome of heat toxin attacking the tongue	2.10.50	153
pattern/syndrome of heat toxin blocking the lung	2.9.37	135
pattern/syndrome of heat-obstructing arthralgia	2.10.17	148
pattern/syndrome of insecurity of thoroughfare and conception vessels	2.10.1	146
pattern/syndrome of internal block and external collapse	2.5.55	114
pattern/syndrome of internal block of phlegm-heat	2.6.32	120
pattern/syndrome of internal harassment of phlegm-heat	2.6.31	120
pattern/syndrome of internal obstruction of cold-dampness	2.6.37	121
pattern/syndrome of internal stirring of liver wind	2.9.83	140
pattern/syndrome of intestinal dryness and fluid depletion	2.9.66	138
pattern/syndrome of intestinal heat and bowel excess	2.9.70	139
pattern/syndrome of inward attack of snake venom	2.6.48	123
pattern/syndrome of inward invasion of fire toxin	2.6.46	122
pattern/syndrome of kidney deficiency with water flood	2.9.107	143

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of kidney failing to receive qi	2.9.106	143
pattern/syndrome of kidney yin deficiency with fire effulgence	2.9.104	143
pattern/syndrome of lingering phlegm nodule	2.6.34	121
pattern/syndrome of liver depression and blood stasis	2.9.86	141
pattern/syndrome of liver depression and qi stagnation	2.9.85	141
pattern/syndrome of liver depression and spleen deficiency	2.9.124	146
pattern/syndrome of liver fire blazing the ear	2.10.30	150
pattern/syndrome of liver fire flaming upward	2.9.88	141
pattern/syndrome of liver fire invading the head	2.10.25	149
pattern/syndrome of liver fire invading the lung	2.9.122	145
pattern/syndrome of liver qi invading the stomach	2.9.123	145
<i>pattern/syndrome of liver stagnation and spleen deficiency</i>	2.9.124	146
pattern/syndrome of liver yang transforming into wind	2.9.84	140
<i>pattern/syndrome of loss of smell due to qi deficiency</i>	2.10.37	151
pattern/syndrome of lung dryness with intestinal obstruction	2.9.38	135
pattern/syndrome of mutual contention of wind and water	2.8.10	130
pattern/syndrome of pathogen hidden in the pleurodiaphragmatic interspace	2.12.19	158
pattern/syndrome of pestilential toxin pouring downward	2.6.42	122
pattern/syndrome of phlegm clouding the heart spirit	2.9.16	132

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of phlegm-heat obstructing the lung	2.9.33	134
pattern/syndrome of phlegm obstructing the essence chamber	2.10.9	147
pattern/syndrome of phlegm turbidity invading the head	2.10.24	149
pattern/syndrome of phlegm turbidity obstructing the lung	2.9.34	134
pattern/syndrome of phlegm-dampness attacking the ear	2.10.33	150
pattern/syndrome of phlegm-fire harassing the heart	2.9.17	132
pattern/syndrome of phlegm-heat stirring wind	2.6.33	121
pattern/syndrome of qi block with syncope	2.9.20	133
pattern/syndrome of qi collapse following bleeding	2.7.30	128
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with blood stasis	2.7.28	128
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with dampness obstruction	2.7.17	126
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with external contraction	2.7.19	127
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with failure to constrain	2.7.15	126
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with hearing loss	2.10.34	150
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with loss of smell	2.10.37	151
pattern/syndrome of qi deficiency with water retention	2.7.18	126
pattern/syndrome of qi failing to control the blood	2.7.31	128
pattern/syndrome of qi stagnating and phlegm congealing in the throat	2.10.42	152
pattern/syndrome of qi stagnation and blood stasis	2.7.29	128

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of qi stagnation with water retention	2.8.8	130
pattern/syndrome of retained dampness-heat toxin	2.6.40	122
<i>pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with dampness accumulation</i>	2.9.47	136
pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with dampness encumbrance	2.9.47	136
pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with stirring of wind	2.9.48	136
<i>pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with sunken qi</i>	2.9.46	136
pattern/syndrome of spleen deficiency with water flood	2.9.49	136
pattern/syndrome of spleen failing in transportation	2.9.42	135
pattern/syndrome of spleen failing to control the blood	2.9.45	135
<i>pattern/syndrome of stagnated gallbladder with harassing phlegm</i>	2.9.95	142
<i>pattern/syndrome of stagnated liver qi transforming into fire</i>	2.9.87	141
<i>pattern/syndrome of stagnated qi transforming into fire</i>	2.7.12	126
pattern/syndrome of stasis and stagnation due to traumatic injury	2.10.18	149
pattern/syndrome of stasis in the stomach collateral	2.9.65	138
pattern/syndrome of stasis obstructing the brain collateral	2.9.19	132
pattern/syndrome of stasis obstructing the essence chamber	2.10.10	147
pattern/syndrome of stasis obstructing the uterus	2.10.4	147
pattern/syndrome of static blood invading the head	2.10.23	149
pattern/syndrome of stomach fire blazing the gums	2.10.43	152

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of summerheat blocking qi movement	2.12.32	160
pattern/syndrome of summerheat damaging fluid and qi	2.12.30	160
pattern/syndrome of summerheat damaging the lung vessel	2.9.36	134
pattern/syndrome of summerheat entering yang brightness	2.12.29	160
pattern/syndrome of summerheat with cold-dampness	2.12.25	159
pattern/syndrome of summerheat-dampness assailing the exterior	2.5.41	111
pattern/syndrome of summerheat-dampness encumbering the middle energizer	2.12.26	159
pattern/syndrome of summerheat-heat stirring wind	2.12.31	160
pattern/syndrome of toxic fire attacking the lips	2.10.47	152
pattern/syndrome of toxic heat attacking the throat	2.10.41	151
pattern/syndrome of toxin congesting the upper energizer	2.12.16	158
pattern/syndrome of transmission of heart heat to the small intestine	2.9.13	132
pattern/syndrome of traumatic injury of ocular vessel	2.10.28	150
pattern/syndrome of water qi intimidating the heart	2.9.18	132
pattern/syndrome of wind striking the meridians and collaterals	2.10.11	148
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the collaterals	2.10.12	148
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the lung	2.9.27	133

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold assailing the throat	2.10.39	151
<i>pattern/syndrome of wind-cold fettering the exterior</i>	2.5.36	111
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold fettering the lung	2.9.28	134
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold invading the head	2.10.20	149
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold invading the nose	2.10.35	151
pattern/syndrome of wind-cold obstructing the collaterals	2.10.13	148
pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness assailing the exterior	2.5.40	111
pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness insulting the eyes	2.10.27	150
pattern/syndrome of wind-dampness invading the head	2.10.22	149
pattern/syndrome of wind-fire attacking the eyes	2.10.26	149
pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the ear	2.10.31	150
<i>pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the exterior</i>	2.5.37	111
pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the lung	2.9.29	134
pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the nose	2.10.36	151
pattern/syndrome of wind-heat invading the throat	2.10.40	151
pattern/syndrome of wind-heat with epidemic toxin	2.12.17	158
pattern/syndrome of wind-prevailing migratory arthralgia	2.10.14	148
pattern/syndrome of worm accumulation transforming into malnutrition	2.10.29	150
pattern/syndrome of worms accumulating in the intestines	2.9.74	139
pattern/syndrome of worms harassing the gallbladder	2.9.97	142

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with congealing cold	2.5.21	109
pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with congealing phlegm	2.5.20	109
pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with dampness obstruction	2.5.18	108
pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with qi stagnation	2.5.17	108
pattern/syndrome of yang deficiency with water flood	2.5.19	109
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency and blood stasis	2.5.16	108
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency and dampness-heat	2.5.15	108
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with dryness of the nose	2.10.38	151
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with dryness of the throat	2.10.46	152
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with effulgent fire	2.5.11	107
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with fluid depletion	2.5.13	108
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with internal heat	2.5.10	107
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with stirring wind	2.9.72	139
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with water retention	2.5.14	108
pattern/syndrome of yin deficiency with yang hyperactivity	2.5.12	108
pattern/syndrome of yin exhaustion and yang collapse	2.5.27	110
pattern/syndrome of yin exuberance with yang debilitation	2.5.23	109
pattern/syndrome of yin-yang disharmony	2.5.4	106
pattern/syndrome type	2.0.8	79

Term	Code	Page
pattern/syndrome wind-heat invading the head	2.10.21	149
PC	1.4.18	31
pecking sparrow moxibustion	5.2.19	252
pecking sparrow pulse	2.4.62	104
<i>pectoral qi</i>	1.2.23	19
<i>pectus carinatum</i>	3.4.44	192
pediatrics	3.4.0	189
peeled tongue	2.1.64	84
peeling fur	2.1.98	86
pellet	6.2.34	266
pericardium	1.3.15	23
pericardium meridian	1.4.18	31
perpendicular insertion	5.1.112	241
perpendicular needling	5.1.179	247
persistent erection	3.1.136	172
persistent flow of the lochia	3.3.54	188
persistent fluid retention	3.1.156	174
persistent pain	2.3.90	94
pestilence	1.6.46 3.1.23	42 163
<i>pestilential qi</i>	1.6.48	42
pharynx	1.5.63	38
phlegm	1.6.80	45
phlegm clouding the pericardium	1.7.155	58
<i>phlegm confounding the orifices of the heart</i>	1.7.155	58
phlegm cyst	3.6.40	201
phlegm epilepsy	3.4.42	192
phlegm node of the eyelid	3.5.7	195
phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.8.2	129
phlegm rale	2.2.20	88
phlegm syncope	3.1.175	175
phlegm turbidity obstructing the lung	1.7.250	66
phlegm-dampness	1.6.83	45

Term	Code	Page
phlegm-dampness pattern/syndrome	2.6.60	124
phlegm-dispelling formula	6.2.84	270
phlegm-fire harassing the heart	1.7.156	58
phlegm-fluid retention	1.6.79 3.1.150	45 173
phlegmonous mastitis	3.2.38	180
phlegm-retained fluid	1.6.79	45
phlyctenular conjunctivitis	3.5.25	196
photophobia	3.5.1	194
physical appearance	1.8.38	78
piercing method	5.1.189	247
pigeon chest	3.4.44	192
pill preparation	6.2.23	265
pinching manipulation	4.2.340	231
pinching needle insertion	5.1.104	240
pitting edema	2.1.28	82
placenta	1.3.32	24
plain stir-bake	6.1.11	255
plaster	6.2.32	266
plaster therapy	4.2.312	229
pleural fluid retention	3.1.151	173
plum-blossom needle	5.1.23	234
plum-blossom needle therapy	5.1.24	234
plum-pit qi	3.1.55	166
point combination	5.1.89	239
point combination of the same meridian	5.1.93	239
polyp	3.2.65	181
polyp of rectum	3.2.92	184
<i>poor appetite</i>	2.3.117	95
poor libido	2.3.202	100
popliteal infection	3.2.18	179
postauricular abscess	3.6.8	199
postauricular infection	3.6.7	199
posterior yin	1.5.70	39
<i>postnatal essence</i>	1.2.3	17

Term	Code	Page
<i>post-natal qi</i>	1.2.19	18
postpartum galactorrhea	3.3.58	188
postpartum mastitis	3.2.37	180
post-term pregnancy	3.3.48	188
powder preparation	6.2.24	265
<i>preference</i>	1.6.75	44
pregnancy suspension	3.3.44	188
pregnancy swelling	3.3.41	187
pregnancy vexation	3.3.42	187
premature ejaculation	3.1.134	172
premature ejaculation disease	3.1.134	172
<i>prenatal essence</i>	1.2.2	17
<i>prenatal qi</i>	1.2.18	18
<i>preparation and processing of Chinese herbal medicine</i>	0.0.15	10
preparation form	6.2.21	265
presence of vitality	2.1.3	80
pressing hand	5.1.109	241
pressing manipulation	4.2.338	231
pressing moxibustion	5.2.24	253
pressing with one finger	2.4.22	102
prevent abortion	4.2.279	226
pricking	5.1.190	248
pricking bloodletting method	5.1.192	248
pricking therapy	5.1.191	248
pricking-cupping bloodletting method	5.3.11	254
prickly tongue	2.1.61	84
<i>primordial qi</i>	1.2.22	19
principals of life preservation	1.8.25	77
principles, methods, formulas and medicinals	6.2.4	264
processing of herbal medicinals	0.0.15	10
processing of medicinals	6.1.6	255
processing with vinegar	6.1.22	256
processing with wine	6.1.21	256
prodrome of wind stroke	3.1.66	167

Term	Code	Page
profuse dreaming	2.3.54	92
profuse menstruation	3.3.18	186
profuse sweating	2.3.32	90
prohibited combination	6.1.39	257
prolapse of the rectum	3.2.91	184
prolapse of the uterus	3.3.63	189
prolonged menstruation	3.3.22	186
prominent muscle	1.5.26	36
promote digestion	4.2.268	225
promote digestion and remove food stagnation	4.2.269	225
promote lactation	4.2.280	226
promote qi absorption to calm panting	4.2.134	215
promote rupture	4.2.310	228
promote suppuration to regenerate flesh	4.2.308	228
promote sweating to release the exterior	4.2.7	206
promote tissue regeneration and close wound	4.2.288	227
promote tissue regeneration and wound healing	4.2.307	228
<i>promoting eruption</i>	4.2.12	206
promoting sweating	4.2.5	205
protracted tongue	2.1.74	85
protruded agitated tongue	2.1.73	85
proximal bleeding	2.1.33	82
proximate needling	5.1.183	247
pseudopregnancy	3.3.39	187
psoriasis	3.2.80	183
pterygium	3.5.21	196
pudendal itch	3.3.64	189
pudendal pain	3.3.67	189
pudendal sore	3.3.66	189
pudendal swelling	3.3.65	189
puerperium	3.3.11	185
puffy face	2.1.21	82

Term	Code	Page
pulling manipulation	4.2.342	231
pulling pain	2.3.79	93
pulse bereft of stomach qi	2.4.28	102
pulse condition	2.4.4	101
pulse diagnosis	2.4.2	101
pulse on the back of the wrist	2.4.10	101
pulse-taking with finger-tips	2.4.18	102
pungent-cool exterior-releasing medicinal	6.1.53	259
pungent-warm exterior-releasing medicinal	6.1.51	259
pupil	1.5.48	37
pupillary metamorphosis	3.5.35	197
purgation	4.2.66	210
purgative formula	6.2.72	269
purgative medicinal	6.1.60	259
purge fire	4.2.29	207
purge the heart	4.2.34	208
purge the liver	4.2.36	208
purge the liver and eliminate dampness	4.2.101	213
purge the lung	4.2.35	208
purge the lung to calm panting	4.2.140	216
purification and down-sending	1.3.67	27
purple tongue	2.1.54	84
purpura	3.1.148	173
purulent ear	3.6.6	198
purulent keratitis	3.5.32	197
purulent phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.28	120
pus pattern/syndrome	2.6.20	119
pushing and searching	2.4.21	102
pushing manipulation	4.2.331	230
pustule	3.2.62	181
Q		
qi	1.2.17	18

Term	Code	Page
qi absorption	1.3.73	27
qi and flavor	6.1.28	257
qi arrival	5.1.116	241
qi aspect	1.5.72	39
qi aspect cold	1.7.325	72
qi aspect dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.12.20	159
qi aspect heat	1.7.326	72
qi aspect pattern/syndrome	2.12.3	156
qi bar	2.1.37	83
qi block	1.7.112	55
qi block pattern/syndrome	2.7.6	125
qi collapse	1.7.113	55
qi collapse due to humor depletion	1.7.134	56
qi collapse following bleeding	1.7.126	56
qi collapse pattern/syndrome	2.7.7	125
qi controlling heaven	1.8.5	76
qi counterflow	1.7.107	54
qi counterflow pattern/syndrome	2.7.5	125
qi deficiency	1.7.98	54
qi deficiency failing to control blood	1.7.99	54
qi deficiency fever pattern/syndrome	2.7.16	126
qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.7.2	125
qi deficiency with blood stasis	1.7.101	54
qi deficiency with fullness in the middle	1.7.100	54
qi depression pattern/syndrome	2.7.11	126
qi disease affecting the blood	1.7.123	56
qi dynamic	1.2.42	20
qi failing to form fluid	1.7.135	56
qi fall	1.7.108	54
qi gate	1.5.5 2.1.37	35 83
qi goiter	3.2.46	180

Term	Code	Page
<i>qi malnutrition</i>	3.4.21	191
<i>qi mechanism</i>	1.2.42	20
<i>qi movement</i>	1.2.42	20
<i>qi movement depression</i>	1.7.105	54
<i>qi movement disorder</i>	1.7.102	54
<i>qi movement stagnation</i>	1.7.103	54
<i>qi orbiculus</i>	1.5.38	37
<i>qi reflux</i>	1.7.107	54
<i>qi sinking</i>	1.7.108	54
<i>qi sinking pattern/syndrome</i>	2.7.3	125
<i>qi stagnation</i>	1.7.103	54
	1.7.110	55
<i>qi stagnation due to cold congealing</i>	1.7.111	55
<i>qi stagnation pattern/syndrome</i>	2.7.4	125
	2.7.11	126
<i>qi strangury</i>	3.1.123	171
<i>qi syncope</i>	3.1.173	175
<i>qi thoroughfare</i>	5.1.75	238
<i>qi transformation</i>	1.2.41	20
<i>qi tumor</i>	3.2.50	181
<i>qi wheel</i>	1.5.38	37
<i>qi, blood and water</i>	1.2.57	21
<i>qi-blood disharmony pattern/syndrome</i>	2.7.27	128
<i>qi-blood pattern identification/syndrome differentiation</i>	2.7.1	124
<i>qi-concentrated single-finger pushing manipulation</i>	4.2.332	230
<i>qi-humor metabolism</i>	1.8.31	78
<i>qi-regulating formula</i>	6.2.67	268
<i>qi-regulating medicinal</i>	6.1.76	261
<i>qi-tonifying medicinal</i>	6.1.100	263
<i>quick-acting formula</i>	6.2.15	265
<i>quick-slow reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.141	243
<i>quick-slow reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.142	243

Term	Code	Page
<i>quick-slow supplementation and draining</i>	5.1.141	243
<i>quick-slow supplementation and draining method</i>	5.1.142	243
<i>quiet ascaris</i>	4.2.284	226
<i>quiet ascaris to relieve pain</i>	4.2.285	227
R		
<i>racing pulse</i>	2.4.59	104
<i>radix nasi</i>	1.5.57	38
<i>rapid pulse</i>	2.4.32	103
<i>rebellion</i>	1.1.42	16
<i>receptacle that holds phlegm</i>	1.3.63	26
<i>recurrent fluid retention</i>	3.1.154	173
<i>red tongue</i>	2.1.52	84
<i>reddened complexion</i>	2.1.17	81
<i>reddish yellow urine</i>	2.3.199	100
<i>red-hot needling</i>	5.1.171	246
<i>regular edema</i>	3.1.117	171
<i>regular meridian</i>	1.4.22	32
<i>regulate menstruation</i>	4.2.187	219
<i>regulate qi</i>	4.2.87	211
<i>regulate qi and fortify the spleen</i>	4.2.168	218
<i>regulate the liver and supplement the kidney</i>	4.2.244	223
<i>regulate the middle</i>	4.2.89	212
<i>regulate the waterways</i>	1.3.70	27
<i>rehabilitation</i>	0.0.24	11
<i>reinforce the healthy qi</i>	4.2.3	205
<i>reinforce the healthy qi and eliminate the pathogenic factors</i>	4.1.13	204
<i>reinforce the healthy qi and release the exterior</i>	4.2.19	207
<i>reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.134	242
<i>relapse due to dietary irregularity</i>	1.7.11	46

Term	Code	Page
relax sinews and activate collaterals	4.2.191	219
relax tension	4.2.292	227
relax the bowels	4.2.74	211
relaxed pulse	2.4.45	103
relaxing needling	5.1.176	247
release both the exterior and interior	4.2.98	212
release summerheat	4.2.55	209
release the exterior	4.2.6	206
release the exterior with pungent-cool	4.2.9	206
release the exterior with pungent-warm	4.2.8	206
release the flesh	4.2.10	206
relieve infantile malnutrition fever	4.2.65	210
relieve itching	4.2.299	228
relieve malnutrition fever	4.2.65	210
relieve the stuffy nose	4.2.25	207
remove accumulation with purgation	4.2.76	211
remove cold accumulation with warm purgation	4.2.78	211
remove nebula and improve vision	4.2.273	226
repeated shallow needling	5.1.184	247
repel foulness	4.2.291	227
<i>repelled yang</i>	1.7.36	48
<i>repelled yin</i>	1.7.37	49
<i>replenish qi</i>	4.2.203	220
<i>replenish the kidney yin</i>	4.2.238	223
replete pulse	2.4.36	103
reproduction	1.3.72	27
residual heat pattern/syndrome	2.12.15	158
<i>resolute viscus</i>	1.3.55	26
resolve accumulation	4.2.278	226
resolve dampness	4.2.103	213

Term	Code	Page
resolve dampness to move qi	4.2.111	213
resolve dampness with aroma	4.2.107	213
resolve phlegm	4.2.123	214
resolve phlegm to open the orifices	4.2.266	225
resolve putridity	4.2.305	228
resolve retained fluid	4.2.121	214
resolve turbidity with aroma	4.2.108	213
resolving medicinal	6.1.112	263
<i>respiration</i>	1.3.65	27
<i>respiratory reinforcement and reduction</i>	5.1.143	243
<i>respiratory reinforcement and reduction method</i>	5.1.144	243
respiratory supplementation and draining	5.1.143	243
respiratory supplementation and draining method	5.1.144	243
<i>restless heart qi</i>	1.7.141	57
<i>restore blood</i>	4.2.213	221
<i>restore qi</i>	4.2.203	220
<i>restore yang</i>	4.2.161	217
restore yang to save from collapse	4.2.161	217
<i>restoring method</i>	4.2.202	220
restraining	1.1.35	16
retained cupping	5.3.5	254
retained fluid	1.6.81	45
retained food	2.3.136	96
retching	2.3.138	96
retention of placenta	3.3.50	188
retention of the lochia	3.3.53	188
retinopathy pigmentosa	3.5.44	197
retropharynx	1.5.64	38
reversal cold of the extremities	2.3.26	90
reversal of qi	2.3.27	90
reverse transmission	1.7.353	75

Term	Code	Page
reverse transmission to the pericardium	1.7.154	58
reverting yin	1.8.24	77
reverting yin cold reversal pattern/syndrome	2.11.21	156
<i>reverting yin disease</i>	<i>2.11.19</i>	155
reverting yin disease pattern/syndrome	2.11.19	155
reverting yin heat reversal pattern/syndrome	2.11.20	155
rigidity below the heart	2.3.148	97
river point	5.1.61	237
roast	6.1.17	256
rocking manipulation	4.2.343	231
rocky mass	3.2.55	181
rocky mass in the breast	3.2.58	181
roller needle	5.1.33	235
rolling manipulation	4.2.333	230
root of innate endowment	1.3.75	27
root of the needle	5.1.22	234
root of the nose	1.5.57	38
root of the tongue	2.1.45	83
rotating manipulation	4.2.327	230
rotten-curdy fur	2.1.90	86
rough pulse	2.4.40	103
<i>rounded needle</i>	<i>5.1.8</i>	233
round-pointed needle	5.1.8	233
round-sharp needle	5.1.11	234
routine treatment	4.1.3	204
rubbing manipulation	4.2.329	230
rubella	3.4.53	193
running piglet	3.1.140	172
<i>running piglet qi</i>	<i>3.1.140</i>	172
ruptured sinew	3.7.3	202
ruptured wound of the eyeball	3.5.47	198
ryodo points	5.1.76	238

Term	Code	Page
S		
Sa-am acupuncture therapy	5.1.39	235
<i>sagital needle</i>	<i>5.1.7</i>	233
sallow complexion	2.1.20	81
sallow disease	3.1.99	169
<i>salt moxibustion</i>	<i>5.2.10</i>	251
salty taste in the mouth	2.3.125	96
same treatment for different diseases	4.1.16	205
<i>Sasang constitutional medicine</i>	<i>0.0.33</i>	11
scab	3.2.63	181
scabies	3.2.76	182
scalp acupuncture	5.1.42	235
scalp acupuncture therapy	5.1.43	236
scant menstruation	3.3.17	186
scarlatina	3.4.54	193
scarring moxibustion	5.2.23	252
scattered needling method	5.1.188	247
scorching pain	2.3.76	93
<i>scorching syncope</i>	<i>3.1.170</i>	174
scrofula	3.2.34	180
scrotal abscess	3.2.94	184
scrubbing manipulation	4.2.334	230
scurrying pain	2.3.82	93
sea of blood	1.3.57	26
sea of marrow	1.3.28	24
sea point	5.1.62	237
seasonal epidemic	3.1.6	162
seasonal pathogen	1.6.5	39
seasonal toxin	1.6.54	43
seat sore	3.2.6	178
seborrheic dermatitis	3.2.81	183
Sechu school	0.0.29	11
secure essence	4.2.253	224

Term	Code	Page
secure essence and reduce urination	4.2.254	224
secure the exterior	4.2.257	225
secure the exterior to check sweating	4.2.258	225
secure the thoroughfare vessel and stanch vaginal discharge	4.2.256	225
securing and astringent formula	6.2.88	270
securing and astringing method	4.2.251	224
seething cauldron pulse	2.4.63	104
segmental needling	5.1.223	250
selection of adjacent points	5.1.96	240
selection of distant points	5.1.98	240
selection of local points	5.1.97	240
selection of points according to pattern/syndrome	5.1.88	239
seminal cold	3.1.137	172
seminal emission	3.1.131	172
seminal emission disease	3.1.131	172
seminal turbidity	3.1.138	172
seminal turbidity disease	3.1.138	172
<i>sending the clear upward</i>	1.3.58	26
<i>sending the qi upwards, outwards and throughout the body</i>	1.3.54	26
<i>sending the turbid downward</i>	1.3.59	26
sense organs	1.5.35	37
separate elimination from upper and lower	4.2.120	214
separation of the clear and turbid	1.3.53	26
sequela of wind stroke	3.1.67	167
sequential meridians transmission	1.7.358	75
<i>sequential transmission</i>	1.7.352	75
settle fright and tranquilize	4.2.261	225
settling tranquilizing medicinal	6.1.95	262
seven emotions	1.6.65	44

Term	Code	Page
seven malign signs	2.4.79	106
seven orifices	1.5.32	37
seven-star needle	5.1.25	234
severe coldness	2.3.27	90
severe pain	2.3.88	94
<i>sex-stimulating essence</i>	1.3.71	27
sexual overindulgence	1.6.74	44
sexual taxation relapse	1.7.12	46
shaft of the needle	5.1.21	234
shaking manipulation	4.2.335	231
<i>shallow breathing</i>	3.1.51	165
<i>shallow needling</i>	5.1.159	245
shallow surround needling	5.1.178	247
sham acupuncture	5.1.234	251
shank sore	3.2.7	178
<i>sharp round needle</i>	5.1.11	234
shear needle	5.1.7	233
<i>shiatsu</i>	4.2.347	232
shifted bladder	3.3.62	189
shiver sweating	2.3.37	91
shivering	2.3.8	89
shock sweating	3.1.158	174
short pulse	2.4.38	103
short thrust needling	5.1.180	247
shortage of qi	3.1.51	165
shortness of breath	3.1.50	165
SI	1.4.15	30
sighing	2.2.15	88
sign	2.0.4	79
<i>signaling orifices</i>	1.5.35	37
silver needle	5.1.34	235
simultaneous palpation	2.4.23	102
sinew	1.5.7	35
sinew injury	3.7.2	202
<i>sinew malnutrition</i>	3.4.20	191
sinew mesh above the eyes	1.5.53	38

Term	Code	Page
sinew mesh below the eyes	1.5.54	38
sinew tumor	3.2.52	181
sinew wilting	3.1.200	177
sinew-flicking manipulation	4.2.337	231
single-handed needle insertion	5.1.106	240
sinusitis	3.6.20	199
six bowels	1.3.7	22
<i>six climatic pathogenic factors</i>	<i>1.6.10</i>	40
six depressions	1.7.320	72
six excesses	1.6.10	40
six qi	1.8.3	76
<i>six stagnations</i>	<i>1.7.320</i>	72
six-meridian disease	3.8.3	202
six-meridian pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.11.1	153
sixty-year cycle	1.8.8	76
<i>skeletal proportional cun</i>	<i>5.1.81</i>	238
skeleton	1.5.19	36
skill and talent	1.8.36	78
skin and body hair	1.5.2	35
skin and hair	1.5.2	35
skin edema	3.1.116	171
skin impediment	3.2.86	183
skin needling	5.1.170	246
skin-spreading needle insertion	5.1.105	240
skipping meridians transmission	1.7.357	75
skipping pulse	2.4.56	104
sleep talking	2.2.13	88
sleep walking	2.3.55	92
slide cupping	5.3.9	254
slimy fur	2.1.95	86
slippery fur	2.1.94	86
slippery pulse	2.4.39	103
sloppy diarrhea	2.3.181	99
sloppy stool	2.3.185	99
slow fire	6.2.50	267

Term	Code	Page
slow pulse	2.4.31	103
slow-acting formula	6.2.14	265
sluggish speech	2.2.5	87
sluggish tongue	2.2.6	87
small intestinal deficiency cold	1.7.166	59
small intestinal excess heat	1.7.165	59
small intestinal qi stagnation pattern/syndrome	2.9.22	133
small intestine	1.3.18	23
small intestine disease induced by endopathogen	3.8.11	203
small intestine meridian	1.4.15	30
smallpox	3.4.50	193
snake-head whitlow	3.2.13	178
sneezing	2.2.16	88
snivel	1.2.54	21
snoring	2.2.25	88
<i>So-eum person</i>	<i>0.0.38</i>	12
soft pulse	2.4.58	104
soften hardness and dissipate binds	4.2.290	227
soften hardness and resolve phlegm	4.2.136	215
soften hardness with purgation	4.2.75	211
soggy diarrhea	2.3.183	99
soggy pulse	2.4.43	103
soliloquy	2.2.11	87
soluble granules	6.2.37	266
<i>somniloquy</i>	<i>2.2.13</i>	88
somnolence	2.3.52	92
soothe the liver	4.2.175	218
soothe the liver and fortify the spleen	4.2.172	218
soothe the liver and harmonize the stomach	4.2.174	218
soothe the liver and nourish the blood	4.2.170	218
soothe the liver and purge fire	4.2.171	218

Term	Code	Page
soothe the liver and regulate qi	4.2.169	218
soothe the liver and regulate the spleen	4.2.173	218
soothe the throat	4.2.26	207
soothing	1.3.56	26
sore	3.2.2	177
sore and ulcer	3.2.1	177
sorrow	1.6.70	44
sour taste in the mouth	2.3.123	95
source point	5.1.63	237
source qi	1.2.22	19
source-connecting point combination	5.1.95	239
sovereign fire	1.2.15	18
sovereign medicinal	6.2.7	264
sovereign, minister, assistant and courier	6.2.6	264
<i>So-yang person</i>	0.0.36	12
SP	1.4.13	30
spasm	2.3.91	94
<i>spasm and pain</i>	2.3.77	93
special characteristics of acupuncture points	5.1.77	238
specific point	5.1.56	236
spermatorrhea	3.1.133	172
spine	1.5.22	36
spine pinching	4.2.319	229
spinning bean pulse	2.4.70	105
spirit	1.2.6 1.2.8	17 18
spirit failing to keep to its abode	1.7.151	58
spitting of blood	2.3.104	94
spittle	1.2.55	21
splashing sound	2.2.23	88
spleen	1.3.12	22
<i>spleen atrophy</i>	3.1.199	177
spleen cold	1.7.203	62

Term	Code	Page
spleen deficiency	1.7.205	63
<i>spleen deficiency cold pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.44	135
spleen deficiency engendering wind	1.7.216	64
spleen deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.40	135
<i>spleen deficiency with dampness accumulation</i>	1.7.215	63
spleen deficiency with dampness encumbrance	1.7.215	63
spleen diseases pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.9.39	135
spleen excess	1.7.209	63
spleen excess heat	1.7.210	63
spleen failing in transportation	1.7.224	64
spleen failing to control the blood	1.7.211	63
<i>spleen failing to keep the blood within the vessel</i>	1.7.211	63
spleen heat	1.7.204	63
spleen infantile malnutrition	3.4.18	190
spleen malnutrition	3.4.18	190
spleen meridian	1.4.13	30
spleen opens at the mouth	1.3.80	28
spleen qi	1.2.31	19
spleen qi deficiency	1.7.206	63
spleen qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.41	135
<i>spleen qi excess</i>	1.7.209	63
<i>spleen qi failing to ascend</i>	1.7.226	64
spleen qi failing to bear upward	1.7.226	64
spleen yang	1.3.43	25
spleen yang deficiency	1.7.208	63
spleen yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.44	135
spleen yin	1.3.42	25

Term	Code	Page
spleen yin deficiency	1.7.207	63
spleen yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.43	135
spleen-kidney yang deficiency	1.7.223	64
spleen-kidney yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.126	146
spleen-lung qi deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.121	145
spleen-stomach dampness-heat	1.7.217	64
spleen-stomach deficiency cold	1.7.218	64
spleen-stomach deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	2.9.53	137
spleen-stomach disharmony pattern/syndrome	2.9.56	137
spleen-stomach weakness	1.7.220	64
spleen-stomach weakness pattern/syndrome	2.9.54	137
<i>spleen-stomach yang deficiency pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.53	137
spleen-stomach yin deficiency	1.7.222	64
spleen-stomach yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.55	137
splenic constipation	3.1.96	169
spontaneous bleeding of the tongue	2.1.67	84
spontaneous diarrhea	2.3.170	98
spontaneous harmonization of yin and yang	1.7.17	47
<i>spontaneous restoration of yin- yang equilibrium</i>	1.7.17	47
spontaneous sweating	2.3.33	91
spontaneous urination	2.3.191	100
spoon needle	5.1.9	233
spotted tongue	2.1.60	84
spotting	3.3.21	186
sprain	3.7.8	202
spreading dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.12.24	159
spring warmth	3.1.27	164

Term	Code	Page
sprout orifices	1.5.35	37
<i>sputum</i>	1.6.80	45
square-inch-spoon	6.1.47	258
ST	1.4.12	29
stabbing pain	2.3.74	93
<i>stagnant blood</i>	1.6.84	45
stagnant qi movement pattern/ syndrome	2.7.10	126
stagnant qi transforming into fire	1.7.104	54
<i>stagnated nutrient-yin</i>	1.7.333	73
stained fur	2.1.100	86
stainless steel needle	5.1.35	235
stasis-resolving hemostatic medicinal	6.1.81	261
stasis-resolving medicinal	6.1.87	261
static blood	1.6.84	45
steaming bone	2.3.19	90
stem flooding and check vaginal discharge	4.2.255	224
stems and branches	1.8.9	76
sticky slimy fur	2.1.96	86
sticky slimy sensation in the mouth	2.3.127	96
stiff neck	3.7.1	202
stiff tongue	2.1.68	85
stiffness of the neck	2.3.58	92
stiletto needle	5.1.12	234
stir-bake to brown	6.1.13	256
stir-bake to scorch	6.1.14	256
stir-bake to yellow	6.1.12	255
stir-bake with adjuvant	6.1.15	256
stirred pulse	2.4.53	104
stirring qi of the kidney region	1.2.34	20
stomach	1.3.17	23
stomach cold	1.7.236	65
stomach cold pattern/syndrome	2.9.62	138

Term	Code	Page
stomach deficiency	1.7.232	65
stomach deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.58	137
stomach disharmony	1.7.243	66
stomach duct	1.5.11	35
stomach duct pain	3.1.82	168
stomach excess	1.7.231	65
stomach excess cold pattern/ syndrome	2.9.63	138
stomach fire bearing upward	1.7.239	65
<i>stomach fire pattern/syndrome</i>	2.9.64	138
stomach fluid	1.3.50	25
stomach heat	1.7.237	65
stomach heat pattern/syndrome	2.9.64	138
stomach heat with swift digestion	1.7.238	65
stomach meridian	1.4.12	29
stomach pain	2.3.66	92
stomach qi	1.2.36	20
stomach qi ascending counterflow	1.7.242	66
stomach qi deficiency	1.7.233	65
stomach qi deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.59	137
stomach qi failing to bear downward	1.7.241	66
<i>stomach qi failing to descend</i>	1.7.241	66
stomach reflux	3.1.91	168
stomach yang	1.3.49	25
stomach yang deficiency	1.7.235	65
stomach yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.9.60	137
stomach yin	1.3.48 1.3.50	25
stomach yin deficiency	1.7.234	65
stomach yin deficiency pattern/ syndrome	2.9.61	138
stomach, vitality and root	2.4.16	102
stone needle	5.1.16	234

Term	Code	Page
stone needle therapy	5.1.17	234
stone strangury	3.1.122	171
stony conglomeration	3.3.61	189
stony edema	3.1.118	171
stony goiter	3.2.48	180
stool containing pus and blood	2.3.187	100
stool sometimes sloppy and sometimes bound	2.3.186	99
strange pulse	2.4.60	104
strangury disease	3.1.120	171
strangury of pregnancy	3.3.47	188
strangury-relieving diuretic medicinal	6.1.71	260
strangury-relieving medicinal	6.1.72	260
stream point	5.1.60	237
strengthen thoroughfare vessel to stop bleeding	4.2.181	219
string-like pulse	2.4.41	103
strong defense with weak nutrient	1.7.324	72
strong fire	6.2.49	267
struggle between the healthy qi and pathogenic qi	1.7.6	46
stuck needle	5.1.199	248
stiffness	2.3.152	97
stiffness and fullness	2.3.153	97
stiffness and rigidity below the heart	2.3.150	97
stiffness and rigidity in the chest	2.3.155	98
stiffness of deficiency type	3.1.85	168
stiffness of excess type	3.1.84	168
sty	3.5.6	195
subconjunctival hemorrhage	3.5.29	196
subcutaneous electro-needling	5.1.232	250
subcutaneous fluid retention	3.1.152	173
subcutaneous needle retention method	5.1.186	247

Term	Code	Page
subcutaneous node	3.2.64	181
subdue yang	4.2.194	220
sublingual blood stasis pattern/ syndrome	2.10.51	153
sublingual collateral vessels	2.1.103	87
<i>sub-umbilical aortic pulsation</i>	2.3.166	98
successive trigger needling	5.1.175	246
suction cup	5.3.3	254
sudden attack of wind-heat on the eye	3.5.22	196
sudden blindness	3.5.41	197
sudden heart pain	3.1.61	166
sudden onset	1.7.8	46
sudden protrusion of the eyeball	3.5.51	198
summer non-acclimatization	3.4.49	193
summerheat	1.6.13	40
summerheat affliction	3.1.30	164
summerheat convulsions	3.1.33	164
summerheat damage	3.1.31	164
summerheat entering yang brightness	1.7.351	74
summerheat pattern/syndrome	2.6.9	117
summerheat qi	1.6.38	42
summerheat stroke	3.1.29	164
summerheat-clearing formula	6.2.77	269
summerheat-dampness	1.6.40	42
summerheat-dampness pattern/syndrome	2.12.28	160
summerheat-heat	1.6.39	42
summerheat-heat pattern/ syndrome	2.12.27	159
summerheat-warmth	3.1.34	164
summerheat-wind	3.1.35	164
sunken middle qi	1.7.109	54
sunken middle qi pattern/ syndrome	2.7.14	126
sunken pulse	2.4.30	103

Term	Code	Page
sunken spleen qi	1.7.227	64
sunken spleen qi pattern/ syndrome	2.9.46	136
superficial collateral vessel	1.4.43	34
superficial needling	5.1.181	247
superficial punctate keratitis	3.5.30	196
superior-inferior point combination	5.1.90	239
supplementation and draining	5.1.134	242
suppository	6.2.41	267
suppository therapy	4.2.317	229
suppurative coxitis	3.2.27	179
suppurative osteomyelitis	3.2.26	179
suppurative parotitis	3.2.30	179
supraorbital pain	2.3.61	92
<i>supra-umbilical aortic pulsation</i>	2.3.164	98
surging pulse	2.4.33	103
suspended moxibustion	5.2.20	252
sweat	1.2.51	21
<i>sweat pore</i>	1.5.4 1.5.5	35
sweat-constraining exterior- securing medicinal	6.1.108	263
sweating from the armpits	2.3.42	91
sweating from the hands and feet	2.3.40	91
sweating from the head	2.3.38	91
sweating from the heart region	2.3.41	91
sweating from the palms and soles	2.3.39	91
sweet taste in the mouth	2.3.122	95
swift digestion with rapid hungering	2.3.118	95
swill diarrhea	2.3.184	99
swollen sore	3.2.4	178
swollen tongue	2.1.58	84
<i>sword needle</i>	5.1.12	234
symptom	2.0.3	79

Term	Code	Page
syncope	2.1.8	81
	2.3.27	90
	3.1.166	174
T		
tablet	6.2.38	266
tablet preparation	6.2.38	266
<i>tachycardia</i>	2.4.32	103
<i>Tai-eum person</i>	0.0.37	12
<i>Tai-yang person</i>	0.0.35	12
Taiyi moxa stick moxibustion	5.2.27	253
take after meal	6.2.54	267
take as tea	6.2.58	268
take away firewood from under cauldron	4.2.77	211
take before breakfast	6.2.56	268
take before meal	6.2.53	267
take before sleeping	6.2.57	268
take between meals	6.2.55	267
take cold	6.2.61	268
take drenched	6.2.52	267
take in frequent small amounts	6.2.59	268
take in one single dose	6.2.60	268
take the pulse	2.4.3	101
tapping examination	2.4.77	105
tapping technique	4.2.346	232
taste in the mouth	2.3.119	95
taxation malaria	3.1.20	163
taxation relapse	1.7.10	46
TE	1.4.19	32
tears	1.2.52	21
teeth grinding	3.4.32	191
teeth-marked tongue	2.1.62	84
temperament	1.8.35	78
temple	1.5.29	36
tender point needling	5.1.227	250
tenesmus	2.3.176	99

Term	Code	Page
terminate lactation	4.2.281	226
terrestrial effect	1.8.6	76
tertiary collateral vessel	1.4.42	34
testicle	1.5.68	39
testing labor	3.3.7	185
tetanus	3.2.97	184
texture of fur	2.1.81	85
thelorrhagia	3.2.42	180
theory of causes of disease	1.6.2	39
theory of five circuits and six qi	1.8.1	76
theory of mechanism of disease	1.7.2	46
therapeutic manipulation for sinew injury	4.2.325	230
therapeutic principle	4.1.0	204
therapeutics	4.0.0	204
thermesthesiometer	5.1.212	249
<i>thick fluid</i>	1.2.47	21
thick fur	2.1.89	86
thickened sinew	3.7.5	202
thigh swelling	3.2.99	184
<i>thin fluid</i>	1.2.46	21
thin fur	2.1.88	86
<i>thin pulse</i>	2.4.34	103
thin tongue	2.1.59	84
thirst	2.3.116	95
thoracic fluid retention	3.1.153	173
thoroughfare vessel	1.3.57	26
	1.4.27	33
thought	1.6.69	26
		44
<i>thready pulse</i>	2.4.34	103
threatened abortion	3.3.35	187
three bars	2.1.35	82
<i>three categories of causes of disease</i>	1.6.86	45
three causes	1.6.86	45
<i>three gates</i>	2.1.35	82

Term	Code	Page
three positions and nine indicators	2.4.6	101
three yang meridians of the foot	1.4.6	28
three yang meridians of the hand	1.4.5	28
three yin and three yang	1.8.17	77
three yin meridians of the foot	1.4.7	29
three yin meridians of the hand	1.4.4	28
three-edged needle	5.1.10 5.1.26	233 234
three-edged needle therapy	5.1.27	235
throat abscess	3.6.24	200
throat cancer	3.6.27	200
throat impediment	3.6.23	200
throat node	1.5.61	38
throat pass	1.5.62	38
throat wind	3.6.30	200
throughflux diarrhea	2.3.179	99
thrush	3.4.28	191
thumb cun	5.1.86	239
thumbtack needle	5.1.28	235
thunder head wind	3.1.179	175
thunder-fire wonder moxibustion	5.2.28	253
Tibetan medicine	0.0.7	9
tidal fever	2.3.13	89
tight pulse	2.4.42	103
tightness below the heart	2.3.149	97
tinea manuum	3.2.73	182
tinea versicolor	3.2.74	182
tinnitus	2.3.111	95
tip of the needle	5.1.19	234
tip of the nose	1.5.56	38
tip of the tongue	2.1.42	83
tongue abscess	3.6.36	200
tongue body	2.1.46	83
tongue boil	3.6.37	201

Term	Code	Page
tongue cancer	3.6.39	201
<i>tongue coating</i>	2.1.79	85
tongue color	2.1.47	83
tongue diagnosis	2.1.39	83
tongue fur	2.1.79	85
tongue manifestation	2.1.41	83
tongue sore	3.6.38	201
tongue spirit	2.1.48	83
tonify and nourish heart blood	4.2.214	221
tonify and replenish the middle qi	4.2.212	221
tonify blood	4.2.213	221
tonify fire and assist yang	4.2.225	222
tonify qi	4.2.203	220
tonify qi and engender blood	4.2.206	221
tonify qi and invigorate yang	4.2.205	220
tonify qi and replenish blood	4.2.207	221
tonify the heart yin	4.2.231	223
tonify the kidney	4.2.237	223
tonify the kidney and replenish qi	4.2.240	223
<i>tonify the kidney fire</i>	4.2.225	222
tonify the kidney yin	4.2.238	223
tonify the liver yin	4.2.232	223
tonify the lung	4.2.233	223
tonify the lung yin	4.2.234	223
tonify the spleen	4.2.215	221
<i>tonify the stomach yin</i>	4.2.239	223
tonify yang	4.2.209	221
tonifying and replenishing formula	6.2.89	270
tonifying and replenishing medicinal	6.1.99	262
tonifying method	4.2.202	220
tonsillitis	3.6.21	199
toothache	3.6.41	201
top grade drug	6.1.23	256

Term	Code	Page
torpid intake	2.3.117	95
tortoise back	3.4.43	192
toxin	1.6.49	42
trachoma	3.5.8	195
traction therapy	4.2.324	230
traditional Chinese diagnostics	0.0.12	9
<i>traditional Chinese health cultivation</i>	0.0.19	10
traditional Chinese life nurturing	0.0.19	10
<i>traditional Chinese medical diagnostics</i>	0.0.12	9
traditional Chinese medicine	0.0.2	9
<i>traditional Chinese medicine rehabilitation</i>	0.0.20	10
traditional Chinese nursing	0.0.21	10
traditional Chinese pharmacy	0.0.13	10
traditional Chinese rehabilitation	0.0.20	10
traditional Chinese tuina	0.0.18	10
traditional Korean medicine	0.0.5	9
traditional medicine	0.0.1	9
traditional Vietnamese medicine	0.0.6	9
tranquil pulse	2.4.25	102
tranquilize	4.2.259	225
tranquilize by heavy settling	4.2.262	225
tranquillizing formula	6.2.87	270
tranquillizing medicinal	6.1.94	262
transform into cold	1.7.345	74
transform into dampness	1.7.347	74
transform into dryness	1.7.343	74
transform into fire	1.7.339	73
transform into heat	1.7.337	73
transform into wind	1.7.341	74
transformation	1.7.335	73
<i>transformation of the five emotions into fire</i>	1.6.64	43

Term	Code	Page
transformation of the five minds into fire	1.6.64	43
transmission and transformation	1.7.335	73
transmission and transmutation	1.7.334	73
transmission of sensation along meridian	5.1.122	241
transmit to another meridian	1.7.356	75
transmutation	1.7.334	73
transport point	5.1.72	238
transport point needling	5.1.163	245
transportation and transformation	1.3.60	26
transverse insertion	5.1.113	241
transverse invasion of liver qi	1.7.171	60
trapped heat	1.7.317	72
traumatic cataract	3.5.38	197
treading manipulation	4.2.341	231
treat cold with heat	4.1.4	204
treat deficiency by tonification	4.1.6	204
treat excess by purgation	4.1.7	204
treat heat with cold	4.1.5	204
treat the root	4.1.1	204
treat the tip	4.1.2	204
treat with both elimination and reinforcement	4.1.14	205
treating cold with cold	4.1.9	204
treating heat with heat	4.1.10	204
treating the acute before the chronic	4.1.18	205
treating the exterior before the interior	4.1.19	205
treating the stopped by stopping	4.1.12	204
treating the unstopped by unstoping	4.1.11	204
trembling method	5.1.132	242
trembling tongue	2.1.70	85
tremor	3.1.202	177

Term	Code	Page
trichiasis	3.5.17	195
trigger point	5.1.225	250
trigger point needling	5.1.226	250
trimonthly menstruation	3.3.2	184
<i>triple burners</i>	<i>1.3.21</i>	23
triple energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.13.5	161
triple energizer meridian	1.4.19	32
triple energizer pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.13.1	160
triple energizers	1.3.21	23
triple needling	5.1.177	247
true cold with false heat	1.7.83	52
true cold with false heat pattern/syndrome	2.5.62	115
true deficiency with false excess	1.7.95	53
true deficiency with false excess pattern/syndrome	2.5.73	116
true excess with false deficiency	1.7.94	53
true excess with false deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.5.74	116
true headache	3.1.176	175
true heart pain	3.1.62	166
true heat with false cold	1.7.84	53
true heat with false cold pattern/syndrome	2.5.63	115
true or false deficiency-excess	1.7.93	53
<i>true qi</i>	<i>1.2.21</i>	19
true visceral color	2.1.27	82
true visceral pulse	2.4.61	104
T-shaped malnutrition	3.4.15	190
tumor	3.2.49	180
tumor of the throat	3.6.29	200
turbid pathogen	1.6.36	42
turbid urine	2.3.197 3.1.129	100 172
turbid urine disease	3.1.129	172

Term	Code	Page
twelve cutaneous regions	1.4.37	34
twelve meridian divergences	1.4.33	34
twelve meridian sinews	1.4.35	34
twelve meridians	1.4.9	29
<i>twelve regular meridians</i>	<i>1.4.9</i>	29
twirling method	5.1.126	242
<i>twirling reinforcement and reduction</i>	<i>5.1.135</i>	243
<i>twirling reinforcement and reduction method</i>	<i>5.1.136</i>	243
twirling supplementation and draining	5.1.135	243
twirling supplementation and draining method	5.1.136	243
twisting manipulation	4.2.328	230
twitching eyelid	3.5.16	195
tympanites	3.1.108	170

U

ulcerating sore	3.2.3	178
ulcerative gingivitis	3.6.44	201
umbilical abscess	3.2.19	179
umbilical dampness	3.4.65	194
umbilical hernia	3.4.67	194
umbilical sores	3.4.66	194
umbilical wind	3.4.64	194
unblock the meridian	4.2.188	219
unblock yang	4.2.275	226
unblock yang to dissipate binds	4.2.276	226
unctuous strangury	3.1.125	171
<i>undigested food diarrhea</i>	<i>2.3.174</i>	99
undigested food in stool	2.3.173	99
unfavorable pattern/syndrome	1.7.363	75
ungratifying diarrhea	2.3.172	99
<i>unhealthy complexion</i>	<i>2.1.26</i>	82
unsurfaced fever	2.3.17	89
untwining rope pulse	2.4.67	105

Term	Code	Page
united skull	3.4.45	192
unyielding viscus	1.3.55	26
upbearing and effusion	1.3.54	26
upbearing the clear	1.3.58	26
upbearing, downbearing, floating and sinking	6.1.31	257
upcast yang	1.7.38	49
upcast yang pattern/syndrome	2.5.29	110
upper body cold and lower body heat	1.7.81	52
upper body heat and lower body cold	1.7.80	52
upper body reversal and lower body exhaustion	1.7.137	57
<i>upper burner</i>	1.3.22	23
upper cold and lower heat pattern/syndrome	2.5.60	115
upper deficiency and lower excess	1.7.91	53
upper energizer	1.3.22	23
upper energizer dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.13.6	161
upper energizer disease pattern/syndrome	2.13.2	160
upper excess and lower deficiency	1.7.92	53
upper exuberance and lower deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.5.72	116
upper heat and lower cold pattern/syndrome	2.5.61	115
upper orifices	1.5.33	37
upper source of water	1.3.64	26
upper wasting-thirst	3.1.160	174
upraise the middle qi	4.2.208	221
upturned knife pulse	2.4.69	105
<i>upward flow of fetus qi</i>	3.3.44	188
upward, downward, inward and outward movement	1.2.43	20
urinary incontinence	2.3.194	100

Term	Code	Page
urticaria	3.2.77	182
uterine dampness-heat pattern/syndrome	2.10.6	147
uterine deficiency cold pattern/syndrome	2.10.5	147
uterine obstruction	3.3.33	187
uterus	1.3.33, 1.3.34	24
uvula	1.5.60	38
Uyghur medicine	0.0.9	9
V		
vacuous pulse	2.4.35	103
vagina	1.3.35	24
vaginal bleeding during pregnancy	3.3.34	187
vaginal discharge	3.3.29	187
vaginal flatus	3.3.68	189
<i>varicella</i>	3.4.55	193
<i>variola</i>	3.4.50	193
various pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.10.0	146
verruca	3.2.69	182
verruca vulgaris	3.2.70	182
vertebrae	1.5.22	36
<i>vesiculation moxibustion</i>	5.2.26	253
vessel	1.3.31	24
vessel impediment	3.1.189	176
vessel qi	2.4.24	102
vessel wilting	3.1.198	177
vexation	2.3.144	97
vexation of deficiency type	2.3.145	97
vexing heat in the chest, palms and soles	2.3.22	90
vexing heat in the extremities	2.3.24	90
viscera and bowels	1.3.5	22
visceral bind	3.1.97	169
visceral manifestation	1.3.1	21

Term	Code	Page
visceral manifestation theory	1.3.2	22
visceral pattern identification/ syndrome differentiation	2.9.1	130
visceral qi	1.2.27	19
visceral stroke	3.1.71	167
visceral syncope	3.1.168	174
viscus	1.3.3	22
<i>viscus-induced disease</i>	3.8.1	202
vision obstruction	3.5.4	194
vision-improving formula	6.2.92	270
visiting complexion	2.1.23	82
vitality	1.2.7	17
vitaligo	3.2.75	182
vitreous humor	1.5.50	38
vomiting	2.3.132 3.1.86	96 168
vomiting in the evening of food eaten in the morning	2.3.133	96
vomiting in the morning of food eaten in the evening	2.3.134	96
W		
wandering erysipelas	3.2.32	179
wandering pain	2.3.85	93
warm and resolve cold-phlegm	4.2.126	214
warm and tonify the life gate	4.2.211	221
warm and tonify the spleen and stomach	4.2.224	222
warm disease	3.1.26	164
warm disease study	0.0.22	10
warm dryness	1.6.44	42
warm dryness pattern/ syndrome	2.6.14	118
warm malaria	3.1.18	163
warm needling	5.1.4	233
<i>warm needling moxibustion</i>	5.1.4	233
warm needling therapy	5.2.30	253
warm pathogen	1.6.45	42

Term	Code	Page
<i>warm pathogen disease</i>	0.0.22 3.1.26	10 164
<i>warm pathogen disease study</i>	0.0.22	10
warm purgation	4.2.68	210
warm purgative formula	6.2.74	269
warm purgative medicinal	6.1.62	260
warm the interior	4.2.144	216
warm the interior to dissipate cold	4.2.143	216
warm the kidney	4.2.153	217
warm the kidney and fortify the spleen	4.2.243	223
warm the kidney to promote qi absorption	4.2.250	224
warm the lung	4.2.151	216
warm the lung and dissipate cold	4.2.152	216
warm the lung and resolve fluid retention	4.2.128	215
warm the lung and resolve phlegm	4.2.127	215
warm the meridian	4.2.157	217
warm the meridian to dissipate cold	4.2.159	217
warm the meridian to move stagnation	4.2.162	217
warm the meridian to nourish blood	4.2.163	217
warm the meridian to relieve pain	4.2.158	217
warm the meridian to restore yang	4.2.160	217
warm the middle	4.2.147	216
warm the middle and dissipate cold	4.2.148	216
warm the middle to check vomiting	4.2.150	216
warm the middle to harmonize the stomach	4.2.149	216
warm the spleen	4.2.145	216

Term	Code	Page
warm the stomach	4.2.146	216
warm the uterus	4.2.156	217
warm tonification	4.2.142	216
warm toxin	3.1.25	164
warm yang	4.2.154	217
warm yang to move water	4.2.155	217
warming method	4.2.141	216
warm-tonifying formula	6.2.71	269
wart	3.2.69	182
wasting-thirst	3.1.159	174
water	1.1.27	15
water and food	1.2.58	21
<i>water controlling fire</i>	1.1.39	16
water distention	3.1.111	170
water engenders wood	1.1.34	16
<i>water generating wood</i>	1.1.34	16
<i>water orbiculus</i>	1.5.39	37
water processing	6.1.8	255
water qi intimidating the heart	1.7.157	58
water restrains fire	1.1.39	16
water retention due to obstruction of qi	1.7.136	56
water retention pattern/syndrome	2.8.4	129
water wheel	1.5.39	37
water-dampness	1.6.82	45
water-draining and swelling-dispersing medicinal	6.1.70	260
water-food metabolism	1.8.30	78
water-grind	6.1.9	255
waterways	1.3.69	27
watery diarrhea	2.3.171	99
waving fish pulse	2.4.64	105
waxed pill	6.2.27	266
waxing and waning of yin and yang	1.1.15	14

Term	Code	Page
weak defense with strong nutrient	1.7.323	72
weak pulse	2.4.47	104
well point	5.1.58	237
wheat-grain size cone moxibustion	5.2.7	251
wheezing	3.1.44	165
wheezing and dyspnea	3.1.43	165
wheezing dyspnea	2.2.19	88
white fur	2.1.82	85
white of the eye	1.5.46	37
white ooze	3.1.127	171
white sandy fur	2.1.83	85
white turbidity	3.1.128	172
white vaginal discharge	3.3.30	187
whooping cough	3.4.58	193
will	1.2.12	18
wilting disease	3.1.195	176
wind	1.6.11	40
<i>wind and dampness attack</i>	1.7.308	71
<i>wind attacking the blood vessels</i>	1.7.305	71
wind bar	2.1.36	83
wind edema	3.1.115	171
wind epilepsy	3.4.41	192
wind formation	1.7.342	74
<i>wind gate</i>	2.1.36	83
<i>wind impediment</i>	3.1.181	175
<i>wind intolerance</i>	2.3.6	89
<i>wind orbiculus</i>	1.5.41	37
wind red sore	3.5.11	195
wind striking the blood vessels	1.7.305	71
wind stroke	1.7.309	71
wind syncope	3.1.172	175
wind wheel	1.5.41	37
wind-cold	1.6.26	41
wind-cold fettering the exterior	1.7.307	71

Term	Code	Page
wind-cold fettering the lung	1.7.251	67
wind-cold pattern/syndrome	2.6.50	123
wind-cold-dampness	1.6.32	41
wind-cold-dispersing medicinal	6.1.50	259
wind-dampness	1.6.28	41
wind-dampness pattern/syndrome	2.6.53	123
wind-dampness-dispelling and cold-dispersing medicinal	6.1.66	260
wind-dampness-dispelling and heat-clearing medicinal	6.1.67	260
wind-dampness-dispelling medicinal	6.1.65	260
wind-dispelling formula	6.2.69	269
wind-dryness	1.6.29	41
wind-dryness pattern/syndrome	2.6.54	123
wind-fire pattern/syndrome	2.6.52	123
wind-fire whirling internally	1.7.306	71
wind-fire-heat toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.44	122
wind-heat	1.6.27	41
wind-heat dispersing medicinal	6.1.52	259
wind-heat pattern/syndrome	2.6.51	123
wind-phlegm	1.6.30	41
wind-phlegm pattern/syndrome	2.6.23	119
wind-stroke block pattern/syndrome	2.6.4	117
wind-stroke collapse pattern/syndrome	2.6.5	117
wind-toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.43	122
wind-warmth	3.1.28	164
wisdom tooth	1.5.59	38
wood	1.1.23	15
<i>wood controlling earth</i>	1.1.36	16
wood engenders fire	1.1.30	16
<i>wood generating fire</i>	1.1.30	16
wood restrains earth	1.1.36	16
wooden tongue	3.4.31	191

Term	Code	Page
worm accumulation pattern/syndrome	2.6.22	119
<i>worm toxin</i>	1.6.58	43
worm-expelling formula	6.2.90	270
worm-expelling medicinal	6.1.78	261
worm-killing formula	6.2.91	270
wrap-decoct	6.2.47	267
wrist pulse	2.4.7	101
wrist pulse-taking method	2.4.8	101

Y

yang	1.1.8	13
yang brightness	1.8.20	77
yang brightness bowel pattern/syndrome	2.11.9	154
<i>yang brightness disease</i>	2.11.7	154
yang brightness disease pattern/syndrome	2.11.7	154
yang brightness meridian pattern/syndrome	2.11.8	154
yang collapse	1.7.42	49
yang collapse pattern/syndrome	2.5.31	110
yang damage pattern/syndrome	2.5.5	106
yang deficiency	1.7.31	48
yang deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.5.8 2.5.69	107 116
<i>yang deficiency with yin excess</i>	1.7.32	48
yang deficiency with yin exuberance	1.7.32	48
yang disease	3.1.2	162
yang edema	3.1.113	170
yang epilepsy	3.1.77	167
<i>yang excess</i>	1.7.33	48
<i>yang excess with yin deficiency</i>	1.7.34	48
yang exuberance	1.7.33	48

Term	Code	Page
yang exuberance with yin debilitation	1.7.34	48
yang heel vessel	1.4.30	33
yang jaundice	3.1.102	169
yang link vessel	1.4.32	34
yang pathogen	1.6.6	40
yang pattern/syndrome	2.5.3	106
yang qi	1.2.40	20
<i>yang stages of disease transformation</i>	3.1.2	162
yang toxin	3.1.38	164
yang viscus	1.3.8	22
yang within yang	1.1.11	14
yang within yin	1.1.9	14
yang-tonifying medicinal	6.1.101	263
yang-warm qi	1.8.29	78
yawning	2.2.17	88
yellow complexion	2.1.19	81
yellow fur	2.1.84	85
yellow sweat	3.1.119	171
yellow vaginal discharge	3.3.31	187
yin	1.1.7	13
yin and yang	1.1.6	13
yin collapse	1.7.41	49
yin collapse pattern/syndrome	2.5.30	110
yin damage pattern/syndrome	2.5.6	107
yin deficiency	1.7.22	47
yin deficiency pattern/syndrome	2.5.7	107
yin deficiency with effulgent fire	1.7.25	47
yin deficiency with internal heat	1.7.23	47
yin deficiency with yang hyperactivity	1.7.24	47
yin disease	3.1.1	162
yin edema	3.1.114	170
yin epilepsy	3.1.78	167
<i>yin excess</i>	1.7.29	48
<i>yin excess with yang deficiency</i>	1.7.30	48

Term	Code	Page
yin exuberance	1.7.29	48
yin exuberance with yang debilitation	1.7.30	48
yin heel vessel	1.4.29	33
yin jaundice	3.1.103	169
yin link vessel	1.4.31	34
yin needling	5.1.182	247
yin pathogen	1.6.7	40
yin pattern/syndrome	2.5.2	106
yin qi	1.2.39	20
<i>yin stages of disease transformation</i>	3.1.1	162
yin summerheat pattern/syndrome	2.6.59	124
yin toxin	3.1.37	164
yin toxin pattern/syndrome	2.6.47	122
yin viscus	1.3.9	22
yin within yang	1.1.12	14
yin within yin	1.1.10	14
yin-blood depletion pattern/syndrome	2.5.22	109
yin-cool qi	1.8.27	78
<i>yin-nourishing medicinal</i>	6.1.105	263
<i>yin-replenishing medicinal</i>	6.1.105	263
yin-tonifying medicinal	6.1.105	263
yin-yang balance	1.1.16	14
yin-yang conversion	1.1.18	14
yin-yang disharmony	1.7.14	47
<i>yin-yang exchange</i>	3.1.139	172
yin-yang harmony	1.1.17	14
yin-yang pattern identification/syndrome differentiation	2.5.1	106
yin-yang repulsion	1.7.35	48
yin-yang theory	1.1.5	13
yin-yang transmission	3.1.139	172

Term	Code	Page
Z		
<i>zang-organs and fu-organs</i>	1.3.5	22

ANNEX

----- ANNEX 1 -----

1ST INFORMAL CONSULTATION ON DEVELOPMENT OF INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TERMINOLOGIES ON TRADITIONAL MEDICINE, IN BEIJING, CHINA, OCTOBER 2004

TEMPORARY ADVISERS

CHINA	Professor Li Zhaoguo Professor Liang Jusheng Professor Xie Zhufan Ms Situ Wen Professor Zhu Jianping
JAPAN	Professor Tetsuo Akiba Professor Shinya Sakai Professor Takeshi Sakiyama Professor Hitoshi Yamashita
REPUBLIC OF KOREA	Professor Chi Je-geun Professor Lim Byung-mook Professor Kim Yong-suk Professor Lee Choong-yeol Professor Park Gyeong-mo Professor Shim Bum-sang
MACAO (CHINA)	Professor Yeung Hin Wing
UNITED KINGDOM	Professor Nigel Wiseman

OBSERVERS

CHINA	Professor Cai Jingfeng
UNITED KINGDOM	Professor Ma Kanwen

RESPONSIBLE OFFICER

Dr Choi Seung-hoon
Regional Adviser in Traditional Medicine
WHO Western Pacific Regional Office

Presentations

- Professor Liang Jusheng, (China) – *Translation Principles and Methods for Basic TCM Term*
- Professor Chi Je-geun (Republic of Korea) – *Introduction to Referential Systems in Western Medicine*
- Professor Park Gyeong-mo (Republic of Korea) – *Computerized International Standard Terminology on Traditional Medicine*
- Professor Nigel Wiseman (United Kingdom) – *Experience in Standardization of English Terminology of Chinese Medicine*
- Professor Xie Zhufan (China) described the work done by China in the development of an English terminology for traditional medicine with SATCM, presenting the book entitled English Translation of Common Terms in Traditional Chinese Medicine.
- Professor Zhu Jianping (China) – *Standard Terminology of Traditional Chinese Medicine in China*
- Professor Cai Jingfeng (China) – *An Introduction to the English Translation of Basic Terms of Traditional Chinese Medicine*
- Professors Tetsuo Akiba / Takeshi Sakiyama (Japan) briefed the participants on Japanese efforts on IST and the Terminology Committee in Japan Society of Oriental Medicine.
- Professor Lee Choong-yeol (Republic of Korea) – *The Process of Standardization of Korean Medicine Terminology*
- Professor Shim Bum-sang (Republic of Korea) – *Principal Rules for Developing International Standard Terminology in Traditional Medicine*
- Professor Ma Kanwen (United Kingdom) gave an overview of the westward transmission of Chinese medicine from the 10th century to the modern era.
- Professor Cui Meng (China) gave a detailed description of preliminary work of the Library and Information Institute in collecting TCM terms for the purposes of developing browser systems.

----- ANNEX 2 -----

2ND INFORMAL CONSULTATION ON DEVELOPMENT OF
INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TERMINOLOGIES ON TRADITIONAL MEDICINE,
IN TOKYO, JUNE 2005

TEMPORARY ADVISERS

CHINA	Professor Xie Zhufan Professor Cai Jingfeng Professor Zhu Jianping Mr Zhu Haidong Ms Zhen Yan
GERMANY	Professor Paul Unschuld
JAPAN	Professor Hiroshi Kosoto Professor Akihito Takano Professor Shinya Sakai Professor Takeshi Sakiyama Professor Hitoshi Yamashita Professor Kazuo Toriizuka
REPUBLIC OF KOREA	Professor Chi Je-geun Professor Lim Byung-mook Professor Kim Yong-suk Professor Lee Choong-yeol Professor Shim Bum-sang Professor Song Ho-sueb
UNITED KINGDOM	Professor Nigel Wiseman

OBSERVERS

JAPAN	Professor Toshihiko Hanawa Professor Fumio Ikegami Dr Shogo Ishino Dr Kenji Kobayashi Professor Katsuko Komatsu Professor Toshihiro Nohara Professor Toshihiro Togo Mr Hayato Toyotama Professor Kiichiro Tsutani Professor Haruki Yamada Dr Takahiro Yamada Professor Tadashi Yano
-------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

RESPONSIBLE OFFICER

Dr Choi Seung-hoon
Regional Adviser in Traditional Medicine
WHO Western Pacific Regional Office

Presentations

- Professors Cai Jingfeng / Zhu Jianping / Zhen Yan (China) *“Review on English Translation of Common Terms in Traditional Chinese Medicine”* (Selected Reference)
- Professor Sakiyama Takeshi (Japan) – *Japanese Review on the Selected Reference*
- Professor Lee Choong-yeol (Republic of Korea) – *Korea’s Consideration to the IST draft*
- Professor Shim Bum-sang (Republic of Korea) - *Principles for Selecting Standard Terms*
- Professor Nigel Wiseman (United Kingdom) – *Standardization of the English terminology of East Asian Medicine*

----- ANNEX 3 -----

MEETING ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF INTERNATIONAL
STANDARD TERMINOLOGIES ON TRADITIONAL MEDICINE,
IN DAEGU, REPUBLIC OF KOREA, OCTOBER 2005

TEMPORARY ADVISERS

AUSTRALIA	Professor Charlie Xue Dr James Flowers
CHINA	Professor Xie Zhufan Professor Cai Jingfeng Professor Zhu Jianping Mr Zhu Haidong Ms Xu Jinxiang
JAPAN	Professor Kazuo Toriizuka Professor Shuichi Katai Professor Shinya Sakai Professor Takeshi Sakiyama Professor Kiichiro Tsutani
REPUBLIC OF KOREA	Professor Chi Je-geun Professor Chang Il-moo Professor Kim Yong-suk Professor Lee Choong-yeol Professor Park Gyeong-mo Professor Shim Bum-sang
SINGAPORE	Professor Lee Tat-leang
UNITED KINGDOM	Professor Nigel Wiseman
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA	Professor Fred Seligson
VIET NAM	Dr Le Luong Dong

OBSERVERS

REPUBLIC OF KOREA	Professor Lee Young-jong Professor Han Chang-ho Professor Baik Yoo-sang Professor Song Ho-sueb Dr Eom Dong-myung Professor Lim Hyung-ho
VIET NAM	Professor Phan Quan Chi Hieu

RESPONSIBLE OFFICER

Dr Choi Seung-hoon
Regional Adviser in Traditional Medicine
WHO Western Pacific Regional Office

Presentations

- Professor Shim Bum-sang (Republic of Korea) – *A Brief History on IST development*
- Professor Shinya Sakai (Japan) - *Review on the selected references for discussion at this meeting*
- Professor Xie Zhufan (China) - *On developing the international standard terminologies of traditional Chinese medicine*
- Professor Nigel Wiseman (United Kingdom) - *East Asian Medicine Term Standardization: Building on achievements in the English-speaking world and providing an interface with modern western medicine*
- Professor Cai Jingfeng (China) - *Comments on first draft of International Standard Terminologies*
- Professor Park Gyeong-mo (Republic of Korea) - *International Standard Terminologies structure and management*

----- ANNEX 4 -----

FINAL PEER REVIEWERS FOR THE WHO INTERNATIONAL STANDARD
TERMINOLOGIES ON TRADITIONAL MEDICINE

Dr Dan Bensky
Oriental and Osteopathic Medicine
4507 Sunnyside N. Unit C
Seattle, Washington 98103
United States of America

Professor Brenda Golianu
Department of Anesthesia
Stanford University Hospital
300 Pasteur Drive
Stanford, California 94305
United States of America

Professor Ka Kit Paul Hui
UCLA Center for East West Medicine
2428 Santa Monica Boulevard
Santa Monica, California
United States of America

Professor Liu Liang
School of Chinese Medicine
Hong Kong Baptist University
Kowloon Tong
Hong Kong

Professor Gregory Plotnikoff
Department of Kampo Medicine
Keio University School of Medicine
Tokyo 160-8582
Japan

Dr Tony Reid
Sun Herbal Pty Ltd.
Unit 5, 25 Garema Circuit
Kingsgrove NSW 2208
Australia

Professor David Story
Therapeutic Sciences
RMIT University
P.O. Box 71
Bundoora, Victoria 3083
Australia

Professor Chu Quoc Truong
National Hospital of Traditional Medicine
Ha Noi
Viet Nam

Professor Paul Unschuld
Ludwig Maximilians University
Muenchen Lessingstrasse 2
80336 Muenchen
Germany

Mr Paul White
Foreign Language Press
24 Baiwanzhuangdajie,
Xichengqu, Beijing
China

Professor Xie Zhufan
First Hospital of Peking University
8 Xi Shi Ku Street
Beijing 100034
China

Professor Christopher Zaslowski
College of Traditional Chinese Medicine
Department of Medical and Molecular Biosciences
University of Technology, Sydney
Australia

State Administration of Traditional Chinese Medicine
No. 13, Baijiazhuang Dongli
Chaoyang District
Beijing 100026
China

Japan Liaison of Oriental Medicine
Kokusai-Hamamatsucho Bldg. 6F
1-9-18 Kaigan, Minato-ku
Tokyo 105 0022
Japan

Ministry of Health and Welfare
1, Joongang-dong, Gwacheon-si
Gyeonggi-do 427-721
Republic of Korea